

**CIHM  
Microfiche  
Series  
(Monographs)**

**ICMH  
Collection de  
microfiches  
(monographies)**



**Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques**

**© 1995**

Technical and Bibliographic Notes / Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

L'Institut a microfilmé la meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent axiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Coloured covers/<br>Couverture de couleur  | <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured pages/<br>Pages de couleur   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Covers damaged/<br>Couverture endommagée  | <input type="checkbox"/> Pages damaged/<br>Pages endommagées   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Covers restored and/or laminated/<br>Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée  | <input type="checkbox"/> Pages restored and/or laminated/<br>Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées                    |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Cover title missing/<br>Le titre de couverture manque   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/<br>Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured maps/<br>Cartes géographiques en couleur   | <input type="checkbox"/> Pages detached/<br>Pages détachées  |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/<br>Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Showthrough/<br>Transparence   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured plates and/or illustrations/<br>Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur  | <input type="checkbox"/> Quality of print varies/<br>Qualité inégale de l'impression                               |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Bound with other material/<br>Ralié avec d'autres documents   | <input type="checkbox"/> Continuous pagination/<br>Pagination continue   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion<br>along interior margin/<br>La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la<br>distorsion le long de la marge intérieure   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Includes index(es)/<br>Comprend un (des) index                                 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Blank leaves added during restoration may appear<br>within the text. Whenever possible, these have<br>been omitted from filming/<br>Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées<br>lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte,<br>mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont<br>pas été filmées. | Title on header taken from: /<br>Le titre de l'an-tête provient:   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Additional comments: /<br>Commentaires supplémentaires:   | <input type="checkbox"/> Title page of issue/<br>Page de titre de la livraison                                     |
|  | <input type="checkbox"/> Caption of issue/<br>Titre de départ de la livraison                                      |
|  | <input type="checkbox"/> Masthead/<br>Générique (périodiques) de la livraison                                      |

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/  
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	14X	18X	22X	26X	30X
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12X	16X	20X	24X	28X	32X

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

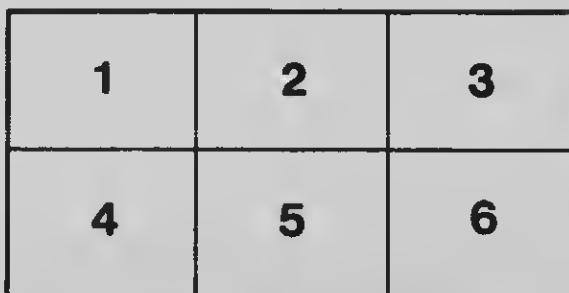
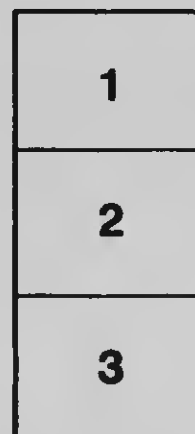
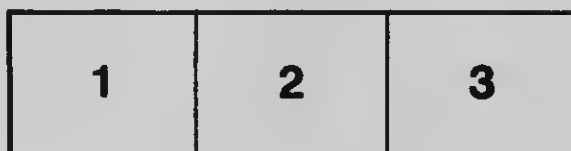
National Library of Canada

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol  $\rightarrow$  (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol  $\nabla$  (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

Bibliothèque nationale du Canada

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

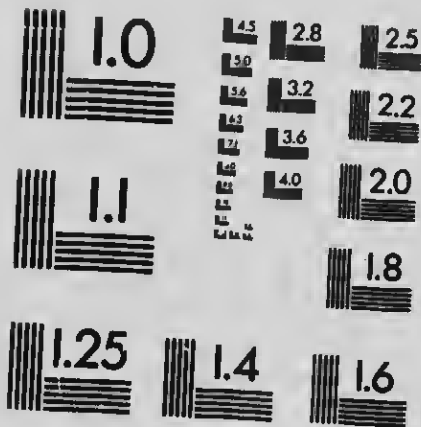
Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole  $\rightarrow$  signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole  $\nabla$  signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.

# MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



**APPLIED IMAGE Inc**

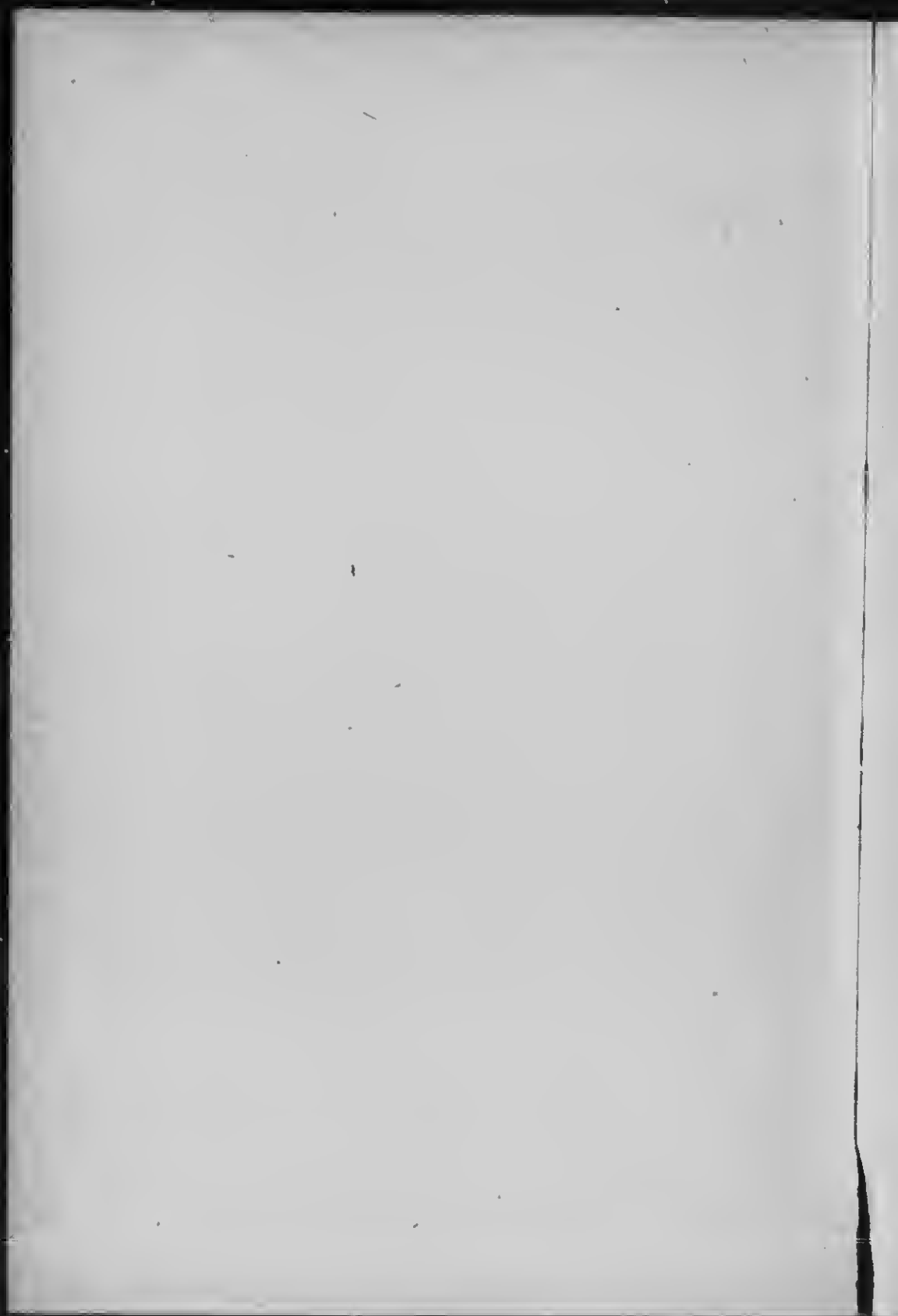
1653 East Main Street  
Rochester, New York 14609 USA  
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone  
(716) 288 - 5989 - Fax

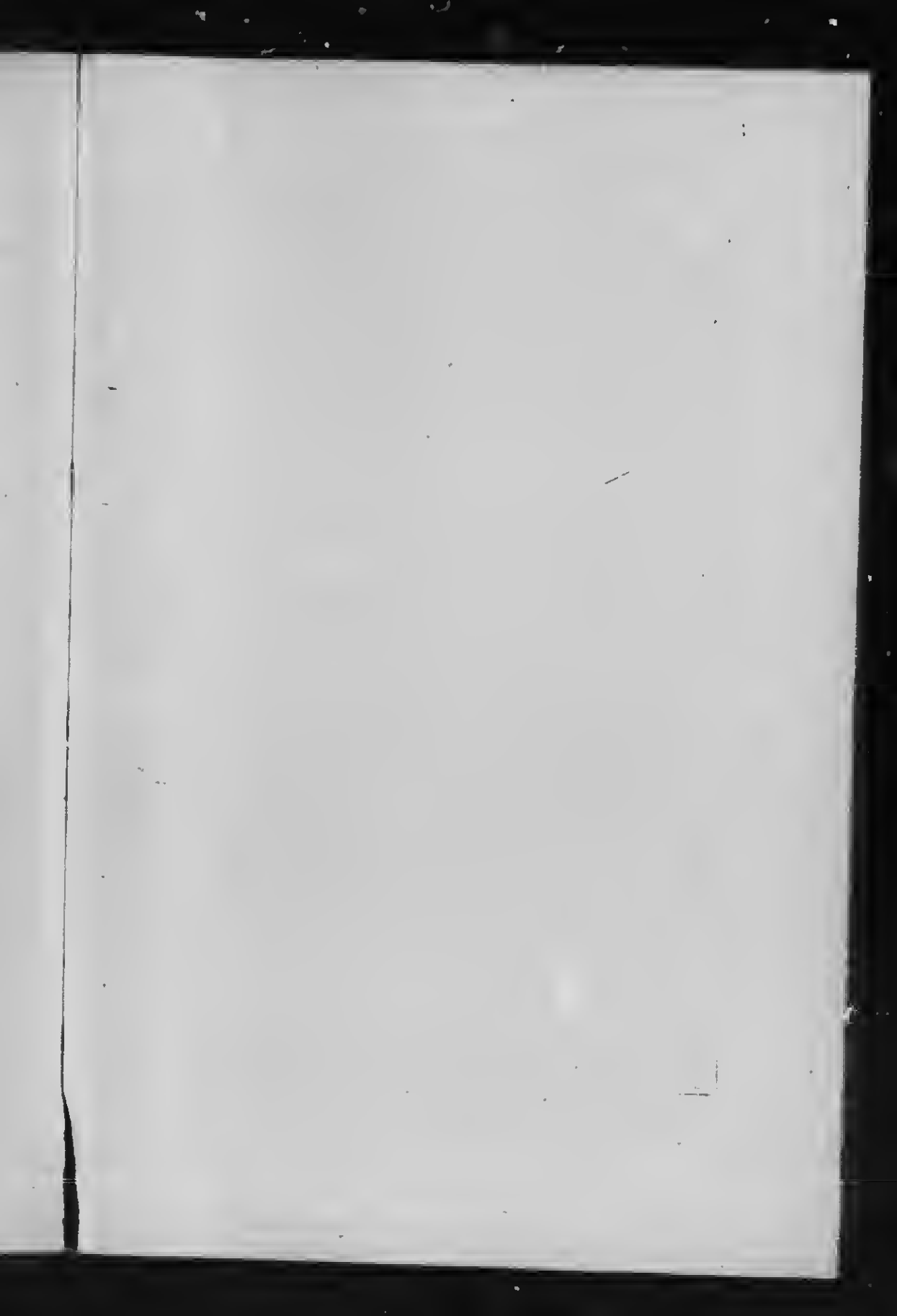


INTRODUCTORY  
LATIN  
GRAMMAR

PRICE \$1.00

HAGARTY







THE DEATH OF CAESAR

MORANG'S MODERN TEXT-BOOKS

INTRODUCTORY  
LATIN GRAMMAR  
AND  
FIRST LATIN READER

BY

E. W. HAGARTY, B.A.

CLASSICAL MASTER, HARBORD STREET COLLEGIATE INSTITUTE,  
TORONTO

*Authorised by the Minister of Education  
for use in Ontario.*

Price

TORONTO  
MORANG & CO. LIMITED

1906

PA2087

H17

1906

~~15636~~

Entered according to Act of the Parliament of Canada, in  
the year Nineteen Hundred and Four, by MORANG & Co.,  
LIMITED, at the Department of Agriculture.

## PREFACE

THIS book was originally designed as a beginner's book. At the request of the publishers, the scope has been widened so as to cover a complete course in grammar for university matriculation. The book is, therefore, a Latin Primer and an Elementary Latin Grammar combined.

Part I is devoted almost exclusively to forms and easy continuous reading, only so much syntax being referred to as is necessary to elucidate forms.

Part II contains about twenty pages of easy reading matter suitable as an introduction to Caesar, or as collateral work in sight translation for pupils who have begun Caesar.

Part III contains a short course in syntax, dealing chiefly with the cases and the subjunctive mood.

No attempt has been made to produce a text-book on continuous Latin Prose Composition. The aim has been rather to lay the foundation for an intelligent reading knowledge of Latin. The writing of continuous prose should be the outgrowth of familiarity with authors carefully read and studiously imitated. It is no part of introductory grammar.

From the outset the aim of the author was to make a book that would interest and stimulate the beginner. With this object in view, illustrations bearing on mythology and Roman life, together with a brief running commentary on early Roman history, have been inter-

spersed with the dry materials of grammar. It is to be hoped that the experiment will be found helpful to teachers who wish to impress Latin upon their pupils' minds as a living vehicle of thought and story.

The author is of the opinion that, with a view to arousing interest, a limited employment of the inductive method of reading stories with beginners may be very useful. The book leaves it purely optional with teachers whether this material shall be utilized or not.

In accordance with the best usage of recent times, all long vowels, or vowels believed to be long, have been marked. This has been the subject of not a little perplexity to the author. After careful consideration, it was seen that on many points the system adopted in the book must conflict either with the commonly recognized standard of Lewis's "Elementary Latin Dictionary" or with other authority whose cogency could not be denied. Most school text-books published on this side of the Atlantic follow Lewis and the German scholar Marx in giving the vowel before **-gn** and **-gm** long in all words, *e.g.* **māgnus**, **signum**, **Ignis**, **āgmen**, **pūgnō**, **cōgnōscō**, **Ignōscō**, **Ignārus**, etc. Bennett in his Appendix and revised Latin Grammar refuses to go beyond the testimony of the old grammarian Priscian to the effect that only nouns and adjectives in **-gnus**, **-gna**, **-gnum**, have the long vowel. In this he is supported by the conservative opinion of Lindsay. Hale and Buck (1903), however, go to the other extreme and refuse to mark any of these vowels long, except where derivation shows it, as in **rēgnum**, **stāgnum**, **sēgnis**. They admit that probably there was (in different "strata of society") a dual pronunciation of such words as **signum** and **māgnus**, but profess to follow the evi-



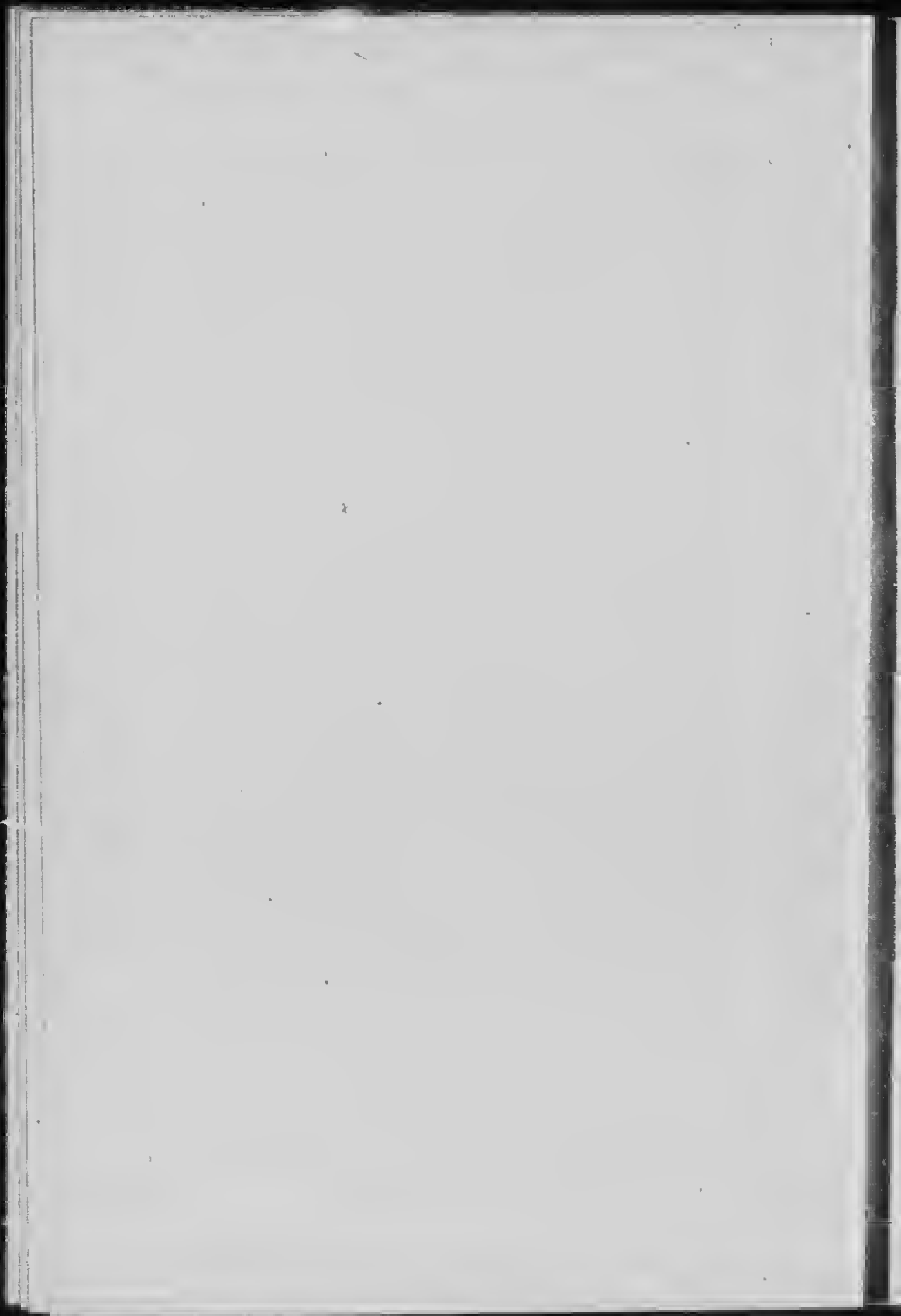
dence of the Romance languages in giving the short vowel. Is it not probable that the Romance languages would reflect the usage of the lower "stratum," thus confirming a preference for the long vowel as more strictly classical, especially when that preference is supported by so ancient an authority as Priscian? On the whole, Priscian, Lindsay, and Bennett seem the safer guides, and these have been followed.

It may be as well to mention the various kinds of evidence on which modern scholarship bases its opinion in matters of "hidden quantity," that is, quantity not revealed by poetry. They are as follows:—

1. Statements of the Roman grammarians, Priscian, etc.
2. Spelling in inscriptions, in which long vowels are frequently marked by the *apex*, e.g. TRÁXI, or, in the case of long *i*, by a lengthening of the character, as in QUINQUE. Inscriptions are not always reliable.
3. Greek transcriptions, as Οὐεργίλιος = *Vergilius*.
4. The vocalism of the Romance languages.
5. Derivation, as *māximus* from *māgnus*.

In conclusion the author wishes to acknowledge his indebtedness for much valuable advice to Dr. Benjamin D'Ooge, Professor of Latin, Michigan State Normal College, who kindly looked over the introductory lessons of Part I and made many important suggestions; also to his old friend and Johns Hopkins classmate, Dr. G. W. Johnston, Lecturer in Latin, University College, Toronto, to whose careful revision of proof-sheets and scholarly opinion on many points the book owes much in the way of precision.

TORONTO, October 15, 1903.



# CONTENTS

## PART I

INTRODUCTION	PAGE
The Latin Language . . . . .	1
The Pronunciation of Latin . . . . .	2
Quantity — Accent . . . . .	4
LESSON	
I. Present Indicative Active of <b>Vocō</b> . . . . .	6
II. The Latin Cases . . . . .	8
III. First Declension — Subject, Object, Predicate Nominative . . . . .	10
IV. Motion “to” and “into”; Rest “in” . . . . .	12
V. The Ablative and Certain Prepositions . . . . .	14
VI. Imperfect and Future Indicative Active . . . . .	17
VII. Second Declension — Nouns in <b>-us</b> . . . . .	20
VIII. Second Declension — Nouns in <b>-er</b> and <b>-ir</b> . . . . .	22
IX. Gender — Natural and Grammatical . . . . .	24
X. Second Declension — Neuter Nouns . . . . .	27
Reading Lesson, The Trojan War — Word List . . . . .	29
XI. Perfect Tenses Active of All Verbs . . . . .	32
XII. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions — <b>Bonus</b> . . . . .	36
XIII. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions ending in <b>-er</b> . . . . .	37
XIV. The Four Conjugations — Present Infinitives . . . . .	40
XV. Second Conjugation — Indicative Active of <b>Moneō</b> . . . . .	43
XVI. Third and Fourth Conjugations — <b>Regō</b> and <b>Audiō</b> . . . . .	45
XVII. Verbs like <b>Capīō</b> — Indicative Active . . . . .	48
XVIII. Third Declension — Masculine and Feminine Consonant Stems . . . . .	53
XIX. Third Declension — Mute Stems . . . . .	54
XX. Third Declension — “S” Stems — Liquid and Nasal Stems . . . . .	56

LESSON	PAGE
XXI. Third Declension — Neuter Consonant Stems . . . . .	60
XXII. Third Declension — "I" Stems (-is and -es) . . . . .	62
XXIII. Third Declension — "I" Stems (Monosyllables and Others) . . . . .	64
XXIV. Third Declension — Neuter "I" Stems . . . . .	66
XXV. Third Declension — Irregular Nouns . . . . .	68
XXVI. Gender Rules of the Third Declension — Review . . . . .	70
XXVII. Adjectives of the Third Declension . . . . .	74
XXVIII. Adjectives of the Third Declension ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	76
Review Word List . . . . .	78
Reading Lessons — Early Rome ; Hannibal . . . . .	82
XXIX. Fourth Declension — Locative Case . . . . .	85
XXX. Fifth Declension . . . . .	87
Peculiar Nouns of All Declensions (for reference) . . . . .	91
Reading Lessons — Julius Caesar invades Britain . . . . .	94
XXXI. The Comparison of Adjectives — Regular . . . . .	96
XXXII. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives . . . . .	100
XXXIII. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	102
XXXIV. Adjectives like <b>Ūnus, Alius</b> , etc. . . . .	108
XXXV. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs . . . . .	111
XXXVI. Numerals . . . . .	115
XXXVII. <b>Sum, I am</b> , and its Compounds . . . . .	123
XXXVIII. Direct Questions — <b>ne, nōne, num</b> . . . . .	125
XXXIX. Review Exercise on Verbs — Review Word List . . . . .	128
XL. Imperative Mood, Active . . . . .	130
XLI. Pronouns, Personal, Possessive, Reflexive . . . . .	134
XLII. Pronouns, Demonstrative . . . . .	138
XLIII. Pronouns, Intensive . . . . .	140
XLIV. Relative or Conjunctive Pronoun . . . . .	142
XLV. Interrogative Pronoun . . . . .	144
XLVI. Indefinite Pronouns . . . . .	146
XLVII. The Passive Indicative of <b>Vocō</b> . . . . .	149
XLVIII. The Supine and the Perfect Passive Participle . . . . .	152
XLIX. The Perfect Passive Tenses of <b>Vocō</b> . . . . .	155
L. The Passive Indicative of <b>Moneō</b> . . . . .	157
LI. The Passive Indicative of <b>Regō</b> . . . . .	160
LII. The Passive Indicative of <b>Audiō</b> . . . . .	164
Synopsis of Regular Verbs — Indicative Active and Passive . . . . .	166
LIII. Imperative Mood, Passive . . . . .	168

CONTENTS

ix

PAGE	LESSON	PAGE
60	LIV. Passive of Verbs like <b>Capiō</b> . . . . .	171
62	LV. Deponent Verbs . . . . .	173
64	LVI. Deponent Verbs ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	175
68	Reading Lesson — Caesar's Landing in Britain . . . . .	178
68	LVII. Participles — <b>Vocō</b> . . . . .	180
70	LVIII. Participles — <b>Moneō, Regō, Audiō, Capiō</b> . . . . .	184
74	LIX. Participles of Deponent Verbs . . . . .	188
76	LX. Ablative Absolute . . . . .	190
78	LXI. Ablative Absolute and the Perfect Participle . . . . .	192
82	Reading Lessons — The Greedy Dog — The Sacred Geese . . . . .	196
85	LXII. Infinitives — <b>Sum, Vocō, Moneō, Regō, Audiō, Capiō</b> . . . . .	198
87	LXIII. The Formation of Infinitives . . . . .	201
91	LXIV. The Accusative and Infinitive . . . . .	204
94	LXV. Deponent Infinitives . . . . .	207
96	LXVI. <b>HOPE, PROMISE, UNDERTAKE</b> . . . . .	209
100	Reading Lesson — The Wolf and the Lamb . . . . .	211
102	LXVII. Verbs with the Genitive, Dative, and Ablative . . . . .	212
108	Reading Lesson — Perseus . . . . .	214
111	LXVIII. The Gerund . . . . .	216
115	LXIX. Object of the Gerund — Purpose . . . . .	218
123	LXX. The Gerundive — Periphrastic Passive . . . . .	220
125	LXXI. The Gerundive substituted for the Gerund . . . . .	223
128	Reading Lesson — <b>Lōbō Rēx Currumpae, From the Story of Ernest Thompson Seton</b> . . . . .	227
130	LXXII. The Subjunctive Mood — <b>Sum</b> . . . . .	229
134	LXXIII. Forms of the Subjunctive Active, <b>Vocō, Moneō, Regō, Audiō, Capiō</b> . . . . .	233
138	LXXIV. Equivalents for the Perfect Participle . . . . .	236
140	LXXV. Forms of the Subjunctive Passive, <b>Vocō, Moneō, Regō, Audiō, Capiō</b> . . . . .	239
142	LXXVI. Purpose Clauses — <b>Ut, Nō</b> — Sequence of Tenses . . . . .	241
144	Reading Lesson — Cincinnatus . . . . .	243
146	LXXVII. Dependent Questions . . . . .	244
149	Reading Lesson — Proserpina . . . . .	245
152	LXXVIII. Irregular Verbs — Present Indicative and Present Subjunctive of <b>Possum, Volō, Ferō, Eō, Fiō</b> . . . . .	247
155	LXXIX. <b>Possum</b> and Other Compounds of <b>Sum</b> . . . . .	249
157	LXXX. <b>Volō, Nōiō, Māiō</b> . . . . .	251
160		
164		
166		
168		

LESSON		PAGE
LXXXI.	<b>Ferō</b> and its Compounds . . . . .	253
LXXXII.	<b>Eō</b> . . . . .	256
LXXXIII.	<b>Fiō</b> contrasted with <b>Faciō</b> . . . . .	250
LXXXIV.	<b>Dō</b> and its Compounds . . . . .	261
LXXXV.	Defective Verbs, <b>Coepi</b> , etc. — Impersonal Verbs . . . . .	263
	Reading Lesson — Gossiping Habits of the Gauls . . . . .	266
LXXXVI.	Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse . . . . .	207
LXXXVII.	Result Clauses . . . . .	269
	Reading Lesson — Cbaron . . . . .	270
LXXXVIII.	Prepositions . . . . .	272
	LIST OF VERBS . . . . .	275-281
	SPECIAL VOCABULARIES, LESSONS I TO XXX . . . . .	282-290

## PART II

## READING LESSONS

Fables . . . . .	293
Stories of Early Rome . . . . .	299
The Wanderings of Ulysses . . . . .	303
The Capture of Quebec . . . . .	309

## PART III

## SYNTAX

1. Review — Ablative Absolute — Deponent Participles — Accu- sative and Infinitive — Dependent Questions . . . . .	313
2. Modal Verbs . . . . .	314
3. Substantive Clauses of Purpose . . . . .	314
4. Substantive Clauses of Result . . . . .	318

## CASES

5. Predicate Nominative — Apposition . . . . .	310
6. The Genitive with Nouns . . . . .	321
7. The Genitive with Adjectives . . . . .	323
8. The Genitive with Verbs . . . . .	325
9. The Dative . . . . .	327

## CONTENTS

xi

	PAGE
10. The Accusative . . . . .	332
11. The Ablative . . . . .	336
12. Place and Time . . . . .	342
13. Independent Uses of the Subjunctive . . . . .	344
14. Oratio Obliqua . . . . .	347
15. Final and Consecutive Relative . . . . .	348
16. Verbs of Fearing . . . . .	350
17. <b>Quōminus</b> and <b>Quin</b> . . . . .	351
18. The Causal Subjunctive . . . . .	353
19. Conditional Sentences . . . . .	355
20. Temporal Clauses . . . . .	356
21. Concessive Clauses and Clauses of Comparison . . . . .	359
22. Uses of the Latin Infinitive . . . . .	361
<b>SUMMARY OF FORMS FOR RAPID REVIEW OR A SHORT PRE-</b>	
<b>PARATORY COURSE . . . . .</b>	<b>363-370</b>
<b>VOCABULARY — LATIN-ENGLISH . . . . .</b>	<b>373</b>
<b>VOCABULARY — ENGLISH-LATIN . . . . .</b>	<b>405</b>
<b>INDEX . . . . .</b>	<b>425</b>

## ILLUSTRATIONS

	PAGE
The Death of Caesar . . . . .	<i>Frontispiece</i>
Jupiter . . . . .	5
Bronze Wolf of the Capitol . . . . .	9
A Roman Legion on the March . . . . .	11
<b>Galea</b> . . . . .	13
<b>Lōrica</b> . . . . .	15
Mars . . . . .	16
<b>Tuba</b> . . . . .	23
Neptune . . . . .	26
Apollo . . . . .	35
Roman Arms and Armor . . . . .	41
Roman Soldier attacking a Wall . . . . .	44
<b>Impedimenta</b> . . . . .	50
Mercury . . . . .	51
<b>Sarcinae</b> . . . . .	58
Vulcan . . . . .	50
<b>Testūdō</b> . . . . .	60
Juno . . . . .	73
Hannibal crossing the Rhone . . . . .	81
Julius Caesar landing in Britain . . . . .	93
<b>Lituus</b> . . . . .	106
Minerva . . . . .	107
<b>Vēxillum</b> . . . . .	114
Roman Standards . . . . .	115
Venus . . . . .	122
<b>Toga</b> . . . . .	132
Diana . . . . .	133



## ILLUSTRATIONS

xii

	PAGE
Medusa . . . . .	137
<b>Sagittarius</b> . . . . .	145
Vesta . . . . .	148
<b>Scutum</b> . . . . .	151
<b>Catapulta</b> . . . . .	156
<b>Ballista</b> . . . . .	159
Ceres . . . . .	167
<b>Signifer</b> . . . . .	170
<b>Signum Legionis</b> . . . . .	172
British Warriors . . . . .	178
Sacrifice to Bacchus . . . . .	183
<b>Scalae</b> . . . . .	187
<b>Ariës</b> . . . . .	180
The Sacred Geese . . . . .	197
The Wolf and the Lamb . . . . .	211
Perseus and Andromeda . . . . .	215
A Roman War Galley . . . . .	220
<b>Arietës, Turrës, Vineae</b> . . . . .	232
Pluto and Proserpina . . . . .	246
Charon . . . . .	271
The Fox and the Grapes . . . . .	293
The Sabine Women . . . . .	298
Departure of Regulus . . . . .	302
Roman Legionary Soldier . . . . .	312
Alexander the Great . . . . .	362



# INTRODUCTION

## THE LATIN LANGUAGE

THE Latin studied in schools is Classical Latin—that is, the language spoken and written by cultured Romans of the latter days of the Republic and the early days of the Empire (50 B.C.—50 A.D.), such as Julius Caesar, the great soldier, author and statesman; Cicero, the orator; Vergil and Horace, the two greatest Roman poets; and Livy, the historian.

Latin is usually thought of as a *dead language*, but it lives in the writings of these great men, just as the English of Chaucer (almost a foreign language to us) lives in his immortal "Canterbury Tales." It is the only universal language of men of letters to-day. It lives in thousands of words in our own language. It is the language of all the technicalities and maxims of the law courts. It is the language in which the ritual of the Roman Catholic Church is conducted in all countries and in which all the official documents of that church are promulgated.

Latin is a highly *inflectional* language as compared with English, which is almost entirely *analytical* or *non-inflectional*. Latin, as a result, is more terse, vigorous, and flexible. Rhythm and emphasis can be more freely secured in Latin, because in English the sense is shown almost entirely by a rather rigid order of words.

As a study, Latin is valuable for the following reasons:—

1. Because thirty per cent of English words are derived from Latin.

2. Because, being no longer used in every-day speech, it is fixed and affords an opportunity for studying the principles of language from an impartial standpoint.

3. Because the learning of it, by a peculiar exercise, trains the mind to be *observant*, *accurate* and *systematic*, and develops the faculty of *expression*.

4. Because its literature is a model and inspiration for all modern excellence in prose, poetry and oratory.

5. Because a knowledge of Latin is regarded as a foundation of all true liberal culture.

### THE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN

1. **The English Method.** — Few rules need be laid down for what is called the English Pronunciation of Latin. Latin words are pronounced very much as Latin roots in English words are pronounced. Care should be taken to learn the long and short vowels and to give full value to the former in the penult (or next to last) syllable. The penult should not be accented unless it is long, or unless there are only two syllables in the word, as —

*amābilis, amābīlīnī, amābat, pastōris, imperātor, rēgī.*

#### Vowel Sounds

*ā* as in *fate*.

*ē* as in *mete*.

*ī* as in *pine*.

*ō* as in *note*.

*ū* as in *duty*.

*ǣ* as in *fat*.

*ĕ* as in *met*.

*ĭ* as in *pin*.

*ŏ* as in *not*.

*ŭ* as in *but*.

#### Diphthongs

*ae = ee* as in *feet*.

*oe = oo* as in *feet*.

*au = aw* as in *awl*.

No general rules are needed for consonants. *c* and *g* are usually hard (as in *cab* and *gave*) before *a*, *o*, *u*, and soft (as in *cent* and *regent*) before *e* and *i*.

**2. The Roman Method.** — By far the more accurate and scientific pronunciation of Latin is that known as the Roman. No one knows exactly how the Romans pronounced their language, but modern scholars have, through scientific research, arrived at an approximately correct system. This is undoubtedly a very close approach to the pronunciation used by cultured Romans at the height of their civilization, *i.e.* from 50 B.C. to 50 A.D.

### 1. Vowels

<b>ā</b> as in <i>far, father, ah.</i>	<b>ā</b> as in the first syllable of <i>aha.</i>
<b>ē</b> as in <i>they.</i>	<b>ē</b> as in <i>met.</i>
<b>ī</b> as in <i>machine.</i>	<b>ī</b> as in <i>pin.</i>
<b>ō</b> as in <i>note.</i>	<b>ō</b> as in <i>obey, melody.</i>
<b>ū</b> as in <i>rude = oo</i> in <i>groom, fool.</i>	<b>ū</b> as in <i>pull, put, foot</i> ; not as
<b>y</b> as in French <i>u</i> , German <i>ü.</i>	in <i>but.</i>

### 2. Diphthongs

- ae** like *ai* in *aisle*, or *a* in *fate.*
- oe** like *oi* in *oil.*
- oi** as in *rein.*
- au** like *ow* in *how.*
- ou** pronounced with *ē* and *ū* in rapid succession.
- ui** like *wee*, *e.g.* **cuī** = *knee*, **huc** = *wheel.*

### 3. Consonants

- b, d, f, h, k, l, m, n, p, q** as in English, except that **bs, bt** are sounded as **ps, pt.**
- c** always as **k**, never as **s.** (But **Cāius** is pronounced **Gāius.**)
- t** always as plain **t**, *e.g.* **ō-rā-tī-ō**, not like *sh* as in *oration.*
- g** always as in *get.*
- j** has the sound of *y* as in *yet.* (NOTE.—*j* is merely a mode of writing the consonant value of *i.* Many Latin texts print *j* as *i.*)
- r** slightly trilled.
- s** always voiceless as in *hiss*, never like *z* as in *his, wise.*
- v** like Eng. *v* or *w.* Very many use the *w* sound, but there are good reasons for the *v* sound.
- x** always like *fs*; never like *gz* as in *eggs.*
- z** probably like English *z.*

## QUANTITY

Quantity is the distinction between long and short vowels or syllables. It is the same as *time* in music. A long vowel or syllable requires more time for its pronunciation than a short vowel or syllable.

A vowel may be long or short by its own nature. If the vowel is long, the syllable also must be long. A short vowel before two consonants may help to form (either by the prolongation of its own sound or by the obstruction occasioned by the consonants) a long syllable. The vowel is then sometimes said to be "long by position," and the consonants are said to "make position." The only evidence of such lengthening is to be found in metre, and, in the case of two consonants, metre does not show whether the length of the syllable is owing to the independent quantity of the vowel or to the effect of the two consonants upon a short vowel. In such cases, the quantity of the vowel is said to be "hidden." The quantity, then, must be determined by other evidences (see Preface).

The quantity of vowels must be learnt by observation and experience and, in the case of beginners, is best acquired by daily imitation from the lips of the teacher. A few rules, however, may be helpful:—

1. A vowel is *long*:—

(a) before *j* (consonantal *i*), *nf*, *ns*; often before *gn*, especially in nouns and adjectives ending in *-gnus*, *-gna*, *-gnum*; as *hūjus*, *infāns*, *signum*, *māgnus*.

(b) in case of contraction, as *nīl* for *nihil*.

2. A vowel is usually *short* before a vowel or *h*, as *mēus*, *trāhō*. Exceptions: *ūnius*, *Aenēas*, most forms of the verb *fīō*.

3. In metre, a short vowel is shown to produce a long syllable when followed by a double consonant (*x*, *z*) or two consonants (other than a mute and liquid, e.g. *pr*, *cl*): as, *āxis*, *gāza*, *rēstō*.

Before a mute (*p*, *c*, *t*, *d*, etc.) followed by *l* or *r*, a short vowel may remain short or may produce a long syllable.

## ACCENT

1. Words of two syllables are accented on the first; as *régō*.

2. In words of more than two syllables, if the penult (next to last) is long, it should be accented; otherwise the antepenult (second from the last); as—

*amāvērunt*, but *amāvērīnt*, *amāvērīmus*.



JUPITER

(Greek, ZEUS)

*(These Latin comments on mythology are not inserted as part of the pupil's course in grammar. They may be used inductively by the teacher to arouse interest and afterwards re-read by the pupil when his grammatical knowledge admits.)*

Jupiter est optimus et maximus deorum. Pater deum virumque appellatur. In Olympo habitat, concilio superorum praesidet. Dextra manu fulmen tenet, in malis jactat. Quercus est ei sacra. Neptunus et Pluto ejus fratres sunt. Patrem Saturnum regno deturbavit; Titanos fulminibus suis et Gigantes superavit.

## LESSON I

A Latin verb may be used alone to make a statement. The pronouns as subjects are not required except for emphasis, the pronominal meanings being indicated by the endings of the verb, which were themselves once unattached pronouns.

## FIRST CONJUGATION OF VERBS

## INDICATIVE MOOD

## PRESENT TENSE

**Vocō**, *I call*; Stem <sup>1</sup> **vocā-**

SINGULAR	
1. vocō	(1) <i>I call</i> , (2) <i>am calling</i> , (3) <i>do call</i> .
2. vocās	{ <i>thou callest</i> , <i>art calling</i> , etc.
3. vocat	{ <i>you call</i> (addressed to one person). <i>he</i> (she, it, some one) <i>calls</i> , etc.
PLURAL	
1. vocāmus	<i>we call</i> , etc.
2. vocātis	<i>you or ye call</i> , etc.
3. vocant	<i>they call</i> , etc.

**nōn vocat**, *he calls not* = *he does not call*; *is not calling*.

1. Observe the position of **nōn**, — before the word negatived.
2. Observe the stem **vocā-**. This is called the **Present stem**.
3. Observe the endings and their values; as —  
-s = *thou*, -mus = *we*, -nt = *they*, etc.

The following verbs are inflected like **vocō**: —

<b>amō</b> , <i>love</i> .	<b>creō</b> , <i>create, appoint</i> .
<b>pugnō</b> , <i>fight</i> .	<b>parō</b> , <i>prepare</i> .
<b>superō</b> , <i>overcome, conquer, surpass</i> .	<b>laudō</b> , <i>praise</i> .
<b>vulnerō</b> , <i>wound</i> .	<b>cantō</b> , <i>sing</i> .
<b>dō</b> , <i>give</i> (except that the stem is <b>dā-</b> ).	<b>necō</b> , <i>kill</i> .
<b>portō</b> , <i>carry</i> .	<b>rēgnō</b> , <i>reign</i> .
<b>nūntiō</b> , <i>announce, report</i> .	

<sup>1</sup> *Stem*: that part of a word on which the inflections are based; usually the part that does not change.



VERBS LIKE VOCŌ

7

Pres. Indic. of **dō**, *I give*.

dō	dāmus
dās	dātis
dat	dant

Note the short vowel in **dāmus**, **dātis**.

EXERCISE

(For Vocabulary, see page 282)

- A. 1. Portant, portāmus, nōn portās.  
 2. Laudātis, nōn superās, nūntiant, dātis.  
 3. Vēnus amat; Mārs pugnat; Jūpiter vulnerat et rēgnat.  
 4. Quis dat? Nōn dāmus; nōn dās.  
 5. Deus creat. Quis necat?  
 6. Parās, nōn portātis, nūntiāmus.  
 7. Deus et amat et dat.  
 8. Neque dās neque vulnerās.  
 9. Minerva pugnat sed nōn amat.  
 10. Cantāmus, superātis, superās.
- B. 1. Mercury announces. Who fights?  
 2. We do not kill but love.  
 3. Thou preparest, ye are not giving, thou dost not give.  
 4. You (sing.) overcome; you (plur.) are not wounding.  
 5. They wound, but they do not kill.  
 6. We fight not, neither do we kill.  
 7. You (sing.) neither give nor praise.  
 8. Diana wounds; the Muse sings.  
 9. We both fight and conquer.  
 10. Minerva loves not but she fights.  
 11. You (sing.) report; you (plur.) are not singing.  
 12. Mars fights; who reigns and wounds?  
 13. You (sing.) are both fighting and conquering.

## LESSON II

## CASE

Latin has six cases.

Their values may be briefly stated as follows:—

## LATIN CASES

Name of Case	Answers the Question	Chief Uses
1. <b>Nominative</b>	Who? what?	1. <b>Subject.</b> 2. Predicate of such verbs as "be," "become," "am called," etc.
2. <b>Genitive</b>	Whose? of what?	= Eng. <b>Possessive with 's,</b> or <b>Objective with of.</b> Used to define or restrict the application of Nouns and certain Adjectives.
3. <b>Dative</b> (datus, given)	To or for whom? To or for what? ( <i>Not motion to or towards</i> )	<b>Indirect Object.</b> To denote the <b>receiver,</b> or the person or thing indirectly affected, favorably or unfavorably. Also used with certain Adjectives.
4. <b>Accusative</b>	Whom? what?	1. <b>Direct Object.</b> 2. Object of many Prepositions, as <i>ad, to, towards; in, into; per, through; trans, across.</i>
5. <b>Vocative</b> (vocō, I call)	—	Eng. <b>Nominative of Address.</b>
6. <b>Ablative</b>	From whom or what? By, with, in whom or what?	To denote <b>separation, source, cause, manner, means, place in which,</b> and certain other relations. The Ablative often requires a preposition to define its meaning, as:— <i>in terrā, in or on the earth.</i>

An **Appositive** agrees in case with the word to which it stands in apposition.

Latin has no **Article**. Hence *terra* = *a land* or *the land*.

### EXERCISE

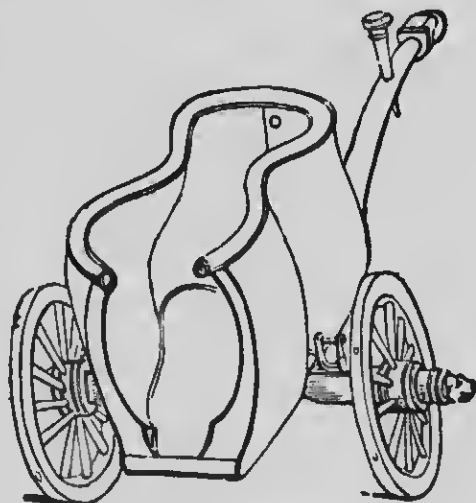
1. Write out from memory the *names* of the Latin cases in the order given.

2. Give orally their most common *values* or *uses*, with English examples.

3. Which case denotes *the possessor? the receiver? separation?* Which are used as Direct Object, Indirect Object, Nominative of Address?

4. How are *by, of, with, 's*, the person *to whom* a thing is given, *for whom* a thing is done, *motion towards*, expressed?

5. What case would each of the following govern: *send to, say to, call a person to, make a thing for, set out for, go to, easy for, useful to?*



ROMAN CHARIOT

## LESSON III

## FIRST DECLENSION

## "A" Stems

**Terra, the earth, a land; stem, terrā-**

SINGULAR		PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	terr a	terr ae
<i>Gen.</i>	terr ae	terr ārum
<i>Dat.</i>	terr ae	terr is
<i>Acc.</i>	terr am	terr ās
<i>Voc.</i>	terr a	terr ae
<i>Abl.</i>	terr ā	terr is

## EXERCISE

(For Vocabulary, see page 282)

- A.
1. Canada est patria nostra.
  2. Canadam, patriam nostram, amāmus.
  3. Incolae Britanniae corōnam rēginae dant.
  4. Britannia colōniās habet.
  5. Canada et Austrālia sunt colōniae.
  6. In Āfricā quōque sunt colōniae Britanniae.
  7. Prōvinciās septem habet Canada.
  8. Manitōba est Canadae prōvincia.
  9. Nova Scōtia quōque et Columbia Britannica sunt prōvinciac.
  10. Colōniārum prīma est Canada.
  11. Cūr, agricola, Italiā amās? Quod agricolārum patria est.
- B.
1. Rome is in Italy.
  2. Britain was a province of Rome.
  3. Italy is a land of Europe.

4. The farmer ploughs the land.
5. The inhabitants of the provinces love (their) native land.
6. Sailors love the waves, nor do they shun the storm-blast.
7. We give the queen a crown.
8. She loves roses.
9. A rōse also we give (her).

C. Answer the following questions by single words in Latin : —

*(The questions are not to be translated into Latin.)*

1. **Whom** does the storm not terrify ? (The sailor.)
2. **To whom** have we given a crown ? (To the queen.)
3. **Whose** colony is Canada ? (Britain's.)
4. **Who** loves the waves and storms ? (The sailor.)



A ROMAN LEGION ON THE MARCH

*Lēgātī agmen mīlitum Rōmānōrum dūcunt*

## LESSON IV

1. **Motion to** is expressed by the preposition **ad** and the **Accusative**,<sup>1</sup> not by the Dative; as **Ad terram nāvīgat**, *He sails to (towards) the land.*

2. The English "in" or "on" is translated by the Latin preposition **in** and the **Ablative**,<sup>1</sup> denoting **rest** or continuance *in* or *on a place*, as **in prōvinciā**, *in the province*; **in terrā**, *on the earth.*

3. The English "into" is translated by the Latin preposition **in** and the **Accusative**, denoting **motion**, as **In aquam rosam jactat**, *He throws the rose into the water.*

**Dea**, a goddess, and **filia**, a daughter, often take **-abus** in the Dat. and Abl. plur., instead of **-is**, to distinguish these forms from those of **deus**, a god, and **filius**, a son.

## EXERCISE

(For Vocabulary, see page 283)

- A. 1. **Puellae rosās ad scholam portant.**
2. **Magistrae rosās dat puella.**
3. **Puellās in scholam magistra vocat.**
4. **Magistra filiābus agricolārum fābulās in scholā nārrat.**
5. **Rosās in viam magistra nōn jactat, sed in scholam portat. Nunc in aquā sunt.**
6. **Puellae fābulās magistrae amant; rosās puellārum magistra. (What Latin verb is understood here?)**
7. **Ārās deābus incolae aedificant.**

<sup>1</sup> It is really the Accusative or Ablative that denotes *motion to* or *rest in*. The preposition merely helps to define the meaning. Prepositions were originally adverbs.

- B. 1. They carry roses to the altars of the goddesses.  
 2. We give wreaths of roses to the goddesses.  
 3. We carry to the altar. They give to the goddess.  
 4. The island is amid (= in) the waves.  
 5. They do not throw the roses into the water.  
 6. Why, farmers, do ye give your daughters neither money nor roses?  
 7. Why does the teacher tell the girls stories?  
 8. Because she loves the girls.  
 9. Why do they bring roses to the teacher? Because they love the teacher.  
 10. The teacher loves both girls and roses; the girls both stories and teacher.

C. Answer the following in Latin: —

1. **To whom** do the girls give roses? (To the teacher.)
2. **Whither** are they carrying roses? (To school.)
3. **What** do the girls love to hear?
4. **What** are dear to the teacher? (The girls' roses.)
5. **Whose** altars are they building? (The goddesses'.)



GALEA

Multa arma habet miles Rōmānus.

Galea caput tegit.

Praeter hanc sunt lōrīca, scūtum,  
ocreae.

LESSON V

CHIEFLY ON THE ABLATIVE AND CERTAIN  
PREPOSITIONS

1. The English word "with" has two values:—

(1) In the sense "by means of" it is translated by the bare Ablative (called the Ablative of Means or Instrument), as:— *Nautam hastā necat, He kills the sailor with a spear.*

(2) When it means "together with," "accompanied by," it is translated by the preposition *cum* and the Ablative (called the Ablative of Accompaniment), as:— *Agricola est cum nautā, The farmer is with the sailor.*

2. "For" does not always indicate the Dative. When "for" means "in behalf of," "in defence of," "instead of," "in return for," it is translated by *prō* and the Ablative. *Prō* primarily means "in front of."

3. *Ā, ab*, "(away) from," and *ē, ex*, "out of," govern the Ablative of Separation (*ā, ē*, before consonants, except *h*; *ab, ex*, before vowels and some consonants).

EXERCISE

(For Vocabulary, see page 283)

- A. 1. *Agricola aquilam sagittā vulnerat.*
2. *Aquila nunc in aquā est.*
3. *Puellae cum magistrā in scholā sunt.*
4. *Cūr, nautae, agricolās hastīs vulnerātis?*
5. *Undae agricolās cum nautīs ad ōram portant.*
6. *Magistra cum filiābus agricolārum in umbrā est silvārum.*
7. *Incolae Italiae prō ūrīs et deābus pugnant.*

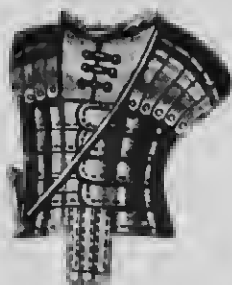


8. *Diāna bestiās sagittīs in silvā vulnerat.*
9. *Ārās deārum, puellae, corōnis rosārum ōrūntis.*
10. *Ab ōris Britanniae undae nautās portant.*
11. *Prō āris deārum pugnant.*
12. *Puellae prō portīs scholae cantant.*
13. *Ā viā errāmus neque rosās ad scholam portāmus.*

- B.*
1. Out of the water; away from the islands.
  2. Out of the gates; away from school.
  3. The girls are adorning the teacher's table with roses.
  4. The inhabitants of the islands are in the arena with the beasts.
  5. We fight for (our) native land.
  6. Diana wounds the beasts with arrow and spear.

## ON PREPOSITIONS

- |   |                             |
|---|-----------------------------|
| 1. Among the woods.                     | 5. Across the waves.        |
| 2. Through the water.                   | 6. Into the arena.          |
| 3. Around the island.                   | 7. They sail to the island. |
| 4. In front of the gates of the school. | 8. We give to the queen.    |
|   | 9. With the queen.          |



LŌRICA

Lōrica corpus tegit.



MARS

(Greek, ARÉS)

Mars est belli deus. Ab eō populus Rōmānus ortus est. Filius enim ejus, Rōmulus, Rōmam urbem condidit. Mēsis Mārtius dē ejus nōmine appellātur. In Campō Mārtiō milites Rōmāni, aciē instructā, exercēbantur.

## LESSON VI

## IMPERFECT AND FUTURE TENSES

Note the following forms with their names and values: —

PRESENT	<b>vocō</b>	(1) <i>I call</i> , (2) <i>am calling</i> , (3) <i>do call</i> .
IMPERFECT	<b>vocā bam</b>	(1) <i>I was calling</i> , (2) <i>used to call</i> , (3) <i>called, did call</i> (repeatedly).
FUTURE	<b>vocā bō</b>	(1) <i>I shall call</i> , (2) <i>shall be calling</i> .

## IMPERFECT TENSE

## SINGULAR

1. **vocā ba m** *I was calling; used to call, etc.*
2. **vocā bā s** *thou wast calling, etc.*
3. **vocā ba t** *he was calling, etc.*

## PLURAL

1. **vocā bā mus** *we were calling, etc.*
2. **vocā bā tis** *you were calling, etc.*
3. **vocā ba nt** *they were calling, etc.*

## FUTURE TENSE

## SINGULAR

1. **vocā bō** *I shall call; shall be calling.*
2. **vocā bī s** *thou wilt call, etc.*
3. **vocā bī t** *he will call, etc.*

## PLURAL

1. **vocā bī mus** *we shall call, etc.*
2. **vocā bī tis** *you will call, etc.*
3. **vocā bu nt** *they will call, etc.*

Observe the tense stems: —

PRESENT	<b>vocā</b>	<i>call, calling.</i>
IMPERFECT	<b>vocā bā</b>	<i>was calling.</i>
FUTURE	<b>vocā bī</b>	<i>shall (will) call. (Also -bō, -bu.)</i>

## VALUES OF THE IMPERFECT

IMPERFECT SIGN -*ā* = *was, used to.*

FUTURE SIGN -*bi* (-*bō* in 1 sing., and -*bu* in 3 plur.) = *shall, will.*

## PERSONAL (OR PRONOMINAL) ENDINGS

-*m* = *I.*

-*s* = *thou (you).*

-*t* = *he, etc.*

-*mus* = *we.*

-*tis* = *you (ye).*

-*nt* = *they.*

These are almost the same in all tenses. The full set is in the imperfect. In *vocō* and *vocābō* the -*m* is lost.

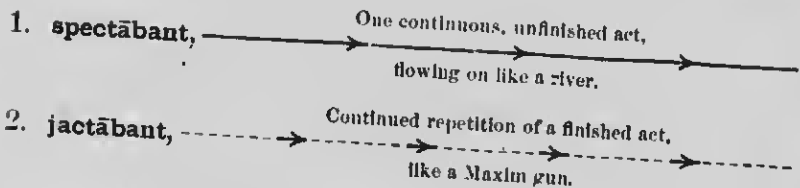
{ *vocā ba m* }  
{ *calling was I* }

{ *vocā bi mus* }  
{ *call shall we* }

## VALUES OF THE IMPERFECT

Study the meanings of the imperfect in the following:—

1. *Stellās tōtam noctem spectābant* = *All night they watched (continued, without interruption, to watch) the stars.*
2. *Hastās jactābant* = *They hurled (kept hurling) their spears (at intervals).*



Note that in Latin grammar the term "Imperfect" is used as a short substitute for "Past Imperfect."

**RULE.** — The Imperfect (as its name implies) is used to denote an act or state of affairs viewed as not completed.

The most characteristic use of the Imperfect is to describe the circumstance or situation.

## EXERCISE

*(For Vocabulary, see page 283)*

- A. 1. Jactābant, jactābunt, errābit, errābimus.  
 2. Vocābis, vocābātis, vocābitis, vocābās.  
 3. Nautae ab ōris nāvigābant.  
 4. Quandō ex Britannīā nāvigābunt?  
 5. Stellās et lūnam exspectābant.  
 6. Nōn terram dēsīderant neque procellās vītant.  
 7. Puellās in scholam vocābō.  
 8. Magistra puellās ad portam vocābat.  
 9. Cūr, agricolae, prō portīs pugnābātis?  
 10. Quandō procella nautās in undīs jactābit?  
 11. Nūntiās, nūntiābās, nūntiābis.  
 12. Arābunt, arābātis, nōn arās, arābis.  
 13. Portābāmus, vocābimus, vulnerābunt.
- B. 1. He will praise, was praising, is praising.  
 2. They watched for the moon.  
 3. We shall announce to the queen the flight of the sailors.  
 4. Diana used to wound the beasts of the forest with arrows.  
 5. The girls were standing in front of the doors.  
 6. We shall not kill the beast in front of the altar.  
 7. They are standing, they stood, they will stand.  
 8. Thou givest, thou wilt give, ye will give, ye were giving.  
 9. They wandered through the woods.  
 10. They will not long for the land.

---

The Trojan war, 1194–1184 B.C.  
 Aeneas sails to Italy. Alba Longa, the mother city of Rome, founded by his son Iulus.

## SECOND DECLENSION

## LESSON VII

## SECOND DECLENSION

## "O" Stems

**Servus**, a slave; stem, **servō-**.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	serv <b>us</b>	serv <b>i</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	serv <b>i</b>	serv <b>ōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	serv <b>ō</b>	serv <b>īs</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	serv <b>um</b>	serv <b>ōs</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	serv <b>ē</b>	serv <b>i</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	serv <b>ō</b>	serv <b>īs</b>

1. Earlier Latin shows **servōs** (Nom.), **servom** (Acc.). Compare **servōs**, **servom**, **servō**, **servōrum**, **servōs** with **terrā**, **terrām**, **terrā**, **terrārum**, **terrās**, and note the **prevalent form of the stem**,

**servō-**                      **terrā-**

2. The declension of **deus**, a god, is irregular.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	deus	dei, dii, or di
<i>Gen.</i>	dei	deōrum or deūm
<i>Dat.</i>	deō	deis, diis, or dis
<i>Acc.</i>	deūm	deōs
<i>Voc.</i>	(lacking)	dei, dii, or di
<i>Abl.</i>	deō	deis, diis, or dis

Distinguish **deūm** and **deūm**.

For the Voc., the Nom. form **deus** is sometimes given.

3. (1) **Proper names** ending in **-ius** and **filius**, a son, contract **-ie** of the Voc. sing. into **-i**.

(2) They usually contract **-ii** of the Gen. sing. into **-i**.

**Mercūri**, (1) of Mercury, (2) O Mercury.

**fili mi**, O my son.

**fili** (or **fili**) **mei**, of my son.

Note that in the contracted form **Mercūri** the accent is on the penult, though short; see page 4.

## EXERCISE

*(For Vocabulary, see page 284)*

- A. 1. Gallī lēgātōs ōrant.  
 2. Gallōs equī dēlectant.  
 3. Hortum arābimus.  
 4. In hortō sunt rosae.  
 5. Prō dominō servus pugnābit.  
 6. Britannia in Ōceanō est.  
 7. Cūr, fili, nōn in hortō arās? Quod umbram  
 fāgōrum amō.  
 8. Filiō et filiae pecūniam dat.  
 9. Prō dīs et deābus pugnābunt.  
 10. Deōs et deās amābant.  
 11. Mūrōs et arās aedificant.  
 12. Populum laudat, nōn deōs culpat.  
 13. Cūr, domine, servō pecūniam nōn dās.  
 14. Lēgātōs Gallōrum exspectat.  
 15. Amicōs laudāmus, inimicōs vitāmus.
- B. 1. They seek the altars of the gods and goddesses.  
 2. He will build a wall and an altar.  
 3. He was sailing into the ocean.  
 4. The garden delights the eyes of the master.  
 5. The beech-trees give shade to the slaves.  
 6. The slaves are in the garden with the master's sons.  
 7. Why, slave, dost thou not love thy master?  
 8. The slaves will not shun the eyes of their masters.  
 9. The Romans are on a mound.  
 10. The sailor loves the winds. He sails by the wind.  
 11. They give money to (their) sons and daughters.

---

Romulus and Remus, according to the Roman legend, were the sons of the god Mars and Rhea Silvia, a Vestal priestess and a descendant of Aeneas. Hence the Romans were the "Sons of Mars."

## LESSON VIII

## SECOND DECLENSION

NOUNS ENDING IN *-er* AND *-ir*

	<i>Puer, a boy</i>	Stem, <i>puerō-</i>		Bare stem, <i>puer-</i>
	<i>Agar, a field</i>	Stem, <i>agrō-</i>		Bare stem, <i>agr-</i>
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>puer</i>	<i>puer i</i>	<i>ager</i>	<i>agr i</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>puer i</i>	<i>puer ōrum</i>	<i>agr i</i>	<i>agr ōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>puer ō</i>	<i>puer is</i>	<i>agr ō</i>	<i>agr is</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>puer um</i>	<i>puer ōa</i>	<i>agr um</i>	<i>agr ōa</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>puer</i>	<i>puer i</i>	<i>ager</i>	<i>agr i</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>puer ō</i>	<i>puer ia</i>	<i>agr ō</i>	<i>agr is</i>

1. What endings are lacking in the *Nom.* and *Voc.* sing. ?
2. Note that in **ager** the bare stem **agr-** is developed in the *Nom.* and *Voc.* into the fuller form **ager** owing to the absence of the ending.
3. Most words of the second declension ending in **er-** are like **ager**; as—

**liber, libri, a book.**

**fāber, fābri, a workman.**

**magister, magistri, a master (teacher), captain (of a boat).**

The following are declined like **puer**:—

**gener, generi, son-in-law.**

**socer, soceri, father in-law.**

**liber, liberi, Bacchus, the god of wine.**

**liberi, -ōrum, children.**

Compounds of **-fer** and **-ger**, e.g.

**aquilifer, a standard-bearer,**

**armiger, armor-bearer.**

**Vir, a man; stem, virō-**

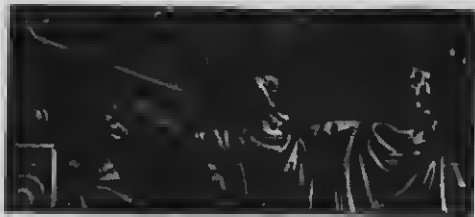
	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>vir</i>	<i>vir i</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>vir i</i>	<i>vir ōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>vir ō</i>	<i>vir is</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>vir um</i>	<i>vir ōs</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>vir</i>	<i>vir i</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>vir ō</i>	<i>vir is</i>



## EXERCISE

*(For Vocabulary, see page 284)*

- A. 1. Puerōs magistrī laudābunt.  
 2. Puerī lūdōs spectābant.  
 3. Librōs ad scholam portāmus.  
 4. Cūr, puer, librum nōn spectās?  
 5. Signiferī aquilās portant.  
 6. Fabrōs ex Galliā in Britanniam trānsportābit.  
 7. Mālōs amant puerī. Puerōs virī fugant.  
 8. Librōs discipulis dabunt.  
 9. Gallōs in fugam dat.  
 10. Rhēnus et Rhodanus sunt fluvii Galliae.
- B. 1. The masters are with the boys in the field.  
 2. The lieutenant gives the eagle to the standard-bearer.  
 3. The Germans lay waste the villages of the Gauls on the banks of the river Rhine.  
 4. The workmen will give books to their children.  
 5. The men and the boys were ploughing the field.  
 6. Through the field; in the field; into the fields.  
 7. In the book; in the books; of the books; of the children.  
 8. In the rivers; we carry to the river; out of the river; away from the river; across the rivers.



Tuba militēs Rōmānōs ad proelium convocat

## LESSON IX

## GENDER

1. Observe the gender of the following nouns: —

FEMININE	MASCULINE
<i>rēgīna, queen.</i>	<i>dominus, lord, master.</i>
<i>filia, daughter.</i>	<i>servus, slave.</i>
<i>dea, goddess.</i>	<i>lēgātus, lieutenant.</i>
<i>puella, girl.</i>	<i>puer, boy.</i>
<i>magistra, mistress.</i>	<i>magister, master.</i>

This is according to meaning and is called **Natural Gender**, *i.e.* gender based upon sex.

2. Observe the following: —

FEMININE	MASCULINE
<i>porta, gate.</i>	<i>hortus, garden.</i>
<i>insula, island.</i>	<i>oculus, eye.</i>
<i>patria, native land.</i>	<i>gladius, sword.</i>
	<i>ager, field.</i>
	<i>liber, book.</i>

In English all of these names of *inanimate objects* are *neuter*. The Latins seem to have formed the impression, from such nouns as in section 1, that words ending in *-a* of the first declension, irrespective of sex, should be *feminine*, and that those of the second declension ending in *-us* and *-er* should be *masculine*. Hence arose what is called **Grammatical Gender**, *i.e.* gender based upon *grammatical form* apart from the meaning.

Exceptions to the rules for Grammatical Gender are often met with: —

## MASCULINE EXCEPTIONS

## FIRST DECLENSION

- nauta**, *sailor*. **agricola**, *farmer*.  
**incola**, *inhabitant* (this is of common gender; *i.e.* may be masculine or feminine). **poëta**, *poet*.  
**Hadria**, *the Adriatic* (a kind of personification based upon the notion of strength, violence).

## FEMININE EXCEPTIONS

## SECOND DECLENSION

- Most names of trees, *e.g.*:— Also:—  
**fāgus**, *beech*. **humus**, *ground*.  
**mālus**, *apple-tree*. **alvus**, *belly*.  
**ornus**, *ash-tree*.

## NEUTER EXCEPTIONS

## SECOND DECLENSION

- vīrus**, *poison*. } These nouns are not used in the plural.  
**vulgus**, *crowd*. } **Vulgus** is sometimes masculine.  
**pelagus**, *sea*. }

## Special Rules of Gender:—

- Names of trees are usually feminine, as **mālus**, *apple-tree*.
- Indeclinable nouns are neuter, as **nihil**, *nothing*; **nefās**, *wrong*.

Nouns ending in **-um** are, without exception, *Neuter* (*see next lesson*); as —

- bellum**, *war*. **signum**, *standard, image*.  
**proelium**, *battle*. **templum**, *temple*.  
**periculum**, *danger*. **rēgnum**, *kingdom*.  
**oppidum**, *town*.

## EXERCISE

State the gender of the following nouns, pointing out instances of grammatical gender, and indicate exceptions:—

- patria**, **dea**, **Hadria**, **hortus**, **servus**, **bellum**, **pelagus**.
- ager**, **puer**, **liber**, **Liber**, **magistra**, **incola**, **porta**, **vulgus**.
- oculus**, **signum**, **vīrus**, **fāgus**, **vir**, **nauta**, **humus**.



NEPTUNE

(Greek, Poseidon)

Deus marinus est Neptūnus, Jovis et Plūtōnis frāter. Neptūnus et Apollō olim mūrōs Trōjae, rēgis Lāouedontis rogātū, aedificāvērunt. Ubi opus cōnfēcērunt, rēx eis praemia pacta dare nōluit. Neptūnus horribile mōnstrum ē mari misit filiam rēgis perfidi dēvorātum. Herculēs hōc mōnstrum necāvit et virginem Hēsilonēn servāvit.

## LESSON X

## SECOND DECLENSION

## NEUTER NOUNS

**Bellum, war; stem, bellō-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	bell <b>um</b>	bell <b>a</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	bell <b>ī</b>	bell <b>ōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	bell <b>ō</b>	bell <b>is</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	bell <b>um</b>	bell <b>a</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	bell <b>um</b>	bell <b>a</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	bell <b>ō</b>	bell <b>is</b>

**Rule for Neuter Nouns of All Declensions:—**

(See pages 60 and 85 for neuters of the third and fourth declensions.)

1. *Nom.*, *Acc.* and *Voc.* are always alike.
2. These three cases in the plural always end in **-ā**.

**Locus, a place**, has two plurals, one neuter, the other masculine; as—

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i>	locus, <i>place</i>	(1) loca, <i>places</i>	(2) loci, <i>topics</i>	
<i>Gen.</i>	loci	locōrum	locōrum	
<i>Dat.</i>	locō	locis	locis	
<i>Acc.</i>	locum	loca	locōs	
<i>Voc.</i>	loce	loca	loci	
<i>Abl.</i>	locō	locis	locis	

The word **castra, -ōrum, a camp**, is plural in form, and usually singular in meaning. The sing. **castrum** means *a fort*. Similarly,

<b>impedimentum, a hindrance.</b>	<b>impedimenta, baggage.</b>
<b>frumentum, grain, corn.</b>	<b>frumenta, crops.</b>
<b>auxilium, aid, assistance.</b>	<b>auxilia, reinforcements.</b>
<b>cōpia, plenty.</b>	<b>cōpiae, (1) supplies, (2) military forces.</b>

**arma, -ōrum**, n. plur. *defensive armor*, is never used in the singular. Nouns in **-ius** and **-ium** until the reign of Augustus formed the Gen. sing. in **-ī** (instead of **-II**); as—

<i>Nom.</i>	ingenlum	· filius
<i>Gen.</i>	ingent	filii

## EXERCISE

(For Vocabulary, see page 284)

- A. 1. Sīgna Rōmānōrum erant aquilae.  
 2. In proeliis aquilās et pīla portābant.  
 3. Aurum et argentum in periculō sunt.  
 4. Gladiōs et tēla, fundās et hastās et sagittās portant.  
 5. Arma Rōmānōrum erant galeae et scēta et lōricae.  
 6. Rōmānī tēla saxaque tormentis jactābant.  
 7. Sīgna in castra portant; in castris sunt.  
 8. Ferrō Gallōs superant Rōmānī.  
 9. Inter carrōs et impedimenta pugnant.  
 10. Impedimenta carris jumentisque portābant; sarcinās et tēla et arma brachiis et humeris.  
 11. Praemia pueris dant magistrī.  
 12. Lūnam stellāsque spectāmus. In caelō sunt.  
 13. Castrā vāllō et fossā circumdabimus.
- B. 1. The Romans occupy places on the banks of the river Rhine.  
 2. The Germans seize the towns and villages of the Gauls.  
 3. In the towns of the Romans (there) are temples.  
 4. They carry their (heavy) baggage and (personal) baggage to the gates of the camp.  
 5. Into the towns; into the street; into the camp.  
 6. In the street; in the camp; in the town; in Gaul.  
 7. They lay waste both fields and buildings.

## REVIEW WORD LIST

Give Latin words for: —

1. Camp, ditch, rampart, gate, street.
2. Armor, missile, spear, javelin, arrow, sword, sling, war engine, standard, eagle, gold, silver, iron.
3. Wagon, horse, beast of burden, arm (of the body), shoulder.
4. Town, village, temple, building, river, bank, place, places.
5. Sky, star, moon, earth.

## READING LESSON

## THE TROJAN WAR

(For Vocabulary, see page 285)

Translate: —

Decem annōrum bellum apud Trōjam erat inter Graecōs et Trōjānōs. Trōjānum bellum poētae appellant. Helena erat causa bellī. Priamus in oppidō Trōjā rēgnābat. Paris, Priamī filius, ad oppidum Spartam nāvīgat et Helenam ex oppidō portat.

Menelāus, vir Helenae, in oppidō Spartā rēgnābat. Cum Trōjānīs Menelāus et Graecī bellant. Multa et horrida in bellō Trōjānō proelia erant. In oppidō erant māgna et splendida templa atque aedificia. Equum māgnū ex lignō Graecī fabricant. In equō multōs virōs occultant. Trōjānī rotīs equum in oppidum trahunt.<sup>1</sup> Graecī ex equō sē<sup>2</sup> dēmittunt.<sup>1</sup> Ita oppidum expugnant; templa et aedificia vāstant; Priamum necant. Helenam ad Graeciam portat Menelāus.

**Idiom** is a peculiarity of expression belonging to one language as compared with another.

<sup>1</sup> A verb of the third conjugation; see p. 45.

<sup>2</sup> *themselves*, a Reflexive Pronoun.

Note the following differences of Latin and English idiom that occur in the preceding narrative:—

ENGLISH	LATIN
1. Ten years' war	war of ten years
2. (There) was	no word for introductory "there"
3. The town (of) Sparta	the town Sparta
4. Many splendid temples	many and splendid
5. Note the free use of the Historical (Vivid) Present in Latin.	

### REVIEW WORD LISTS

1	2	3	4
vulnerō	puer	rīpa	umbra
superō	vir	fluvius	fāgus
quis	discipulus	vicus	mālus
cūr, quod	magister	oppidum	ornus
et	magistra	castra	ōrō
neque...neque	dominus	locus	aedificō
et...et	servus	errō	populus
atque	filia	nāvīgō	lēgātus
parō	filius	stella	ōrnō
necō	dea	lūna	vāstō
nūntiō	deus	caelum	nūntius
quoque	ager	-que	amīcus
est, sunt	vitō	dēsīderō	inimīcus
unda	vīta	quandō	Gāllus
ōra	fābula	vocō	Gallia
procella	āra	lūdus	liber
aqua	arō	fuga	faber
aquila	jactō	stō	Liber
corōna	portō	pecūnia	liberī
rēgīna	porta	hortus	incolā
puella	silva	mūrus	



5	6	7	8
vīrus	vāllum	queen	boy
vir	fossa	crown	son
vulgus	impedimenta	rose	girl
pelagus	sarcinae	island	daughter
bellum	carrus	river	pupil
proelium	loca	bank	teacher
periculum	arma	coast	master
signum	gladius	place	slave
tēlum	ferrum	places	workman
scūtum	aurum	town	book
tormentum	argentum	land	children
oppidum	pīlum	sea	altar
templum	hasta	wave	temple
aedificium	sagitta	storm	building
rēgnum	funda	shade	people
frūmentum	galea	forest	god
castra	saxum	man	goddess
9	10	11	12
conquer	arms	<i>Tell the case governed by prepositions</i>	
fight	missile	through	and
wound	spear	across	both . . . and
kill	javelin	into	neither . . . nor
flight	shield	in	but
put to rout	arrow	in front of	also
war	sword	why?	heavy baggage
battle	sling	who?	personal baggage
camp	war-engine	because	eagle
ditch	stone, rock	when?	eagle-bearer
rampart	report	away from	
gate	village	out of	
street	lieutenant	towards, to	
field	standard	between	
	ambassador		

## LESSON XI

## PERFECT TENSES

The following is the complete set of tenses for the Indicative Mood:—

PRESENT	<b>vocō</b> , <i>I call, am calling, do call.</i>
IMPERFECT	<b>vocā bam</b> , <i>I called (repeatedly), was calling.</i>
FUTURE	<b>vocā bō</b> , <i>I shall call.</i>
PERFECT	<b>vocāv ī</b> , 1. <i>I have called.</i> 2. <i>I called (once).</i>
PLUPERFECT	<b>vocāv eram</b> , <i>I had called.</i>
FUTURE PERFECT	<b>vocāv erō</b> , <i>I shall have called.</i>

Perfect stem, **vocāv-**

Similarly	<b>dō</b>	<b>dēd ī</b>
	<b>dā bam</b>	<b>dēd eram</b>
	<b>dā bō</b>	<b>dēd erō</b>

Perfect stem, **dēd-**

## PERFECT

<b>vocāv ī</b>	<b>vocāv īmus</b>
<b>vocāv istī</b>	<b>vocāv istis</b>
<b>vocāv it</b>	<b>vocāv ĩrunt</b>

So also **dedī, dedistī, dedit**, etc.

## PLUPERFECT

<b>vocāv ĩram</b>	<b>vocāv ĩramus</b>
<b>vocāv ĩrās</b>	<b>vocāv ĩrātis</b>
<b>vocāv ĩrat</b>	<b>vocāv ĩrant</b>

## FUTURE PERFECT

<b>vocāv ĩrō</b>	<b>vocāv ĩrimus</b>
<b>vocāv ĩris</b>	<b>vocāv ĩritis</b>
<b>vocāv ĩrit</b>	<b>vocāv ĩrint</b>

Distinguish **vocāv ĩrunt, vocāv ĩrant, vocāv ĩrint**.

In the principal parts of a verb, as usually stated in dictionaries (*e.g.* **vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātum**), the order is 1. **Pres. Indic.**; 2. **Pres. Infin.**; 3. **Perf. Indic.**; 4. **Supine** (see p. 152). These show the different **stems** of the verb. The **perfect stem** is always obtained from the third principal part, *e.g.*: —

<b>dō, dāre, dēd ī, dātum</b> . . . .	Perf. stem, <b>dēd-</b>
<b>regō, regere, rēx ī, rēctum</b> . . . .	“ <b>rēx-</b>
<b>mittō, mittere, mis ī, missum</b> . . . .	“ <b>mis-</b>

From these we get

PERF.	PLUPERF.	FUT. PERF.
<b>dēd ī</b>	<b>dēd eram</b>	<b>dēd erō</b>
<b>rēx ī</b>	<b>rēx eram</b>	<b>rēx erō</b>
<b>mis ī</b>	<b>mis eram</b>	<b>mis erō</b>

NOTE. — There are four conjugations of the Verb, indicated by the ending of the Pres. Infin. (see p. 40). So far, however, as the endings of the Perfect system of tenses are concerned, all verbs are alike. The formation of these tenses is merely a question of knowing the perfect stem.

EXERCISE

(For Vocabulary, see page 285)

- A. 1. Form perfects from **vulnerō, nūntiō, creō, stō, gerō, videō, dūō, cognōscō**.  
 2. Form pluperfects from **ōrō, moneō, scribō**.  
 3. Form future perfects from **parō, secō, audiō, captō**.
- B. 1. **vocās, vocābātis, vocāvistī, vocāverāmus**.  
 2. **superāvit, superābat, superābit, superāverat**.  
 3. **nūntiābant, nūntiāvērunt, nūntiāverint**.  
 4. **parāverāmus, parābāmus, parābimus**.  
 5. **parāvīmus, parāverīmus, parāmus**.  
 6. **stetit, stat, stābat, stābit, steterat**.  
 7. **dūxit, viderat, scripserit, monuit**.

8. Veniam ōrāvērunt.
9. Rōmānōs exspectābant.
10. Arma parāverant et in castrīs stābant.
11. Lēgātum hastīs vulnerāverant.
12. Mercurius dīs bellum nūntiāverit.
13. Populō Rōmānō nūntiī proelium nūntiāvērunt.
14. Epistolam ad amīcum scrīpsērat.
15. Vēnī dīdī, vīcī (see vēniō, vīdeō, vincō).

- C.
1. They are calling, they called (repeatedly), they have called, he called (once).
  2. We continued to pray, we prayed (as a completed act), we shall pray, we had prayed.
  3. He will wound, he will have wounded, they will have wounded, they will wound.
  4. We were standing, we are standing, we stood (= came to a halt).
  5. They will give, they were giving, they gave (once), they gave (habitually), they had given, they will have given.
  6. The Greeks were fighting ten years (Acc.). At last they captured Troy.
  7. He came, he saw, he conquered.
  8. The temples stood in the forum. (What tense is suitable here?)
  9. The Gauls had carried the baggage into the camp.
  10. The Romans put the Gauls to flight.

---

LEGENDS OF ANCIENT ROME

Romulus and Remus  
The Sabine Women  
The Tarpeian Rock

Romulus' Miraculous  
Disappearance  
The Horatii and Curiatii

(See Roman History)



APOLLO

(Greek, PHOEBUS OR APOLLO)

From a photograph of the famous statue, Apollo Belvidere, discovered 1508 A.D.

Apollō et Diāna Lātōnā nātī sunt. Pater utriusque Jūpiter. Dum māter Jūnōnem irātā fugit, ad Insulam Dēlon pervēnit. Ibi geminōs deōs parturit. Apollō arcum tenet; sagittās morbum ferentēs in virōs intendit, sicut soror in fēminās. Ōrāculum apud Delphōs habēbat futūraque hominibus praedicēbat. Mūsicae et omnium artium optimārum deus est. Pharetram humeris gerit.

## LESSON XII

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND  
DECLENSIONS

In the following examples,

nauta bonus, a good sailor,  
nautam bonum,  
fāgus māgna, lurge beech-tree,  
fāgum māgnam,

templum splendidum,  
templa splendida,  
nautās bonōs,  
in fāgō māgnā,

observe that Latin adjectives have different endings to suit the case, number and gender of the nouns they qualify. **Adjectives in Latin, therefore, are declined.**

**RULE.** — An adjective agrees with its noun in case, number and gender.

**Bōnus, good.**

## SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i>	bon us	bon a	bon um
<i>Gen.</i>	bon ī	bon ae	bon ī
<i>Dat.</i>	bon ō	bon ae	bon ō
<i>Acc.</i>	bon um	bon am	bon um
<i>Voc.</i>	bon ē	bon a	bon um
<i>Abl.</i>	bon ō	bon ā	bon ō

## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	bon ī	bon ae	bon a
<i>Gen.</i>	bon ōrum	bon ārum	bon ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bon īs	bon īs	bon īs
<i>Acc.</i>	bon ōs	bon ās	bon a
<i>Voc.</i>	bon ī	bon ae	bon a
<i>Abl.</i>	bon īs	bon īs	bon īs

## EXERCISE

(For Vocabulary, see page 286)

- A. 1. *mālus est alta.* 9. *puerum mālum.*  
 2. *vīrus mālum vītābis.* 10. *vir māgnus.*  
 3. *in mālōs altās.* 11. *vīrī māgnī.*  
 4. *mālōrum altārum.* 12. *vīrī māli.*  
 5. *puer cāre.* 13. *māli sunt altae.*  
 6. *puer est cārus.* 14. *incolam ferum.*  
 7. *vulgus incertum vītāmus.* 15. *vir bone.*  
 8. *Hadria turbidus.*
- B. 1. tall apple-trees (Acc.). 9. of the stormy Adriatic.  
 2. of tall beech-trees. 10. in a full apple-tree.  
 3. a good boy. 11. on the great earth.  
 4. good boys (Nom.). 12. a renowned sailor  
 5. bad boys (Acc.). (Nom. and Acc.).  
 6. O good boy. 13. renowned poets (Nom.  
 7. a small man. and Acc.).  
 8. O small man. 14. of fierce inhabitants.

## LESSON XIII

## ADJECTIVES ENDING IN -er

1. **Liber**, *free*, is like the noun **puer** in retaining the **e** throughout.

MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>liber</i>	<i>liber a</i>	<i>liber um</i>
<i>liber i</i>	<i>liber ae</i>	<i>liber i</i>
etc.	etc.	etc.

Similarly **tener**, *tenera*, *tenerum*, *tender*.  
**miser**, *miserā*, *miserum*, *wretched*.  
**asper**, *aspera*, *asperum*, *rough*.

2. **Noster**, *our*, like the noun **ager**, is developed in the Nom. and Voc. sing. from the stem **nostr-**.

noster	nostra	nostrum
nostrī	nostrae	nostrī
etc.	etc.	etc.

Similarly **vester**, *vestra*, *vestrum*, *your*,  
**āter**, *ātra*, *ātrum*, *black*,  
**aeger**, *aegra*, *aegrum*, *sick*, *ill*, *feeble*,  
**pulcher**, *pulchra*, *pulchrum*, *beautiful*,  
 and most other adjectives of the first and second declensions ending in **-er**.

**dexter** { *dextera*, *dexterum*, *right*.  
 { *dextra*, *dextrum*.

Noun **dextra**, *the right hand*.

**sinister**, *sinistra*, *sinistrum*, *left*.

Noun **sinistra**, *the left hand*.

Distinguish **vester**, *your* (addressing more than one).  
**tuus**, *your = thy* (addressing one).

### PREDICATE NOMINATIVE

A predicate noun or adjective completing the verb "to be" agrees with the subject in case, as —

**Brūtus erat lēgātus**, *Brutus was a lieutenant*.

**Bonus est puer**, *The boy is good*.

### EXERCISE

(For Vocabulary, see page 286)

- A. 1. **Templa deōrum sacra erant**.
2. **Multum frūmentum in castra Rōmāna portant**.
3. **In castris nostris multī et māgnī equī erant**.
4. **Incolae Britanniae erant māgnī et ferī**.
5. **Māgua erant castra Rōmānōrum**.



6. Puella est pulchra.
7. Incolae sunt liberī.
8. Locus asper nōn est idōneus castris ; loca aspera nōn sunt idōnea.
9. Aegra est filia tua.
10. Puerōs mālōs magister nōn laudat.
11. Filius servī nunc liber est. Librōs amat.
12. Liberōs nostrōs amāmus.
13. Liber, vel Bacchus, erat deus vīnī.
14. Rōmānī scūta brachiis sinistris gestābant ; dextris aut tēla aut gladiōs.

- B. 1. There are many large buildings in our town. (What is the Latin idiom for "many large"?)
2. Why, children, are you not carrying your books to school?
  3. My son, why does the master not praise your book?
  4. Your camp, Romans, is full of Gauls.
  5. In Gaul there are many beautiful horses.
  6. Your apple-trees, farmers, are pleasing to our boys.

*For Oral Drill*

7. Poison is evil ; the sea is rough.
8. The camp is small ; in a small camp.
9. The town is not ours, but yours, O Roman legate.
10. They will pitch camp in a suitable place.
11. Slaves love the shade of large beech-trees.
12. The Adriatic is long and narrow.
13. The street is wide ; the apple-trees are high.

---

**Tarquinius Superbus, the seventh and last king of Rome, expelled, and the first Consuls elected, 509 B.C.**

## LESSON XIV

## THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

Verbs, according to their stems and inflections, are grouped into four classes called Conjugations. These are distinguished by the ending of the present infinitive active, usually given as the second principal part; *e.g.*:

1. **Vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, call.**
2. **Monēō, monēre, monuī, advise.**
3. **Regō, regere, rēxī, rule.**
4. **Audiō, audire, audivī, hear.**

## PRESENT ACTIVE INFINITIVE

1	2	3	4
voc āre	mon ēre	reg ěre	aud ĩre
<i>to call</i>	<i>to advise</i>	<i>to rule</i>	<i>to hear</i>

## PRESENT PASSIVE INFINITIVE

1	2	3	4
voc āri	mon ēri	reg ĩ	aud ĩri
<i>to be called</i>	<i>to be advised</i>	<i>to be ruled</i>	<i>to be heard</i>

**vōlō, velle, volui, wish, an Irregular Verb.**

## PRESENT INDICATIVE

1. volō	volumus
2. vis	vultis
3. vult	volunt

(Contract nōn vōlō into nōlō; nōn vōlunt into nōlunt.)

**An infinitive used as a noun is neuter.**

## EXERCISE

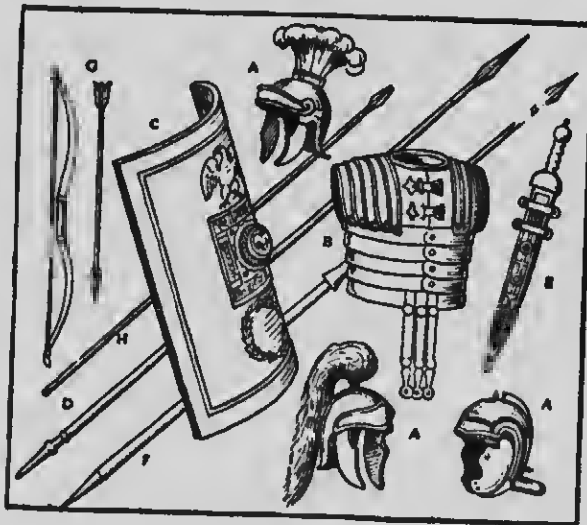
(For Vocabulary, see page 286)

1. From the principal parts, obtained in the Vocabulary, classify the following verbs under their several conjugations,

and form their pres. passive infinitives: *vincō, nūntiō, veniō, creō, videō, cognōsoō, mittō, parō, mūniō, jubeō, pūniō.*

Translate: —

2. He wishes to see, not to be seen.
3. He orders the envoys to come and answer.
4. They wish to defeat (1. *superō*, 2. *vincō*) the Gauls.
5. The Gauls do not wish to be defeated.
6. We wish to conquer (*vincō*), not to be conquered.
7. Boys, why do you wish to be heard, not to hear?
8. (It) is not pleasing to boys to be punished.
9. To be called, to be sent, to be heard, to be held.
10. Why do you (*sing.*) wish to come?



ROMAN ARMS AND ARMOR

A. Galeae  
B. Lōrica  
C. Scūtum  
D. Hasta

E. Gladius  
F. Pīlum  
G. Arcus et Sagitta  
H. Jaculum

## LESSON XV

## SECOND CONJUGATION

## VERBS WITH "Ē" STEMS

(Infin. -ēre)

*moneō, monēre, monui, advise, warn.*Stem, *monē-*

## PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

<i>mon eō</i>	<i>mon ēmus</i>
<i>mon ēs</i>	<i>mon ētis</i>
<i>mon et</i>	<i>mon ent</i>

Compare the following: —

*vocō, vocās, vocat, etc.**moneō, monēs, monet, etc.,*

and observe that the difference between the First and the Second Conjugation is only one of Stems: *vocā-*, *monē-*. The inflections are the same, except that *voca o* is contracted to *vocō*.

Observe that this parallel runs through all the tenses of the Indicative: —

## INDICATIVE MOOD

## SYNOPSIS

PRESENT	<i>vocō</i>	<i>moneō</i>
IMPERFECT	<i>vocā bam</i>	<i>monē bam</i>
FUTURE	<i>vocā bō</i>	<i>monē bō</i>
PERFECT	<i>vocāv i</i>	<i>monu i</i>
PLUPERFECT	<i>vocāv eram</i>	<i>monu eram</i>
FUTURE PERFECT	<i>vocāv erō</i>	<i>monu erō</i>
PRES. STEM	<i>vocā-</i>	<i>monē-</i>
IMPERF. STEM	<i>vocābā-</i>	<i>monēbā-</i>
FUT. STEM	<i>vocābī-</i>	<i>monēbī-</i>
PERF. STEM	<i>vocāv-</i>	<i>monu-</i>

The inflections of *monēbam, monēbō, monui, etc.*, are the same as those of *amābam, amābō, amāvi, etc., -bam, -bās, -bat, etc.; -bō, -bis, -bit, etc.; -i, -isti, -it, etc.*

Not all Perfect Stems of the Second Conjugation are of the *monu-* type; *e.g.*: —

*videō, vidēre, vid i, see.*

*respondeō, respondēre, respond i, answer.*

*maneō, manēre, māns i, remain.*

*jubeō, jubēre, juss i, order.*

*dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēv i, destroy.*

*compleō, complēre, complēv i, fill.*

The following, however, are similar to *moneō*: —

*habeō, habēre, habu i, have, hold.*

*teneō, tenēre, tenu i, hold.*

Note that *creō, creāre, creāv i, create*, is of the First Conjugation.

## EXERCISE

(For Vocabulary, see page 286)

- A. 1. Make a synopsis of the Indic. tenses (1. sing.) of *videō, jubeō, teneō*.  
 2. Make a set of Perfect tenses (Perf., Pluperf., Fut. Perf.) of *maneō, dēleō, respondeō*.

Translate: —

3. *respondet, monēbit, habēbat.*
4. *tenent, jussit, dēlēverat, dēlēvērunt.*
5. *vidēbunt, vidēbant, vidērunt, vidērint.*
6. *manēmus, mānsimus, manēbimus.*
7. *creāmus, habēmus, complēvimus.*
8. *habēbam, habuī, habueram, responderam, jusserō.*
9. "Tenētis," inquit, "Rōmānī, Gallōs inīquō locō."
10. *Gallī inīquum locum habent.*
11. *Impedimenta in tumulō collocat.*

- B.* 1. We see, we pray, we have, we have seen.  
 2. They had (continually), they had (at a moment), they had answered.  
 3. He saw (once), he ordered, he held (for a while).  
 4. I shall have, I shall have seen, he will have, he will have had.  
 5. They have destroyed, they had destroyed, they will have destroyed.  
 6. They fought (continuously), they held, he is fighting, he is holding.  
 7. You (*sing.*) will neither fight nor destroy.  
 8. Caesar both fights and orders.  
 9. They filled the boats with shields and darts.  
 10. He orders the lieutenant to hold the place.  
 11. To have is to hold; to fight is not to destroy.



Miles Rōmānus hastam in mūrū contorquet.  
 In mūrō stant hostēs.

LESSON XVI

THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

- III Conj. — 1. Consonant and "U" stems.  
 2. "Ī" stems (see *caplō*, page 48).

IV Conj. — "Ī" stems.

**Regō**, *regere, rēxi, rule;*  
 stem, **reg-**

**Audiō**, *audire, audivi, hear;*  
 stem, **audi-**

INDICATIVE ACTIVE

PRESENT

reg ō	reg imus	aud iō	aud imus
reg is	reg itis	aud is	aud itis
reg it	reg unt	aud it	aud iunt

IMPERFECT

reg ēbam, -bās, -bat, etc.	aud iēbam, -bās, -bat, etc.
----------------------------	-----------------------------

FUTURE

reg am	reg ēmus	aud iam	aud iēmus
reg es	reg itis	aud iēs	aud iētis
reg et	reg unt	aud iet	aud ient

PERFECT

rēx ī, etc.	audiv ī, etc.
-------------	---------------

PLUPERFECT

rēx eram, etc.	audiv eram, etc.
----------------	------------------

FUTURE PERFECT

rēx erō, etc.	audiv erō, etc.
---------------	-----------------

1. Notice the two types of future in the four conjugations:—

1	2	3	4
vocā bō	monē bō	reg am	audi am

2. Note the characteristic vowels of *regō* and *audiō*:—  
 ē, i (*regō*)                      i (*audiō*)

A vowel is always short before a final t. Hence *audit* as well as *regit*. A vowel is short before a vowel. Hence *audio*, *audiunt*.

VERBS LIKE *regō*

*mittō*, -ēre, *missi*, *send*.  
*vincō*, -ēre, *victi*, *conquer*.  
*dūcō*, -ēre, *dūxi*, *lead*.  
*pellō*, -ēre, *pepuli*, *drive*.  
*scribō*, -ēre, *scripsi*, *write*.  
*gerō*, -ēre, *gessi*, 1) *carry*,  
 2) *wage (war)*.

VERBS LIKE *audiō*

*veniō*, -ire, *veni*, *come*.  
*mūniō*, -ire, *mūnivi*, *fortify*.  
*pūniō*, -ire, *pūnivi*, *punish*.  
*dēsiliō*, -ire, *dēsiliui*, *leap*  
*down*.  
*sepeliō*, -ire, *sepelivi*, *bury*.

*instruō*, -ēre, -*struxi*, *draw up*  
*(soldiers)*.

EXERCISE

A. Pronounce and translate:—

1. *Regis, audis, mittis, venis.*
2. *Nūntiās, tenēs, vincis, mūnis.*
3. *Pellunt, pūniunt, scribunt, dēsiliunt.*
4. *Pugnant, respondent, regunt, sepeliunt.*
5. *Scribēbam, habēbat, audiēbant, nūntiābant.*
6. *Vocābit, monēbit, regit, reget, audit, audiet.*
7. *Dūcēmus, dūcimus, audīmus, audiēmus.*
8. *Pellent, scribunt, venient, veniunt, instruētis.*
9. *Audivērunt, rēxerant, pepulerint, dēsiluerāmus.*
10. *Dūcis, vēnis, vēnistī, vincis, vincēs, pellit, pūniet.*
11. *Bellum cum Gallis gerit Caesar; Gallōs pūnit; Galliam vincit.*
12. *Rōmānī castra fossā vāllōque mūniēbant.*



B. Translate orally : —

1. He sends, he calls, he holds, he hears.
2. They send, they call, they hold, they hear.
3. Thou writest, thou comest, thou announcest.
4. He will announce, he will have, he will conquer, he will come.
5. They come, they will come, you (*pl.*) will send, you (*pl.*) are sending.
6. He was calling, he was writing, he was coming.
7. He went (once), he comes, he came, they had come, they will have come.
8. Thou writest, thou hast written, thou wilt write, thou wilt pray, thou wilt hear.
9. He conquers, will conquer, conquered, had conquered.
10. They punish, used to punish, punished (once), will have punished.

Write out : —

11. The Romans wage war in Gaul. They will conquer and punish the Gauls.
12. The Germans came into Gaul; Caesar conquered (*vincō*) the Germans and drove (them) out of Gaul.

---

THE SEVEN KINGS OF ROME

753-509 B.C.

- |                        |                       |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. Romulus             | 4. Ancus Martius      |
| 2. Numa Pompilius      | 5. Tarquinius Priscus |
| 3. Tullus Hostilius    | 6. Servius Tullius    |
| 7. Tarquinius Superbus |                       |

Read the story of Horatius Cocles,

## "CAPIŌ" VERBS

## LESSON XVII

## "CAPIŌ" VERBS

**"I" Stems of the Third Conjugation**

**Capiŏ, capĕre, cĕpi, I take; stem, capi-**

**RULE.** — **Capiŏ** is classified as a verb of the Third Conjugation, but follows **audiŏ** where the endings of **audiŏ** contain two successive vowels; as, **capiŏ, capiunt, capiĕbam, capiam.** Compare these with **regŏ, regunt, regĕbam, regam.** Compare also **capis, audis; capimus, audimus; capitis, auditis.**

## INDICATIVE ACTIVE

## PRESENT

cap iŏ	cap imus
cap is	cap itis
cap it	cap iunt

## IMPERFECT

cap iĕbam	cap iĕbāmus.
-----------	--------------

## FUTURE

cap iam	cap iĕmus
cap iēs	cap iētis
cap iet	cap ient

## PERFECT

cĕp i, -isti, -it, etc.

## PLUPERFECT

cĕp eram, etc.

## FUTURE PERFECT

cĕp erŏ, etc.

The following verbs are like **oapiŏ** : —

**faciŏ, -ĕre, fĕci, (1) do, (2) make.**

**fugiŏ, -ĕre, fūgi, flee.**

**jaciŏ, -ĕre, jĕci, throw.**

Compounds of *speciō*, as —

*oōnspeciō*, -ēre, -spēxi, *see, behold.*

Most compounds of *faciō* and those of *iaciō* change the forms to *-ficiō* and *-liciō* (= *jacīō*), *e.g.*: —

*interficiō*, -ēre, -fēcī, *kill.*

*coniciō* (or *conjiō*), -ēre, -jēcī, *throw, hurl.*

EXERCISE

A. Pronounce and translate: —

1. Capis, capitis, audīs, audītis.
2. Capiunt, capient, regēs, regunt.
3. Audīmus, interficimus, faciētis.
4. Capit, cēpit, capiet, cēperit; fugit, fūgit.
5. Fugiēbat, fūgerās, fugiēs, fugis, fūgistī.
6. Tēla et saxa tormentis in mūrōs coniciēbant.
7. Gallōs in castrīs cōspēxērunt.

B. Translate orally: —

1. Thou makest, they make, they will make.
2. They were throwing, he will kill, we behold.
3. He was doing, he will do, he did (once).
4. They hurl darts at the Romans.
5. They will take neither the camp nor the village.
6. Thou fleest, we flee, we shall flee, he flees, he fled.

REVIEW WORD LIST

Give verbs for: —

1. Come, conquer, send, rule, advise, take, hear.
2. Order, create, see, announce, learn, prepare.
3. Wish, fortify, punish, remain, answer, destroy.
4. Fill, have, hold, lead, drive, write, carry on (war).
5. Draw up (soldiers), do, flee, make, throw, kill, behold.

## REGULAR VERBS

## REGULAR VERBS

## INDICATIVE ACTIVE

	I	II	III	IV
<i>Pres.</i>	vocō ūs at <i>etc.</i>	moneō ēs et <i>etc.</i>	regō is it <i>etc.</i>	audiō is it <i>etc.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	vocā bam bās bat <i>etc.</i>	monē bam bās bat <i>etc.</i>	regē bam bās bat <i>etc.</i>	audiē bam bās bat <i>etc.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	vocā bō bis bit <i>etc.</i>	monē bō bis bit <i>etc.</i>	reg am ēs et <i>etc.</i>	audi am iēs iet <i>etc.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	vocāv I	monn I	rēx I	audīv I
<i>Plup.</i>	vocāv eram	monu eram	rēx eram	audīv eram
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	vocāv erō	monu erō	rēx erō	audīv erō



IMPEDIMENTA



MERCURY

(Greek, HERMES)

Mercurius est deōrum nūntius. Per āera volat, imperāta Jovis ad deōs hominēsq̄ ferēns. Mānēs etiā mortuōrum ad Inferōs dēdūcit et in cymbam Charontis impōnit. Interdum Charontem rēmigandō adjuvat. Hominēs fidibus canere docuisse dicitur. Filius Maīac saepe appellātur.

## LESSON XVIII

## THIRD DECLENSION

There are two classes of stems in the Third Declension:—

I. Stems ending in a consonant.

In these the Gen. Plur. always ends in *-um*.

II. Stems ending in *i*.

In these the Gen. Plur. always ends in *-ium*.

## MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS

## Consonant Stems

	<b>Trabs, f., a beam ; stem, trab-</b>		<b>Princeps, m., a chieftain ; stem, princip-</b>	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	trab <b>s</b>	trab <b>ēs</b>	princep <b>s</b>	princip <b>ēs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	trab <b>is</b>	trab <b>um</b>	princip <b>is</b>	princip <b>um</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	trab <b>ī</b>	trab <b>ibus</b>	princip <b>ī</b>	princip <b>ibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	trab <b>em</b>	trab <b>ēs</b>	princip <b>em</b>	princip <b>ēs</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	trab <b>s</b>	trab <b>ēs</b>	princep <b>s</b>	princip <b>ēs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	trab <b>e</b>	trab <b>ibus</b>	princip <b>e</b>	princip <b>ibus</b>

**Miles, m., a soldier ; stem, milit-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	mīle <b>s</b>	mīlit <b>ēs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	mīlit <b>is</b>	mīlit <b>um</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	mīlit <b>ī</b>	mīlit <b>ibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	mīlit <b>em</b>	mīlit <b>ēs</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	mīle <b>s</b>	mīlit <b>ēs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	mīlit <b>e</b>	mīlit <b>ibus</b>

1. Note that in the Third Declension the Vocative (as in all nouns except those of the **servus** type) is always like the Nominative.

2. *Trabs* (pronounced by the Roman method *traps*) keeps its **stem** in the same written form throughout.

*Princeps* and *miles* alter the form of the stem in the Nom. and Voc., *princeps* changing *i* to *e* before two consonants; and *miles* changing *i* to *e* and dropping *t* before *s*, thus

milit **s** = millet **s** = mille **s**.

**t** and **d** are regularly dropped before **s**.

## EXERCISE

(For Vocabulary, see page 287)

- A. 1. Multi militēs in castris sunt.  
 2. Animōs principum Gallōrum Cæsar movet.  
 3. Pecūniam principibus nōn dabit.  
 4. Tēcta agricolārum trabēs magnās habent.  
 5. Lēgātus verba facit apud principēs.  
 6. Nostrī militēs cum principe pugnant.  
 7. Agricolaē tēcta trabibus longīs aedificant.  
 8. Tēla militum Rōmānōrum erant hastae atque pila.
- B. 1. He gave beautiful gifts to the renowned chieftain.  
 2. They carry a large beam to the river.  
 3. Our soldier (*Acc.*); our soldiers (*Acc.*); with our soldier.  
 4. We shall give rewards to the good soldier.  
 5. O Roman soldier; O Roman soldiers.  
 6. Among the Roman soldiers many chieftains of Gaul are talking.

Decline in agreement:—

trabs longa  
 princeps noster  
 miles dūrus

## LESSON XIX

## THIRD DECLENSION

## MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS

## Mute Consonant Stems

The learning of the Third Declension is largely a matter of learning stems. The stem can usually be seen in the Gen. Sing.

A **mute** is an abrupt consonant, such as **p, o, g, t**.

Learn to decline throughout the following nouns with stems ending in a mute:—

**plēbs, plēb is, f., the common people.**

**d** dropped before **s**

**pēs, ped is, m., foot.**

**lapis, lapid is, m., stone.**

**obses, obsid is, m. or f., hostage.**

**laus, laud is, f., praise.**

**palūs, palūd is, f., marsh.**

**pecus, pecud is, f., a head of cattle.**

**t** dropped before **s**

**pedes, pedit is, m., foot-soldier.**

**eques, equit is, m., horseman.**

**comes, comit is, m. or f., com-  
panion.**

**ariēs, ariet is, m., ram, battering-  
ram.**

**aetās, aestāt is, f., age.**

**civitas, civitat is, f., state.**

**virtūs, virtūt is, f., virtue, valor,  
goodness.**

**salūs, salūt is, f., safety, welfare.**

**juventūs, juventūt is, f., youth.**

**senectūs, senectūt is, f., old age.**

**aestās, aestāt is, f., summer.**

**x = cs**

**pāx, pāc is, f., peace.**

**arx, arc is, f., citadel.**

**dux, duc is, m., leader.**

**jūdex, jūdīc is, m., judge.**

**rādīx, rādīc is, f., root.**

**lūx, lūc is, f., light.**

**x = g\***

**lēx, lēg is, f., a law.**

**rēx, rēg is, m., king.**

**rēmex, rēmīg is, m., oarsman.**

**conjunx, conjug is, m. or f., hus-  
band, wife.**



## EXERCISE

*(For Vocabulary, see page 287)*

- A. 1. Mūrus est multōs pedēs altus.  
 2. Lapidēs tormentis coniciunt.  
 3. Equitēs cum peditibus pugnant.  
 4. Equitēs ex equis dēsiliunt atque pedibus pugnant.  
 5. Vineās arietemque ad mūrū prōmovent.  
 6. Māgnam virtūtem in proeliis praestant.  
 7. Prō salūte patriae pugnābimus.  
 8. Cicerō librum dē senectūte scripsit.  
 9. Pācem ā Caesare Galli petunt.  
 10. Lēgēs Rōmānōrum erant sevērae.
- B. 1. They give rewards to the good leader.  
 2. They built a high citadel.  
 3. The last king of the Romans was bad.  
 4. By severe laws; on behalf of our king.  
 5. They throw many stones.  
 6. Caesar had many rowers.  
 7. A severe law (Acc.); on behalf of the Roman common people.  
 8. Of our age; on account of your safety.

Decline in agreement: —

dux strōnuus	pēs dexter
virtūs māgna	pedes Rōmānus
obses miser	rādix longa

## WORD LIST

1. Foot, horse, foot-soldier, horseman, oarsman, leader.
2. Hostage, companion, king, judge, law, peace.
3. Age, summer, state, youth, old age, safety, valor.
4. Battering-ram, stone, marsh, citadel.

## LESSON XX

## THIRD DECLENSION

## MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS

## "S" Stems

NOTE. — s regularly changes to r between vowels.

<b>flōs, flōr</b> is, m., a flower.	<b>lepna, lepor</b> is, m., hare.
<b>mōs, mōr</b> is, m., habit, custom.	<b>tellūs, tellūr</b> is, f., the earth.
<b>mūs, mūr</b> is, m., mouse.	

## Liquid Stems (l and r)

With l and r stems the -s of the Nom. is dropped.

<b>cōnsul, oōnsul</b> is, m., a consul.	<b>frāter, frātr</b> is, m., brother.
<b>vigil, vigil</b> is, m., a watcher.	<b>māter, mātr</b> is, f., mother.
<b>pater, patr</b> is, m., father.	<b>agger, agger</b> is, m., heap, mound.

The following in -or are really s stems (honor = honos, the s changing as in mōs to r between vowels, and then by analogy creeping into the Nom.).

<b>victor, victōr</b> is, m., victor.	<b>labor, labōr</b> is, m., labor, hard-
<b>pāstor, pāstōr</b> is, m., shepherd,	<b>ship.</b>
<b>herdsman.</b>	<b>pavor, pavōr</b> is, m., panic, fear.
<b>honor, honōr</b> is, m., honor.	<b>arbor, arbōr</b> is, f., tree.
<b>timor, timōr</b> is, m., fear.	<b>soror, sorōr</b> is, f., sister.
<b>olāmor, clāmōr</b> is, m., shout.	<b>uxor, uxōr</b> is, f., wife.

Note the irregular features of arbor (fem. and ō).

## Nasal Stems (m and n)

**hiem s, hiem** is, f., winter, the only stem in -m.

**leō, leōn** is, m., lion.

Nom. **leō** = **leōn s** (both the ending s and the n of the stem dropped).

<b>Jūnō, Jūnōn</b> is, f., Juno.	<b>praedō, praedōn</b> is, m., robber,
<b>regiō, regiōn</b> is, f., region.	<b>pirate.</b>
<b>legiō, legiōn</b> is, f., legion.	<b>latrō, latrōn</b> is, m., robber, brig-
<b>ōrātiō, ōrātiōn</b> is, f., speech, ora-	<b>and.</b>
<b>tion.</b>	<b>sermō, sermōn</b> is, m., talk, con-
	<b>versation.</b>

Note that the following weaken *o* to *i* in the oblique cases (**homin is = homon is**):—

<b>homō</b> , <b>homin is</b> , m., <i>man, human being.</i>	<b>oōnsuētūdō</b> , <b>cōnsuētūdin is</b> , f., <i>custom.</i>
<b>virgō</b> , <b>virgin is</b> , f., <i>maiden.</i>	<b>ōrdō</b> , <b>ōrdin is</b> , m., <i>rank, order.</i>
<b>multitūdō</b> , <b>multitūdin is</b> , f., <i>multitude.</i>	<b>cardō</b> , <b>cardin is</b> , m., <i>hinge.</i>
	<b>sanguis</b> , <b>sanguin is</b> , m., <i>blood.</i>

(*n* dropped in the Nom. : **sanguis = sanguina**.)

## EXERCISE

(For Vocabulary, see page 287)

- A. 1. Dux equitēs contrā mōrem praemisit.  
 2. Ōratiōnēs clārās Cicerōnis cōsulis laudāmus.  
 3. Māgnus erat timor Gallōrum.  
 4. Arborēs altae in hortō nostrō sunt.  
 5. Legiōnem decimam trāns fluvium mīsit.  
 6. Pompēius Māgnus praedōnēs vīcit.  
 7. Dēnsōs ōrdinēs peditum perfrēgērunt.  
 8. Mūgnam multitūdinem coēgit.
- B. 1. He gave beautiful flowers to the maiden.  
 2. They heard the renowned speech.  
 3. They called Cicero father (*Pred. Acc.*) of his country.  
 4. They will build a high mound in front of the town.

## GENDER

From the foregoing lists it will be seen that most Masculine and Feminine Consonant Stems of the Third Declension conform to the following rules of Gender:—

## MASCULINE

- er, -or, -os, -ō (except -dō, -gō, -lō).  
 -es (increasing the number of syllables in the Gen., e.g. *mīles, mīlitis*).

## EXCEPTIONS

*iter*, *itineris*, a *journey*; *vēr*, *vērīs*, *spring*, are **neuter**.  
*arbor* is **feminine**.  
*ōrdō* and *cardō* are **masculine** though ending in *-dō*.

## FEMININE

*-dō*, *-gō*, *-iō*.

*-ās*, *-aus*, *-x*, *-s* after a consonant.

*-ūs* in words of more than one syllable (*virtus*, etc.)

*mūs*, *rēs*, *dux*, *jūdex*, *rēmex*, are **masculine**, and *uxor* and *uxor*, **feminine**, by Natural Gender.

For complete rules, see page 70.

## WORD LIST

(State the Gender)

1. Father, mother, brother, sister, husband, wife.
2. Habit, custom (2), fear (2), shout, field, mound.
3. Mouse, hare, shepherd, robber, pirate.
4. Tree, flower, door, hinge, rank, multitude.
5. Spring, summer, autumn, winter.



SARCINAE

Sarcinās suās quisque mīles humerīs  
 brachiisque gerit.



VULCAN

(Greek, HEPHAESTUS)

Vulcānus ignis deus est. Graeci eum Hephaestum appellant. Filius Jovis fuit et Jūnōnis. Pater olim iratus eum dē caelō conjēct. In insulam Lemnon incidit et postea semper claudus erat. Opifex inter deōs erat. Domūs splendidās eōrum in Olympō aedificāvit. Multa et pulcherrima dīs hominibusque ornāmenta fēcit; inter alia Achillis scutum clārum.

## THIRD DECLENSION

## LESSON XXI

## THIRD DECLENSION

## NEUTER NOUNS

## Mute Consonant Stems

Caput, head; stem, capit-

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	caput	capit a
Gen.	capit is	capit um
Dat.	capit i	capit ibus
Acc.	caput	capit a
Voc.	caput	capit a
Abl.	capit e	capit ibus

The Nom., Acc., and Voc. Sing. are simply a form of the stem.

Lac, lact is, n., milk (final t dropped in Nom.).

## "S" Stems

Note the following two types:—

1. **Corpus** (= corpor), corpōr is (= corpor is), *body*.  
s changed to r between vowels.
2. **Opus** (= opos), oper is (= opos is), *work*.  
o weakened to e, and s changed to r between vowels.

## LIKE corpus

tempus, -ōris, *time*.  
litus, -ōris, *shore*.  
frigus, -ōris, *cold*.  
peous, -ōris, *cattle, herd*.

## LIKE opus

genus, -eris, *kind, class*.  
latus, -eris, *side, flank*.  
onus, -eris, *burden, load*.  
sidus, -eris, *star, constellation*.

aequor (= aequos), -ōris, n., *the sea*.

Contrast with victor, -ōris, m., and arbor, -ōris, f.

*crūs, crūr is, limb.*

*jūs, jūr is, right, justice, law.*

*rūs, rūr is, the country (rural district).*

*fulgur, fulgur is, lightning.*

*rōbur (also rōbor), rōbor is, hard wood, oak, strength,*

**"N" Stems**

*nōmen, nomin is, name.*

*flūmen, flūmin is, river.*

*carmen, carmin is, song.*

*agmen, agmin is, column (of soldiers).*

*certāmen, certāmin is, struggle, contest.*

*fulmen, fulmin is, thunderbolt, lightning.*

*lūmen, lūmin is, a light.*

Observe the change of *-men* to *-min*.

**EXERCISE**

(For Vocabulary, see page 287)

- A. 1. Corpora māgna et parva capita habent.  
 2. Tempus nōn est idōneum.  
 3. Multa hominum genera in terrā sunt.  
 4. Tēla ad litus angustum coniciunt.  
 5. Sīdera clāra spectāmus.  
 6. Britannī pecore lacteque vīvunt.  
 7. Gallī agmen Rōmānum in fugam dedērunt.  
 8. Multa in vitā certāmina sustinēmus.
- B. 1. The country is always pleasing to farmers.  
 2. The Gauls will not violate the rights (*sing.*) of ambassadors.  
 3. The Greeks built the horse out of oak.  
 4. Jupiter hurls his thunderbolt at evil men (*in* with *Acc.*).

Decline together: —

*nōmen olārūm*

*opus māgnūm*

*litus angustum*

*rūs amoenum*

## LESSON XXII

## THIRD DECLENSION

## "I" Stems

Nouns that have *-ium* in the Genitive Plural are usually called "I" stems.

They sometimes have *-im* instead of *-em* in the Acc. Sing. and quite commonly *-ī* instead of *-e* in the Abl. Sing.

## MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS

NOUNS ENDING IN *-is* AND *-ēs*

(Not increasing in the Gen.)

*Turris*, f., tower; stem, *turri-*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>turr is</i>	<i>turr ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>turr is</i>	<i>turr ium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>turr ī</i>	<i>turr ibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>turr im</i> or <i>-em</i>	<i>turr ēs</i> or <i>-is</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>turr is</i>	<i>turr ēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>turr ī</i>	<i>turr ibus</i>

In the Plural, all Masculine and Feminine "I" stems conform to this type.

In the Singular the following variations occur:—

- ignis*, m., fire; Acc. *-em*; Abl. *-ī* or *-e*.
- hostis*, m. or f., enemy; Acc. *-em*; Abl. *-e*.
- collis*, m., hill; Acc. *-em*; Abl. *-e*, rarely *-ī*.
- avis*, f., bird; Acc. *-em*; Abl. *-ī* or *-e*.
- nāvis*, f., ship; Acc. *-em*; Abl. *-ī* or *-e*. (Originally a diphthong stem, *nāv is* = *nau is*; compare *nau ta*.)
- puppis*, f., stern; Acc. *-im*; rarely *-em*; Abl. *-e*.



*secūris*, f., *axe*; Acc. -im or -em; Abl. -i, rarely -e.

*orbis*, m., *ring, circle*; Acc. -em; Abl. -e or -i.

*sitis*, f., *thirst*; Acc. -im; Abl. -i.

*mēnsis*, m., *month*; Acc. -em; Abl. -e.

Gen. Plur. -ium or -um (originally a consonant stem).

NOTE. — *canis*, a *dog*, and *juvenis*, a *youth*, are not "I" stems; Gen. Plur. *canum, juvenum*.

*Aedēs*, f., sing., *temple*; pl. *dwelling*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	aed ēs	aed ēs
Gen.	aed is	aed ium
Dat.	aed ī	aed ibus
Acc.	aed em	aed ēs or -is
Voc.	aed ēs	aed ēs
Abl.	aed e	aed ibus

Similarly *nūbēs*, f., *cloud*; *rūpēs*, f., *rock*; *caedēs*, f., *slaughter*; *clādēs*, f., *disaster, loss*; *sēdēs*, f., *seat, home*.

These were originally consonant stems.

### EXERCISE

(For Vocabulary, see page 288)

- A. 1. Agrōs Gallōrum ferrō et ignī vāstat.
2. Turrim altam in aggere aedificant.
3. Ad Britanniam Caesar cum classī nāvium longārum nāvīgat.
4. Nāvēs hostium expugnāvērunt.
5. Chorus virginum juvenumque ad Apollinem cantat.
6. Nāvēs onerāriās et longās aedificat.
7. Cum nāvī longā ad Britanniam Volusēnum praemittit.

NOTE. — When "enemy" means a number of enemies, it is plur. in Latin.

- B.* 1. They destroy the villages and buildings by fire.  
 2. In the minds of the Gauls there was great fear of the high towers.  
 3. The standard-bearer leaped down from the war-ship.  
 4. They saw the light of the bright fires.  
 5. He sees the great fear of the enemy.  
 6. The Britons dreaded (*timeō*) the appearance (*figūra*) of the Roman galleys.  
 7. By oars he moves the war-ships from the transports to the right side of the enemy.  
 8. The enemy see the Roman ships from the shore.  
 9. Of many birds; on a high hill; of high hills.

## LESSON XXIII

## THIRD DECLENSION

## Masculine and Feminine "I" Stems

(Continued)

Abl. Sing. -e; Gen. Plur. -um

1. Monosyllables with apparent stems ending in two consonants.

(a) Genuine "I" stems: —

<b>ars</b> , artis, f., <i>art</i> .	<b>sors</b> , sortis, f., <i>lot</i> .
<b>gēns</b> , gentis, f., <i>race, tribe</i> .	<b>pars</b> , partis, f., <i>part</i> .
<b>mēns</b> , mentis, f., <i>mind</i> .	<b>mors</b> , mortis, f., <i>death</i> .
<b>nox</b> , noctis, f., <i>night</i> .	

(b) Consonant stems adapted: —

<b>arx</b> , arcis, f., <i>citadel</i> .	<b>pōns</b> , pontis, m., <i>bridge</i> .
<b>urbs</b> , urbis, f., <i>city</i> .	<b>fōns</b> , fontis, m., <i>fountain</i> .
<b>mōns</b> , montis, m., <i>mountain</i> .	<b>dēns</b> , dentis, m., <i>tooth</i> .

Note the prevailing gender of these nouns in -s preceded by a consonant. Note also the four exceptions.

2. Nouns ending in *-ns* and *-rs* : —

*cliēns*, *clientis*, m. or f., *adherent*, *retainer*.  
*cohors*, *cohōrtis*, f., *cohort*.

3. A few other nouns : —

*mūs*, *mūris*, m., *mouse*.      *linter*, *lintris*, f., *boat*, *skiff*.  
*nix*, *nivis*, f., *snow*.      *carō*, *carnis*, f., *flesh*.

Time "when" is expressed by the Ablative without a preposition; time "how long" by the Accusative.

## EXERCISE

(For Vocabulary, see page 288)

- A. 1. In nostrā urbe.                      3. Trabum longārum.  
 2. Nostrārum urbium.                4. Cum trabe longā.  
 5. Pontem firmum in flūmine aedificat.  
 6. Hieme noctēs sunt longae.  
 7. Ursi per tempus noctium longārum dormiunt.  
 8. Aquila trāns altam vallem volat.  
 9. Caesar bellum aestāte gerēbat; auctumnō  
     militēs in hiberna dūcēbat.  
 10. Vēre primō avēs nidōs in altis arboribus  
     aedificant.
- B. 1. Of many parts.                      3. By great art.  
 2. On a high mountain.                4. Of hard teeth.  
 5. They build long bridges over the rivers.  
 6. With a great multitude of adherents.  
 7. Of the deep valleys; of high mountains.  
 8. They will remain many months in the city.

## REVIEW

- C. 1. He heard the words of the chieftains.  
 2. They throw large stones into the town.  
 3. They will seek peace and give hostages to Caesar.  
 4. We love the trees of the deep valley.

Give Latin words for the following, with their gender and Genitive case: —

1. Valor, body, work, army on the march, foot, cloud.
2. Mountain, part, peace, law, speech, rank, journey.
3. Side, marsh, kind, oak, beam.
4. Ship, oar, sail, rower, captain, war-galley, transport.
5. Spring, summer, autumn, winter, year, month.

## LESSON XXIV

## THIRD DECLENSION

## Neuter "I" Stems

Nouns ending -e, -al, -ar.

**Mare, sea; stem, mari-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	mari e	mar ia
<i>Gen.</i>	mar is	mar ium
<i>Dat.</i>	mar i	mar ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	mar e	mar ia
<i>Voc.</i>	mar e	mar ia
<i>Abl.</i>	mar i	mar ibus

NOTE. — Abl. Sing. -ī  
 Nom. Plur. -ia  
 Gen. Plur. -ium

Similarly: —

**animal, -ālis, animal.**  
**vectigal, -ālis, tax, revenue.**  
**calcar, -āris, spur.**

## EXERCISE

*(For Vocabulary, see page 288)*

- A. 1. In mari māgnō nāvēs multae nāvigant.  
 2. Herculēs in valle cum animālī saevō contendit.  
 3. Ancorās in mare altum dēmittunt.  
 4. Incolae Karthāginis trāns maria lāta nāvigābant.  
 5. Equitēs Rōmānī māgnōrum cīvitātis vectigālium pūblicānī erant.  
 6. Caesar imperium populi Rōmānī terrā marique cōfirmāre cōstituit.
- B. 1. Into the wide sea. In the wide sea.  
 2. Of the deep seas. Of many animals.  
 3. The taxes are great.  
 4. The chieftain feared the sea.  
 5. The knight urged his horse with a spur.

## STORY ABOUT A FLEET

Classēm māgnam in continentī fabrī aedificant. Nāvēs longae angustae et altae et celerēs erant. Hostēs rōstrīs et rēmīs perterrēbant. Onerāriae autem humilēs ac lātae erant. Onera enim portābant. Mālīs, ancorīs, vēlīs, fūnibus reliquīsque armāmentīs ōnant. Tum Caesar peditēs suōs et equitēs cōscendere jubet. Deinde, ubi tempestās est idōnea, solvit et ad sōlis occāsum nāvigat. Britannī ex lītore Caesarem cōspiciunt. Militēs nāvibus ēgredi<sup>1</sup> prohibēre parant. Caesar tamen māgnō negōtiō militēs exposuit.

Give Latin for:—

1. Oar, anchor, mast, a sail, rope, tackle, prow.
2. Embark, land (intransitive), land (transitive), set sail, to sail, west, weather, storm.

<sup>1</sup> to disembark; translate from disembarking.

## LESSON XXV

## THIRD DECLENSION

## IRREGULAR NOUNS

**Vīs**, f., *force*; stem, **vī**      **Bōs**, m. or f., *ox, cow*; stem, **bov-** (**bov-**)      **Jūpiter**, m., *Jupiter*; stem, **Jov-** (**Jov-**)

		SINGULAR		
<i>Nom.</i>	vīs	bōs	Jūpiter	
<i>Gen.</i>		bov is	Jov is	
<i>Dat.</i>		bov i	Jov i	
<i>Acc.</i>	vim	bov em	Jov em	
<i>Voc.</i>		bōs	Jūpiter	
<i>Abl.</i>	vī	bov e	Jov e	
		PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	vīr ēs	bov ēs		No plural
<i>Gen.</i>	vīr tum	{ bov um bo um		
<i>Dat.</i>	vīr ibus	{ bō bus bū bus		
<i>Acc.</i>	vīr ēs	bov ēs		
<i>Voc.</i>	vīr ēs	bov ēs		
<i>Abl.</i>	vīr ibus	{ bō bus bū bus		

**vīs**, in classical Latin, is practically lacking in the Gen. Dat. and Voc. Sing.

Singular, **vīs** = *force, violence, quantity*.

Plural, **vīrēs** = *bodily strength*.

**Jūpiter** = *Jov pater* (*Jov pater*), "*Father Jove*."

The following are peculiar:—

**iter**, *itineris*, n., *journey, road*.

**senex**, *senis*, m., *old man*; Gen. pl. *senum*.

*carō*, *carnis*, f., *flesh*; Gen. pl. *carnium*.  
*os*, *ossis*, n., *bone*; pl. *ossa*, *ossium*, etc.  
*ōs*, *ōris*, n., *mouth*; pl. *ōra*, *ōrum*, etc.

## EXERCISE

(For Vocabulary, see page 289)

- A. 1. *Māgnā vī hastam contorsit.*  
 2. *Vim flūminis pōns sustinet.*  
 3. *Vīs māgna frūmentī in oppidis erat.*  
 4. *Māgnīs itineribus in finēs Gallōrum contendit.*  
 5. *Germānī erant māgnārum vīrium hominēs.*  
 6. *Dī hominēsque Jovem timent.*  
 7. *Lacte carneque Germānī vivunt.*
- B. 1. The strength of the men (*vir*) was great; the men were large.  
 2. They sacrifice an ox on the shore to Jupiter.  
 3. He opened a route through Gaul.  
 4. The roads were long.  
 5. He hastened by a forced march to the river.  
 6. The Romans heard the words of the old men.



TESTUDŌ

*Hostēs ad mūrūm ruunt. Testudinem faciunt.*  
*Sinistrīs suprā capita scūta tenent. Ita corpora tegunt.*

## LESSON XXVI

## GENDER OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

## SUMMARY OF RULES

Most of the nouns given below have already been mentioned.

## MASCULINE

- er, -or, -ōs ;
- ēs or -ēs (increasing in the Gen.);
- ō (except, -dō, -gō, -iō).

Also sōl, sōlis, *sun* ; sāl, salis, *salt*.

Exceptions : —

lter, n.; vēr, n.; uxor, f., *wife*; soror, f., *sister*; arbor, f.; aequor, n.;  
ōs, n. (also os, n., *bone*); carō, f.; linter, f.; cadāver, -eris, n., *corpse*;  
cor, cordis, n., *heart*; aes, aeris, n., *copper, bronze, brass*; quies, -ētis,  
f., *rest*; seges, -etis, f., *field of grain*.

## FEMININE

- dō, -gō, -iō ;
- ās, -is, -aus, -x ;
- ēs (not increasing);
- s, preceded by a consonant;
- ūs (except monosyllables), e.g. virtūs.

Exceptions : —

ordō, m.; cardō, m.; collis, m.; ignis, m.; lapis, m.; fūnis, m.;  
sanguis, m.; pulvis, -eris, m., *dust*; crinis, -is, m., *hair*; mōns, pōns,  
fōns, dēns, m.

## NEUTER

- ūs (like opus and oopus);
- men;
- e, -al, -ar ("I" stems).

Also lac, oaput, poēma, -atis; rōbur, fulgur; the monosyl-  
lables, rūs, jūs, orūs.

Exception, lepus, m., *hare*.



REVIEW EXERCISE ON THE THIRD DECLENSION 71

Summary of "I" Stems

MASCULINE AND FEMININE

I. Nouns ending in *-is* and *-ēs*, not increasing the number of syllables in the Gen., e.g. : —

*ignis, ignis, fire; caedēs, caedis, slaughter. Compare sanguis, sanguinis; miles, militis.*

II. Monosyllables with apparent stems ending in two consonants, e.g. : —

*ars, Gen. plur. artium; urbs, Gen. plur. urbium (but not trabs, trabum); nox, Gen. plur. noctium.*

III. Most nouns ending in *-ns* and *-rs*, and a few others, e.g. : —

*cliēs, adherent, retainer; cohors, cohort; linter, boat.*

NEUTER

IV. Nouns ending in *-e, -al, -ar*, e.g. : —

*mare, sea; animal, animal; calcar, spur.*

REVIEW EXERCISE ON THE THIRD DECLENSION

*sine* (Abl.), *without.*

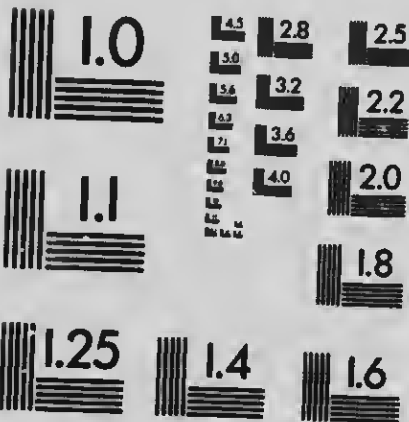
*propter* (Acc.), *on account of, owing to.*

- A. 1. Owing to the cold, many will not come.  
2. They took men, women and children.  
(Why not *homō* here?)  
3. A great storm damaged Caesar's ships.  
4. Caesar had many rowers.  
5. The citizens do not fear Jupiter, father of gods and men. (*homō* or *vir*?)  
6. He hastens into the territories of the enemy by forced marches.  
7. They placed many old men in the marshes.  
8. The road was long; the nights were dark.  
9. He hurled his spear with great force.



**MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART**

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



**APPLIED IMAGE Inc**

1653 East Main Street  
Rochester, New York 14609 USA  
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone  
(716) 288 - 5989 - Fax

72 REVIEW EXERCISE ON THE THIRD DECLENSION

10. They fear the violence of the enemy.
11. He sends the soldiers without baggage.
12. The ancient Romans had many virtues.
13. Cicero wrote a book about old age.
14. Large trees have strong roots.

ON GENDER

*(These may be varied in case)*

- B.
1. Great fear ; tall tree.
  2. High mounds ; long journeys.
  3. First legion ; our ranks.
  4. Small boat ; pleasing spring.
  5. Much copper ; pure air.
  6. Bright sun ; many animals.
  7. Our state ; large vessel (vase).
  8. Bright fire ; Roman fleet.
  9. Great slaughter ; many feet.
  10. Of long peace ; good laws ; many kings.
  11. Great praise (acc.) ; distinguished valor.
  12. Many stones ; of long ropes ; by much blood.
  13. Third part ; high mountain ; first cohort.
  14. Our rights ; large hare ; small mouse.

"I" STEMS

- C.
1. Of old men ; of cities ; of beams.
  2. Of feet ; of parts ; of strength ; of men (vir).
  3. By blood ; by fire ; in a ship ; on a hill ; with an enemy.
  4. Of months ; of cohorts ; of seas.
  5. Of soldiers ; of citadels ; of nights.
  6. Of lions ; of animals.
  7. In the city ; in the sea ; on the mountain.
  8. Of bones ; of mouths ; of swine ; of roads ; of oxen.
  9. Of birds ; of dogs ; of young men.
  10. Of many ships ; of the enemy.



JUNO

(Greek, HERA)

Jūnō et conjūx et soror Jovis fuit. Rēgīna igitur deūm existimātur. Jūpiter ei interdum Irāscēbātur et nōnunquam eam gravissimis poenis afficiēbat. Haec dea saevissimē Trōjānōs ōderat quod ab Electrā et Jove nāti sunt. Aliās quoque ob causās eōs ōderat: praecipuē quod Paris fōrmam ējus contempsit et mālum aureum Veneri dedit.

## LESSON XXVII

## ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

## Adjectives of Three Terminations

*Ācer, sharp, keen, fierce; stem, ācri-*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer	ācr is	ācr e	ācr ēs	ācr ēs	ācr ia
<i>Gen.</i>	ācr is	ācr is	ācr is	ācr ium	ācr ium	ācr ium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācr i	ācr i	ācr i	ācr ibus	ācr ibus	ācr ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācr em	ācr em	ācr e	ācr ēs	ācr ēs	ācr ia
<i>Voc.</i>	ācer	ācr is	ācr e	ācr ēs	ācr ēs	ācr ia
<i>Abl.</i>	ācr i	ācr i	ācr i	ācr ibus	ācr ibus	ācr ibus

Acc. Plur. Mas. and Fem. in *-is* also occurs.

Decline similarly:—

*silvester, woody.**terrester, earthly.**equester, equestrian.**volucer, winged.**pedester, pedestrian.**celer, celeris, celere, swift, retains the e before r.*The *Nom.* and *Voc. Mas.* forms *silvester* and *terrester* are rare. These adjectives are more commonly declined as follows:—*silvestris* (M. or F.), *silvestre* (N.), like *fortis* below.

## Adjectives of Two Terminations

*Fortis, brave, strong; stem, forti-*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. OR F.	N.	M. OR F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	fort is	fort e	fort ēs	fort ia
<i>Gen.</i>	fort is	fort is	fort ium	fort ium
<i>Dat.</i>	fort i	fort i	fort ibus	fort ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	fort em	fort e	fort ēs	fort ia
<i>Voc.</i>	fort is	fort e	fort ēs	fort ia
<i>Abl.</i>	fort i	fort i	fort ibus	fort ibus

Decline similarly:—

*brevis*, short, brief.  
*gravis*, heavy, severe.  
*tristis*, sad.  
*utilis*, useful.

*omnis*, all, every.  
*turpis*, disgraceful.  
*mitis*, mild.

*trēs, tria*, three, is declined like the plur. of *fortis*.

NOTE.—Most Adjectives of the Third Declension are “I” Stems.

Comparatives, and a few others, are Consonant Stems: Neut. Plur. -a; Gen. Plur. -um.

Comparatives

*Fortior*, braver; stem, *fortiōr-*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. OR F.	N.	M. OR F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>fortior</i>	<i>fortius</i>	<i>fortiōrēs</i>	<i>fortiōra</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>fortiōris</i>	<i>fortiōris</i>	<i>fortiōrum</i>	<i>fortiōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>fortiōri</i>	<i>fortiōri</i>	<i>fortiōribus</i>	<i>fortiōribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>fortiōrem</i>	<i>fortius</i>	<i>fortiōrēs</i>	<i>fortiōra</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>fortior</i>	<i>fortius</i>	<i>fortiōrēs</i>	<i>fortiōra</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>fortiōre</i>	<i>fortiōre</i>	<i>fortiōribus</i>	<i>fortiōribus</i>

1. Abl. -i, Acc. Plur. -is also occur.
2. *minor*, minus, less, smaller, is similar, but without i.
3. In *māior*, greater, *pēior*, worse, the j is merely the consonant form of i.
4. For *plūs*, more, see page 77.
5. Like *fortior*, decline *ācrior*, *celerior*, *longior*, *brevior*, etc.

EXERCISE

1. Short road; short roads; a short life (*Acc.*); of short roads.
2. Keen frost (*frīgus*); without a heavy burden.
3. On account of a sad disaster (*clādēs*); a fierce (*ācer*) soldier.

4. Severe winter (*ācer*); of severe winters; by a severe winter.
5. On a higher hill; of mild old men.
6. Of a fiercer soldier; swifter ships; of swift ships.
7. A smaller camp; in a smaller camp; of a smaller camp.
8. A larger city; larger cities (*Nom.*); into larger cities.
9. All the time; all times; in all Gaul; into all the rivers.
10. More useful books (*Nom.*); useful books (*Acc.*); of useful books.

## LESSON XXVIII

### Adjectives of One Termination

*Fēlix*, happy; stem, *fēlicī-* *Prūvāns*, foreseeing; stem, *prūdenti-*  
bare stem, *fēlic-* bare stem, *prūdenti-*

		SINGULAR			
		M. OR F.	N.	M. OR F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>prūdēns</i>	<i>prūdēns</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>fēlicis</i>	<i>fēlicis</i>	<i>fēlicis</i>	<i>prūdētis</i>	<i>prūdētis</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>fēlicī</i>	<i>fēlicī</i>	<i>fēlicī</i>	<i>prūdētī</i>	<i>prūdētī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>fēlicem</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>prūdētē</i>	<i>prūdētē</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>prūdēns</i>	<i>prūdēns</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>fēlicī</i>	<i>fēlicī</i>	<i>fēlicī</i>	<i>prūdētī</i>	<i>prūdētī</i>
		PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>fēlicēs</i>	<i>fēlicia</i>	<i>prūdētēs</i>	<i>prūdētia</i>	
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>fēlicium</i>	<i>fēlicium</i>	<i>prūdētium</i>	<i>prūdētium</i>	
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>fēlicibus</i>	<i>fēlicibus</i>	<i>prūdētibus</i>	<i>prūdētibus</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>fēlicēs</i>	<i>fēlicia</i>	<i>prūdētēs</i>	<i>prūdētia</i>	
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>fēlicēs</i>	<i>fēlicia</i>	<i>prūdētēs</i>	<i>prūdētia</i>	
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>fēlicibus</i>	<i>fēlicibus</i>	<i>prūdētibus</i>	<i>prūdētibus</i>	



1. Similar to *fēlix* are: —*audāx*, audāc is, *bold*.*ferāx*, -ācis, *fertile*.*vēlōx*, vēlōc is, *swift*.*ferōx*, -ōcis, *high-spirited*.*tenāx*, -ācis, *tenacious*.2. Similar to *prūdēns* are: —

## (a) The Adjectives: —

*sapiēns*, *wise*; *diligēns*, *careful*; *ingēns*, *immense*.

## (b) All Present Participles, e.g.: —

*amāns*, *loving*.*regēns*, *ruling*.*oriēns*, *rising*.*patiēns*, *suffering*.NOTE. — Participles, and Adjectives used as Nouns, take Abl. Sing. in -*ē*.*Vetus*, *old*; stem, *veter-*. *Plūs*, *more*; stem, *plūr-*

	SINGULAR			
	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>vetus</i>	<i>vetus</i>	_____	<i>plūs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>veter is</i>	<i>veter is</i>	_____	<i>plūr is</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>veter ī</i>	<i>veter ī</i>	_____	_____
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>veter em</i>	<i>vetus</i>	_____	<i>plūs</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>vetus</i>	<i>vetus</i>	_____	_____
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>veter ē</i>	<i>veter ē</i>	_____	<i>plūr ē</i>
	PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>veter ēs</i>	<i>veter a</i>	<i>plūr es</i>	<i>plūr a</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>veter um</i>	<i>veter um</i>	<i>plūr ium</i>	<i>plūr ium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>veter ibus</i>	<i>veter ibue</i>	<i>plūr ibus</i>	<i>plūr ibue</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>veter ēs</i>	<i>veter a</i>	<i>plūr ēs -is</i>	<i>plūr a</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>veter ēe</i>	<i>veter a</i>	_____	_____
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>veter ibus</i>	<i>veter ibus</i>	<i>plūr ibus</i>	<i>plūr ibus</i>

*Pauper*, -eris, *poor*, and *dīves*, -itis, *rich*, are of one termination.NOTE. — (1) *vetus*, *pauper* and *dīves* are consonant stems: Abl. -*ē*; Gen. Plur. -*um*.(2) *plūs* is partly an *i* stem; Gen. Plur. -*ium*.

EXERCISE

1. Fierce minds; of fierce minds; in fertile fields.
2. By a swift wind; swifter winds; bold animals.
3. A tenacious man (Acc.); of tenacious men.
4. We praise the wise and the good. (*What word is understood?*)
5. The master loves diligent boys.
6. He praises the good work of diligent boys.
7. We see the light of the rising sun.
8. Old soldiers; with an old soldier; of old soldiers.
9. The rich gave money to the poor.
10. More (of) time; more soldiers; more kinds; of more men.
11. The Germans had immense bodies.
12. They adorned the forum with the prows of old ships.
13. They collected more forces; more grain.

REVIEW WORD LIST

(The figure after the word indicates the number of Latin words to be given for the English.)

GEOGRAPHY

island	town	state	Gaul
sea (3)	village	mountain	Spain
river (2)	country	hill	Britain
city	(one's) country	valley	a people

KINDS OF PEOPLE

farmer	judge	children	old man
sailor	slave	father	youth
rower	man (2)	mother	son
workman	woman	brother	daughter
citizen	people ( <i>pl.</i> )	sister	a Gaul
king	boy	wife	a Briton
lord	girl	husband	the Roman people

## WAR

war	fleet	baggage
hattle	danger	beast of burden
leader	slaughter	aid
commander	flight	arms
lieutenant	fear	shield
soldier	forces	helmet
infantry	enemy	cuirass
cavalry	camp	sword
standard-bearer	rampart	missile
hostage	ditch	javelin
ambassador	gate	spear
ship	street	arrow
ship-of-war	mound	sling
ship-of-burden	tower	battering-ram
		war-engine

## ADJECTIVES

1. good, bad, wretched, brave, high, low, deep.
2. wise, foreseeing, bold, brave, swift (2), sharp, heavy.
3. sad, fortunate, happy, beautiful, sick, high-spirited.
4. pleasing, large, small, splendid, bright, distinguished, dear, careful.
5. rich, poor, old, young, ancient.

## VERBS

## FIRST CONJUGATION

call, tell, fight, praise, give, announce, create, kill, wound, throw, wage war, attack, take-by-storm, prepare, reign, govern, pray, ask, build.

## SECOND CONJUGATION

advise, see, fear, destroy, answer, have, hold, remain, fill, order.

## PREPOSITIONS

## THIRD CONJUGATION

rule, conquer, send, learn, lead, write, drive, carry (carry on, wage).

## FOURTH CONJUGATION

hear, come, fortify, punish, leap down, bury.

## PREPOSITIONS

(Recall the Case each governs.)

to, in, into, away from, out of, through, across, around,  
with, between, before (of place), before (of time), in be-  
half of, down from, about (concerning), around, without, on  
account of.

## STORIES OF EARLY ROME

The Sibylline Books.

Secession of the Plebs to the Sacred Mount, 494 B.C.

Fable of the Body and the Members. — Tribune of the Plebs.

Coriolanus and the Volscians, 491 B.C.

Cincinnatus, 458 B.C.

The Decemvirs and the Laws of the Twelve Tables.

Appius Claudius and Virginia.

## WARS WITH THE GAULS

Romans defeated at Allia, 390 B.C.

Rome occupied by the Gauls for 7 months. — Siege of the Capitol.  
— The Sacred Geese. — Camillus.

Titus Manlius Torquatus, 361 B.C.

Marcus Valerius Corvinus, 349 B.C.

## ROME'S STRUGGLE FOR THE MASTERY OF ITALY

Wars with the Samnites, 345-290 B.C.

Defeat of the Romans at the Caudine Forks, 321 B.C.

Pyrrhus, King of Epīrus, invades Southern Italy in alliance with  
the people of Tarentum, 282-272 B.C.

Read the story of the Treacherous Slave.



HANNIBAL CROSSING THE RHÔNE

## READING LESSONS

Based on { Declensions I, II, and III  
 { Indic. Act. of *vocō, moneō, regō, audiō.*

(For Vocabulary, see page 290)

## ROME

1. Rōma pulchrum Italiae oppidum erat. Rōmulus in colle Palātīnō condidit. Incolās Rōmānōs appellāmus. Validī virī erant Rōmānī et patriam amābant. Saepe cum vicīnis, Volscīs et Sabīnīs et Samnītibus, prō patriā pugnābant. Saepe hostēs in bellō superāvērunt.

## SEVEN KINGS

2. Multās dē Rōmānīs antiquīs fābulās in librīs legimus: dē Cincinnātō, dē Horātiō, dē Camillō et Gallīs, dē mulieribus Sabīnīs, dē caede tristī Virginiae. Nōn tamen omniēs fābulae vērae sunt. Septem rēgēs Rōmae erant: prīmus et conditor Rōmulus; ūltimus, vir crūdēlis, Tarquinius Superbus. Numa Pompilius, rēx secundus, religiōnem Rōmānīs dedit; multa et splendida templa in urbe aedificāvit. Post rēgēs, cōsulēs duo quōque<sup>1</sup> annō creābant.

<sup>1</sup> each.

## WARS WITH THE CARTHAGINIANS

3. Poenī in oppidō Karthāgine trāns mare habitābant. Hostēs ferōcēs Rōmānōrum semper erant et māgnās classēs ad omnēs orās Maris Internī mittēbant. Mercātōrēs et nautae praeclārī erant. Etiam in Oceanum ad Britanniā vēnērunt. Multās insulās circum Sici-

liam, multa in Siciliā oppida habēbant. Hispāniam omnem usque ad flūmen Ibērum superāvērunt et Rōmānōs ex Hispāniā pellere volēbant. Hannibal, adulēscēns strēmūnis atque fortis, ā puerō inimicus Rōmānōrum erat. Hannibalem militēs ducem dēlēgērunt.

#### HANNIBAL CROSSES THE ALPS

4. Māgnās cōpiās, multōs elephantōs parāvit. Trāns Pŷrēnaeōs montēs in Galliam militēs dūxit et prīncipum animōs Gallōrum verbis benignis dōnisque māgnis conciliāvit. Trāns Rhodanum flūmen militēs, elephantōs, omnia impedimenta ratibus lincibusque trānsportāvit. Elephantī autem flūmen māgnopere pertimēscēbant. Ad Alpēs tandem vēnit et ascendere contendit. Multa pericula, multās calamitatēs in itinere sustinēbat. Per nivem, per rūpēs iter fēcit; dē montibus tandem in Italiam dēscendit. Quīnque mēnsibus iter ex Hispāniā cōnfecerat. Sed multōs militēs, et pedātēs et equitēs, elephantōrum māgnū numerum amiserat.

#### HANNIBAL DEFEATED. CARTHAGE DESTROYED

5. Annōs sēdecim cum Rōmānis bellum gessit. Multis in proeliis Rōmānōs superāvit; multa oppida in Italiā occupāvit. Pūblius Cornēlius Scīpiō tandem, māgnae virtūtis adulēscēns et māgnae bellī scientiae, in Africam vēnit. Hannibalem ex Italiā arcessunt Poenī. Scīpiō Poenōs et ducem Hannibalem apud Zāman, Africae oppidum, vicit. Propter tantam victōriam Rōmānī postea Scīpiōnem Africānum appellābant. Post paucōs annōs, tertiō bellō Poenicō, Rōmānī Carthāginem dēlent et mūrōs rescindunt.

## LESSON XXIX

## FOURTH DECLENSION

## "U" Stems

**Fructus**, m., *fruit*;  
stem **fructu-**

**Cornū**, n., *horn*;  
stem **cornu-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	fruct ūs	fruct ūs	corn ū	corn ua
<i>Gen.</i>	fruct ūs	fruct uum	corn ūs	corn uum
<i>Dat.</i>	fruct uī	fruct ibus	corn ū	corn ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	fruct um	fruct ūs	corn ū	corn ua
<i>Voc.</i>	fruct ūs	fruct ūs	corn ū	corn ua
<i>Abl.</i>	fruct ū	fruct ibus	corn ū	corn ibus

Compare the stems in the following Genitive Plurals:—

terrā rum, dominō rum, princip um, urbi um, fructu um.

## Gender

Most nouns of the Fourth Declension ending in **-us** are Masculine. All ending in **-ū** are Neuter, as:—

MASCULINE	NEUTER
<b>exercitus</b> , <i>army</i> .	<b>genū</b> , <i>knee</i> .
<b>fluctus</b> , <i>wave</i> .	<b>verū</b> , <i>a spit</i> .
<b>portus</b> , <i>harbor</i> .	
<b>senātus</b> , <i>senate</i> .	
<b>cōnspectus</b> , <i>sight</i> .	

Exceptions:—

Feminine: **domus**, *house*; **manus**, 1. *hand*, 2. *band*, or *force of men*; **quercus**, *an oak*, and other names of trees; **Idūs**, -uum, plur., *Ides* (13th or 15th of the month).



## PECULIARITIES OF DECLENSION

1. The ending **-ūbus** is sometimes found instead of **-ibus**.

Sometimes **-ubus** : —

**artūs**, *limbs*.

**portus**, *harbor*.

dissyllables in **-cus**, as : —

**arcus**, *bow*.

**acus**, *needle*

**lacus**, *lake*.

**quercus**, *oak*.

Always **-ubus** : —

**tribus**, *tribe*.

2. **Domus**, *house, home*, is partly of the Fourth and partly of the Second Declension : —

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	domus	domūs
<i>Gen.</i>	domūs (Locative, domī)	domuum, domōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	domui, domō	domibus
<i>Acc.</i>	domum	domōs, domūs
<i>Voc.</i>	domus	domūs
<i>Abl.</i>	domō (domū rarely)	domibus

**Locative Case.** — An old form surviving in a few nouns, denoting "place where."

Note the following values : —

**domī** (Loc.), *at home* (domūs, *of a house*).

**domum**, (*to*) *home* (preposition **ad** omitted).

**domō**, *from home* (preposition **ab** or **ex** omitted).  
also **domōs**, *to their homes*.

Names of towns and cities also use the Locative for "place where," and omit the prepositions before the Acc. and Abl., e.g. : —

**Rōmae** (Loc.), *at Rome*; **Rōmam**, *to Rome*; **Rōmā**, *from Rome*.

**Corinthī** (Loc.), *in Corinth*; **Corinthum**, *to Corinth*; **Corinthō**, *from Corinth*.

**Carthāgine** (Loc.), *in Carthage*; **Carthāginem**, *to Carthage*, **Carthāgine**, *from Carthage*.

**Athēnis** (Loc.), *in Athens*; **Athēnāa**, *to Athens*; **Athēnīa**, *from Athens*.

Similarly, **rūs**, *the country* : —

**rūrī** (Loc.), *in the country*; **rūa**, *to the country*; **rūre**, *from the country*.

**NOTE.** — In Singular nouns of the First and Second Declensions, the Locative is identical with the Genitive. In other nouns it is the

same as the Ablative. **Rūri, domī**, and a few other words are pure Locatives.

## EXERCISE

(For Vocabulary, see page 290)

- A. 1. Māgnō cum exercitū; māgnōrum exercituum dūcēs.  
 2. Māgnū exercitum habet. Exercitūs māgnī est dux.  
 3. Hostēs in cōspectū nōn erant; in cōspectum nōn vēnerant.  
 4. Equitātui, equōs dat. Equitibus equōs dat.  
 5. Nāvēs in fluctibus Ōceanī adflīctābat ventus.  
 6. Multī portūs in ōrīs Galliae erant.  
 7. Māgnās manūs Gallī coēgerant.  
 8. Domum meam in agrīs aedificāvī.  
 9. Splendidae domūs Trōjae erant.  
 10. Peditātum mīsit; peditēs mittet.  
 11. Māgnus erat numerus peditum; partem peditātūs mittēmus.
- B. 1. The enemy had large armies, — large forces.  
 2. In the Roman army there were many legions.  
 3. He led both infantry and cavalry into Gaul.  
 (Give two words each for *infantry* and *cavalry*.)  
 4. They nourish their bodies by the fruit of the fields.  
 5. Oxen have large horns and small feet.  
 6. He came with a large part of the infantry soldiers.  
 7. The infantry came with the cavalry (1. — 2. —).  
 8. (a) At home. (b) He sent the hostages home.  
 (c) The Germans had driven the Gauls from home. (d) The roof of our house was high.  
 9. They stretched out their (*sua*) hands to Caesar.  
 10. The oaks are high; of a high oak; of high oaks.  
 11. They built large houses on the high hill.

## LESSON XXX

## FIFTH DECLENSION

## "E" Stems

**Diēs**, m., *day* ; stem, **diē-**      **Rēs**, f., *thing* ; stem, **rē-**      **Spēs**, f., *hope* ; stem, **spē-**      **Fidēs**, f., *faith* ; stem, **fidē-**

## SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	diēs	rēs	spēs	fidēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diēi	rēi	spēi	fidēi
<i>Dat.</i>	diēi	rēi	spēi	fidēi
<i>Acc.</i>	diem	rem	spe m	fidem
<i>Voc.</i>	diēs	rēs	spēs	fidēs
<i>Abl.</i>	diē	rē	spē	fidē

## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	diēs	rēs	spēs	—
<i>Gen.</i>	diērum	rērum	—	—
<i>Dat.</i>	diēbus	rēbus	—	—
<i>Acc.</i>	diēs	rēs	spēs	—
<i>Voc.</i>	diēs	rēs	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	diēbus	rēbus	—	—

1. Compare the stems of **terrārum**, **servōrum**, **prīncipiūm**, **hostiūm**, **frūctūum**, **diērum**, and designate the five declensions according to the ending of the stem.

2. Notice that in **diēi**, **speciēi**, **aciēi**, etc., the **e** of the stem is long after a vowel ; but that in **rēi**, **spēi**, **fidēi** it is short after a consonant.

## Gender

All nouns of the Fifth Declension, except **diēs** and **meridiēs**, are feminine, as : —

**rēs**, *thing, matter, affair.*

**spēs**, *hope.*

**fidēs**, *faith.*

**aciēs**, *line of battle.*

**speciēs**, *appearance.*

**plānitēs**, *plain.*

Exceptions : —

**Diēs**, *day* (usually), and **merīdiēs**, *mid-day* (always), are **masculine**.  
**Diēs** is sometimes **fem.** in the **sing.** in the sense *appointed day*.

### PECULIARITIES

1. Only **diēs** and **rēs** are declined throughout in both sing. and plur.
2. Most other nouns of the Fifth Declension lack the entire plural, especially abstract nouns.
3. **Spēs**, **actēs**, **spciēs**, and a few others have the Nom. and Acc. plur. **spēs**, etc.
4. **Rēs**, *a thing, matter, affair*, etc.

This word may be translated in many different ways, according to the context. Note the following phrases : —

**rēs militāris**, *military science*.

**rēs novas** (pl.), *revolution, political change*.

**rēs gestae**, *achievements, exploits*.

**rēs familiāris**, *private fortune, business*, etc.

5. The idea of *thing* or *things* is frequently expressed by omitting **rēs** and using the adjective in the neuter as a substantive : —

many things { 1. **multae rēs**.  
 2. **multa** (n. pl.). } a good thing { 1. **rēs bona**.  
 2. **bonum**.  
 . *goods, property, bona* (n. pl.).

**Rēs pūblica**, *commonwealth, republic, public welfare*.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
Nom.	rēs pūblica	rēs pūblīcae	rēs pūblīcae
Gen.	rei pūblīcae	rērum pūblīcārum	rērum pūblīcārum
Dat.	rei pūblīcae	rēbus pūblīcis	rēbus pūblīcis
Acc.	rem pūblīcam	rēs pūblīcās	rēs pūblīcās
Voc.	rēs pūblīca	rēs pūblīcae	rēs pūblīcae
Abl.	rē pūblīcā	rēbus pūblīcis	rēbus pūblīcis

## NUMERALS

## CARDINALS

<i>ūnus</i> , -a, -um,	<i>one</i> .
<i>duo</i> , -ae, -o,	<i>two</i> .
<i>trēs</i> , <i>tria</i> ,	<i>three</i> .
<i>quattuor</i> ,	<i>four</i> .
<i>quīque</i> ,	<i>five</i> .
<i>sex</i> ,	<i>six</i> .
<i>septem</i> ,	<i>seven</i> .
<i>octō</i> ,	<i>eight</i> .
<i>novem</i> ,	<i>nine</i> .
<i>decem</i> ,	<i>ten</i> .

## ORDINALS

<i>primus</i> ,	<i>first</i> .
<i>secundus</i> ,	<i>second</i> .
<i>tertius</i> ,	<i>third</i> .
<i>quārtus</i> ,	<i>fourth</i> .
<i>quintus</i> ,	<i>fifth</i> .
<i>sextus</i> ,	<i>sixth</i> .
<i>septimus</i> ,	<i>seventh</i> .
<i>octāvus</i> ,	<i>eighth</i> .
<i>nōnus</i> ,	<i>ninth</i> .
<i>decimus</i> ,	<i>tenth</i> .

The ordinals are declined like *bonus*.

(For complete list see page 116)

## EXPRESSIONS OF TIME

1. Time "when" and time "within which" are expressed by the **Ablative without a preposition**, as: —

*aestāte*, *in the summer*.

*diē tertiō*, *on the third day*.

*quīque diēbus*, *within five days*.

2. Time "how long," or duration of time, is expressed by the **Accusative of extent**, as: —

*multōs annōs rēgnābat*, *he reigned many years*.

*tōtum diem pugnāvērunt*, *they fought all day*.

## EXERCISE

(For Vocabulary, see page 290)

- A.
1. *Māgnam spem victōriae habēbant*.
  2. *Acīem triplicem in colle īstrūxit*.
  3. *Ante tertium diem vēnit; diē quartō veniet*.
  4. *Post paucōs diēs exercitum ē castrīs ēdūxērunt*.
  5. *Multa ante finem diēi accidit*.

6. Nāvium speciēs inūsitāta barbarōs terret.
7. Militēs in aciē trēs hōrās stābant.
8. Virtūs causa est multārum rērum bēnē gestārum.
9. Rōmānī multīs rēbus Gallōs superābant.
10. Obsidēs in fidem suam accēpiēt.
11. Multās rēs bonā fidē gessit.
12. Omnia bona sua in silvīs dēposuērunt.
13. Rēs militāris mōtum celerem postulat.

- B.**
1. We praise Caesar's achievements.
  2. They report the matter to Caesar.
  3. The plain was not large.
  4. The days of youth are happy.
  5. Before the fifth day; of the fourth day.
  6. In five days he took (*expugnō*) the camp.
  7. They remained in camp seven days.
  8. They came with great hope of victory.
  9. We had great hopes.
  10. They laid aside all hope of safety.
  11. They formed a long line of battle.
  12. He ordered the Gauls to bring hostages by (*ad*) the tenth day (*fem.*).
  13. (It) is a good (thing) to love good books.
  14. The Gauls loved revolution.
  15. They fought for the republic; loved the republic; the dangers of the republic; in the republic.

#### Phrases

- aciem instruō, *form line of battle.*  
 aciem convertō, *face about.*  
 aciēs cōnferta, *a compact line of battle.*  
 aciēs oculōrum, *the fierce, keen gaze of the eyes.*  
 aciēs ferrī, *edge of the sword.*

(Root *ac-*, *sharp.*)

PECULIAR NOUNS OF ALL DECLENSIONS

(For reference)

I. Indeclinable

<b>fās</b> , right.	<b>nihi</b> , nothing.
<b>nefās</b> , wrong.	<b>Instar</b> , likeness.
<b>māne</b> , morning.	

II. Defective

1. No plural: —

Proper nouns; as **Rōma**, Rome.  
 Abstract nouns; as **auctōritās**, influence.  
 Names of material; as **aurum**, gold.

2. No singular: —

**mājōrēs**, ancestors; **geminī**, twins; **faucēs**, jaws.  
 Many names of cities; as **Athēnae**, Athens; **Syrācūsae**, Syracuse.

<b>arma</b> , arms.	<b>mānēs</b> , the shades of the dead.
<b>dīvitiae</b> , riches.	<b>nūptiae</b> , nuptials.
<b>insīdiae</b> , ambush.	<b>reliquiae</b> , remains.
<b>sarcinae</b> , small baggage.	<b>tenebrae</b> , darkness.

3. Used only in certain cases: —

**jussū**, by order; **nātū**, by birth; **fors**, chance; **forte**, by chance;  
 (ops) **opīs**, **opī**, **opem**, **ope**, help; plur., **opēs**, **opum**, etc., wealth,  
 resources, power.

III. Varying the meaning in the plural

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<b>aedēs</b> , temple.	<b>aedēs</b> , house.
<b>auxilium</b> , aid.	<b>auxilia</b> , auxiliary troops, reinforcements.
<b>castrum</b> , fort, castle.	<b>castra</b> , camp.
<b>cōpia</b> , plenty.	<b>cōplae</b> , (1) supplies, (2) forces, troops.
<b>finis</b> , end, limit.	<b>finēs</b> , boundaries, territories.
<b>grātia</b> , favor.	<b>grātiae</b> , thanks.
<b>impedimentum</b> , hindrance.	<b>impedimenta</b> , heavy baggage.
<b>littera</b> , letter of the alphabet.	<b>litterae</b> , (1) epistle, (2) literature.
<b>mōs</b> , custom.	<b>mōrēs</b> , morals, character.
(ops) <b>opīs</b> , help.	<b>opēs</b> , resources, power.

## IV. Heterogeneous nouns (varying in Gender)

locus, m., *place*. { loca, n. plur., *places*.  
 { loci, m. plur., *topics*.  
 epulum, n., *feast*. epulae, f. plur., *feast*.

## V. Heteroclites (of different Declensions)

epulum (sing.), epulae (plur.), second and first.  
 fūgerum, *acre*; plur. fūgera, -um, -ibus, second and third.  
 vās, vāsīs, *jar, vase*; plur. vāsa, -ōrum, third and second.  
 domus, *house*, second and fourth.

## THE OLYMPIC DEITIES

as worshipped by the Romans

JUPITER	JUNO
MARS	MINERVA
NEPTUNE	DIANA
APOLLO	VENUS
VULCAN	CERES
MERCURY	VESTA

## MINOR DEITIES AND DEIFIED HEROES

BACCHUS, <i>god of wine</i> .	HERCULES, <i>hero of the twelve labors</i> .
CASTOR and POLLUX ("The Twins"), <i>brothers of Helen of Troy, guardians of sailors</i> .	PAN, <i>god of shepherds</i> .
THE MUSES (see page 154).	PLUTO (Hades), <i>god of the lower world; brother of Jupiter and Neptune</i> .
AURORA, <i>goddess of the dawn</i> .	THE FATES (Parcae) (Clotho, Lachesis and Atropos).
Read the story of Prometheus, Epimetheus and Pandora.	AEOLUS, <i>god of the winds</i> .





JULIUS CAESAR LANDING IN BRITAIN

## READING LESSONS

## JULIUS CAESAR INVADES BRITAIN (55 B.C.)

*(See General Vocabulary)*

1. **He sails from Gaul.** — Cāius Jūlius Caesar ōlim in Galliā bellum gerēbat. Britannī autem Gallis auxilium saepe subministrāverant. Caesar igitur Britannōs pūnīre et domī manēre cōgere volēbat. Multās nāvēs longās in portibus Galliae habēbat. Multās nāvēs onerāriās fabrōs aedificāre jussit. Ubi tandem tempestās idōnea erāt, omnēs cōscendere jussit et nāves solvit.

2. **His landing resisted.** — Ventus lēnis peditēs in primīs nāvibus ad ōrās Britanniae appulit. Equitēs vērō tempestās māgna ad Galliam rējēcit. Ubi Rōmānī insulae appropinquāvērunt, in omnibus collibus Britannōs vīdērunt. Caesar militēs ē nāvibus in terram expōnere incipit. Britannī autem in exercitum Rōmānōrum tēla ex āridō coniciēbant. Mox tamen Rōmānī ad litus per fluctūs pervēnērunt et barbarōs in silvās reppulērunt.

3. **Brave conduct of a standard-bearer.** — In hōc proeliō, dum hostēs equōs insuēfactōs incitant et Rōmānōs novō genere pugnae perterrent, aquilifer decimae legiōnis sīgnum manibus arripuit et māgnā vōce commilitōnēs dēsīlire et impetum in hostēs facere jussit. Ubi hōc dīxit, sē ex nāvī prōjēcit et aquilam in hostēs ferre coepit. Tum reliquī omnēs dēsīluērunt et hostibus appropinquāvērunt.

4. **The natives submit. His ships wrecked.** — Caesar nāvēs in litus subdūcī et castra mūnīrī jussit. Hostēs

statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīserunt. Caesar obsidēs imperāvit et Britannōs in agrōs suōs remigrāre jussit. Māgna tempestās intereā nāvēs Rōmānōrum in litore adflētāvit. Fūnēs, ancorās reliquaque armāmenta āmīsērunt. Māgnus erat omnīum militum timor. Nāvēs euim uīllas jam habēbant neque ad Galliam pervenire potuerunt.<sup>1</sup>

**5. The Britons again attack.** — Ubi principēs Britannōrū calamitātem Caesaris cognōvērunt, domō suōs revocāvērunt atque impetum in castra facere parābant. Legiōnem decimam Caesar frūmentum in castra comportāre jusserat. Britanūi subitō in legiōnem impetum fēcērunt et pulverem māgnūm rotīs essedārum excitāvērunt. Caesar, ubi pulverem ex castris cōnsperxit, cohortēs ad locum, ubi Britanni militēs circumvenerant, dūxit. Britanni per omnēs partēs percutābant et Rōmānōs strepitū rotārum perturbābant. Ubi vērō Caesarem cum cohortibus vīdērunt, cōstitērunt atque domum ex agrīs discessērunt.

**6. Final attack of the Britons repulsed.** -- Post paucōs diēs principēs māgnam multitudinē peditātūs equitātūsque coēgērunt et ad castra vērunt. Caesar legiōnēs in aciē prō castris cōstituit et proelium commisit. Hostēs impetum Rōmānōrum sustinere nōn potuerunt et terga vertērunt. Lēgātōs postea ad Caesarem dē pāce mīserunt. Caesar numerum obsidum duplicāvit et ad continentem addūcī jussit.

Complūrēs nāvēs fabrī intereā refēcerant. Caesar igitur militēs nāvēs cōscendere jussit et omnēs incolumēs ad Galliam redūxit.

<sup>1</sup> Perf. of *possum*, *am able*, *can*.

## LESSON XXXI

## THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

## Regular Comparison

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
altus, high.	altior, higher.	altissimus, 1. highest; 2. very high
brevis	brevior	brevissimus
prudens	prudensior	prudensissimus
audax	audacior	audacissimus

The Comparative degree is declined as follows: —

M. AND F.	N.
altior	altius
altioris	altioris
etc.	etc.

(See page 75)

The Superlative is declined as follows: —

altissimus, -a, -um,  
like bonus.

Similarly compare: —

longus, fortis, sapiens, vëlōx, gravis, utilis, cãrus.

The Latin word for "than" is *quam*.

Note, however, the two constructions following: —

Virtue is more { 1. Virtus cãrior quam aurum est.  
precious than gold. } 2. Virtus cãrior aurō (Abl.) est.

1. When "than" is expressed by *quam*, the second term of the comparison is put in the same case as the first, e.g. : —

virtus quam aurum.

2. *Quam* may be omitted. Then the second term of the comparison is put in the Ablative. This is called the **Ablative of Comparison**, e.g. : —

aurō = quam aurum.

3. **Quam** is not omitted except when both terms of the comparison would otherwise be in the Nominative or the Accusative, *e.g.* :—

(a) *He praises the girls more than (he praises) the boys.*

1. Puellas plūs quam puerōs laudat.

2. Puellas pueris plūs laudat.

(b) *He gives more praise to the girls than to the boys.*

Puellis plūs laudis (*more of praise*) quam pueris dat.

It would be wrong here to omit **quam** before the Dative pueris.

4. Note the two meanings of the Superlative :—

*breuissima via*, 1. *the shortest way*; 2. *a very short way*.

5. **Quam** with the Superlative expresses the highest degree possible, *as* :—

*vir quam sapientissimus*, *a man as wise as possible*.

6. The Comparative may signify "rather" or "too":—

*sapientior*, 1. *wiser*; 2. *rather wise*; 3. *too wise*.

but sometimes *aequō* or *iustō*, "*than what is right*," is added to signify "too."

## EXERCISE

- |  |                           |
|--|---------------------------|
| 4. 1. Altiōrēs arborēs.                  | 5. Breve tempus.          |
| 2. In altiōribus arboribus.              | 6. Longiōre itinere.      |
| 3. Brevius tempus.                       | 7. In lātiōribus castris. |
| 4. Breviōris temporis.                   | 8. Fortiōrum hominum.     |
| 9. Noctēs sunt brevissimae.              |                           |
| 10. Belgās, Gallōrum fortissimōs, vicit. |                           |
| 11. Mūrum quam altissimum aedificābunt.  |                           |
| 12. Per nivem altiōrem.                  |                           |
| 13. Maria sunt altiōra; marium altiōrum. |                           |
| 14. In mari altiōre.                     |                           |
| 15. Librum diligentiori puerō dabimus.   |                           |

- B. 1. In a wider harbor.  
 2. He drew up a very long line.  
 3. More useful books.  
 4. Buy a more useful book.  
 5. They are the bravest of all.  
 6. They have the widest territories.  
 7. He builds as strong ships as possible.  
 8. Of deeper rivers; into a deeper river.  
 9. On a higher tower; to a wider shore.  
 10. He came with a braver army.  
 11. By a rather long route.  
 12. Through the thickest woods.

In the following substitute, where possible, another construction to translate "*than*." Otherwise indicate the reason for not substituting.

- C. 1. Pater sapientior est quam filius.  
 2. Germānī Gallīs erant ferōciōrēs.  
 3. Militēs Germānōrum fortiōrēs erant quam Gal-  
 lōrum.  
 4. Librum ūtiliōrem pucrō dedit quam puellae.  
 5. Noctēs breviōrēs in insulīs sunt quam in conti-  
 nenti.  
 6. Onus quam gravissimum portānus.  
 7. Onus est gravius. (*Give all possible meanings.*)
- D. 1. On a higher hill.  
 2. A longer road.  
 3. After a short time; a shorter time; as short a time  
 as possible.  
 4. The road is very long.  
 5. The roads are longer; of longer roads.  
 6. On account of the very deep snow.  
 7. They drew the baggage through snow deeper than  
 the wheels of the carts.

8. Ships are more useful to Britons than to Gauls.
9. Sons are not wiser than (their) fathers.
10. He chose the boldest of all the soldiers.
11. He will lead the army by a rather long route.
12. Gold is heavier than iron or silver.

ABLATIVE OF DIFFERENCE

In the sentence

**Puer sex annis senior est quam soror,**

*The boy is (by) six years older than his sister,*

**annis** denotes the “*difference by which*” and is called the **Ablative of Difference**.

If **sorore** were substituted for **quam soror**, the sentence would then have an **Ablative of Difference** and an **Ablative of Comparison**.

EXERCISE

Translate in two ways:—

1. The tree is five feet taller than the house.
2. The girls are a few years older than the boys.

M. VALERIUS CORVINUS

Exercitus Rōmānus ōlim cum Gallis bellum gerēbat. Quīdam<sup>1</sup> ex Gallis ad castra Rōmāna vēnit et māgnā vōce ūnum ex Rōmānis prōvocāvit.<sup>2</sup>

Tum M. Valērius sē<sup>3</sup> obtulit.<sup>4</sup> Postquam armātus prōcessit, corvus<sup>5</sup> suprā galeam sēdit.<sup>6</sup> Mox, ubi proelium commiserunt,<sup>7</sup> alis<sup>8</sup> et unguibus<sup>9</sup> ōs oculōsque Gallī verberāvit.<sup>10</sup> Ita avis nōn victōriam solum sed etiam nōmen Rōmānō dedit.

<sup>1</sup> a certain one.    <sup>2</sup> challenge.    <sup>3</sup> himself.    <sup>4</sup> Perf. of **offerō**, offer, present.  
<sup>5</sup> raven, crow.    <sup>6</sup> **sedeō**, sit.    <sup>7</sup> join battle.  
<sup>8</sup> **ala**, wing.    <sup>9</sup> **unguis**, nail, claw.    <sup>10</sup> beat.

LESSON XXXII

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

1. Adjectives ending in . . . add -rimus (not -issimus) to form the Superlative.

The Comparative drops or retains the *e* before *r*, according to the actual stem; thus, *ācr-*, *ācrior*; but *celer-*, *celerior*.

<i>pulchr</i>	<i>pulchr ior</i>	<i>pulcher rimus</i>
<i>liber (free)</i>	<i>liber ior</i>	<i>liber rimus</i>
<i>ācer</i>	<i>ācr ior</i>	<i>ācer rimus</i>
<i>celer</i>	<i>celer ior</i>	<i>celer rimus</i>
<i>sacer</i>	(no Comparative)	<i>sacer rimus</i>

*vetus* (stem *veter-*) really belongs here:—

<i>vetus</i>	(no Comparative)	<i>veter rimus</i>
--------------	------------------	--------------------

Compare *asger*, *miser*, *asper*, *pauper*, *crāber* (*frequent, numerous*).

2. The following six adjectives in -ilis add -limus (not -issimus) to form the Superlative:—

<i>facilis, easy</i>	<i>facil ior</i>	<i>facil limus</i>
<i>difficilis, difficult</i>	<i>difficil ior</i>	<i>difficil limus</i>
<i>similis, like</i>	<i>simil ior</i>	<i>simil limus</i>
<i>dissimilis, unlike</i>	<i>dissimil ior</i>	<i>dissimil limus</i>
<i>gracilis, slender</i>	<i>gracil ior</i>	<i>gracil limus</i>
<i>humus, low</i>	<i>humil ior</i>	<i>humil limus</i>

Contrast with these *ūtilis*, *ūtilior*, *ūtilissimus*.

3. Adjectives ending in -dicus, -ficus, -vōlus (from *dicō, say*; *faciō, make, do*; *volō, wish*), base the Comparative and Superlative on the stem of the present

EDUCATION DEPARTMENT  
REGISTRAR'S OFFICE.



IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES 101

participle ending *-dicēns, -ficēns, -volēns*; stem, *-dicent, -ficent, -volent*: —

<i>maledicus, slanderous</i>	maledicentior	maledicentissimus
<i>māgnificus, magnificent</i>	māgnificentior	māgnificentissimus
<i>benevolus, kindly</i>	benevolentior	benevolentissimus

4. The comparison of the following is mixed and quite irregular: —

<i>bōnus, good</i>	mellior	optimus
<i>mālus, bad</i>	pējor	pessimus
<i>māgnus, large</i>	mājor	māximus
<i>parvus, small, little</i>	mīnor, smaller, less	minimus, smallest, least
<i>multus, much, plur., many</i>	plūs	plūrimus
<i>dives, rich</i>	divitior (prose) ditior (poetry)	divitiissimus (prose) ditiissimus (poetry)

*plūs* in the singular is a neuter substantive: —

*plūs virtūtis, more (of) valor.*

but *plūrēs cōpiāe, more forces (plūrēs an adj.).*

EXERCISES

- A. 1. Miles ācrior; corvus veterrimus.
2. Iter est facilius; rēs est facillima.
3. In meliōre nāvī; optimōrum cīvium jūra.
4. Māxima tempestās nāvēs adflicāvit.
5. Puer patrī simillimus erat.
6. Domus est templō multis partibus minor.
7. Vicīnus nōn est divitior amicō meō.
8. Nāvēs quam plūrimās aedificant.
9. Difficillimum est mare hieme nāvigāre.
10. Pulverem mājōrem vidēruut.

102 IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

- B. 1. To the most beautiful of all the girls; to a more beautiful girl.
2. The easiest of the roads was near the sea.
3. By an easier road; the road is rather easy.
4. We live in a very free state.
5. The ships were very low; as low as possible.
6. Keener winters; in the keenest winter; in the most frequent places.
7. The children are very like their parents.
8. The books are most useful.
9. In a larger camp; into a smaller temple; in smaller house.
10. The boys are not better than their fathers.
11. They praise Jupiter, the greatest and best of the gods.
12. The gods are kindly to men; of a more kindly mind.
13. On a more beautiful day; by a swifter march (*celer*).
14. On a very old (*vetus*) tree; on behalf of a better citizen.
15. More (of) praise; with more forces; of more forces; more seas.

LESSON XXXIII

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

(Continued)

Defective Comparison

The following irregularities in the comparison of adjectives occur:—

1. Lacking the Positive.

( <i>prae</i> , in front of)	<i>prior</i> , former, previous, first of two	<i>primus</i> , first, foremost
( <i>citrā</i> , this side of)	<i>citerior</i> , nearer	<i>citimus</i> , nearest

( <i>intrā</i> , within)	<i>interior</i> , inner	<i>intimus</i> , inmost
( <i>prōpe</i> , near)	<i>prōpior</i> , nearer	<i>proximus</i> , nearest, next
( <i>ūltrā</i> , beyond)	<i>ūterior</i> , farther	<i>ūltimus</i> , farthest, last

(For Reference)

The following have the positive only in special cases (note also the double superlatives):—

<i>posterō diē</i> , <i>annō</i> , etc., on the fol- lowing day, etc.	<i>posterior</i> , later	<i>postremus</i> , latest, last
<i>posterī</i> , - <i>ōrum</i> , de- scendants		<i>postumus</i> , late-born, posthumous
<i>exterī</i> , foreigners, "outlanders"	<i>exterior</i> , outer	<i>extrēmus</i> } outermost, <i>extimus</i> } last
<i>nātiōnēs exterae</i> , foreign nations		
<i>īferī</i> , gods of the lower world ( <i>in- frā</i> , below)	<i>inferior</i> , lower <i>ab inferiōre parte</i> , on the lower side	<i>īntimus</i> } lowest <i>īmus</i> } <i>imus mōns</i> , foot of the mountain
<i>Mare īferum</i> , Low- er Sea, Mediter- ranean		
<i>Superī</i> , the gods above	<i>superior</i> , (1) higher, (2) previous	<i>suprēmus</i> , last <i>summus</i> , highest, up- permost, utmost <i>summus mōns</i> , top of the mountain.
<i>Mare Superum</i> , Up- per Sea, Adriatic		

*superior aestās*, the previous summer.

*superiōra loca*, heights.

*-ummus imperātor*, consummate commander.

104 IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

2. Lacking the Comparative.

<i>novus, new</i>	— <sup>1</sup>	<i>novissimus, last, latest</i>
<i>sacer, sacred</i>	—	<i>sacerrimus</i>
<i>vetus, old</i>	— <sup>2</sup>	<i>veterrimus</i>

*agmen novissimum, the rear of the column.*

*primum agmen, the van, vanguard.*

*novissimī, those at the rear.*

*but ā tergō, behind one's back.*

3. Lacking the Superlative.

<i>ingēns, immense</i>	<i>ingentior</i>	<i>nātū minimus,</i>
<i>juvenis, young</i>	<i>jūnior,</i>	<i>youngest (= "least by birth")</i>
<i>senex, old</i>	<i>senior,</i>	<i>nātū māximus,</i>
		<i>oldest (= "greatest by birth")</i>

*nātū mājor sometimes = eenor.*

*mājōrēs, ancestors (literally "elders").*

Adverbial Comparison

Adjectives which end in *-us*, preceded by a vowel, are compared by the adverbs *magis, more*, and *māximē, most*, as: —

<i>idōneus, suitable</i>	<i>magis idōneus</i>	<i>māximē idōneus</i>
--------------------------	----------------------	-----------------------

Similarly

*arduus, steep; dubius, doubtful; strēnuus, active.*

Adjectives in *-quus* are only an apparent exception, *-qu* being equal in sound to *kw*, and the *u* consequently being in value a consonant.

<i>antiquus, ancient,</i>	<i>antiquior,</i>	<i>antiquissimus.</i>
<i>iniquus, unequal,</i>	<i>iniquior,</i>	<i>iniquissimus.</i>
<i>unfavorable.</i>		

<sup>1</sup> *Newer, recentior; newest, recentissimus.*

<sup>2</sup> Supplied by *vstustior*.

EXERCISE

- A. 1. Priore diē ; primā lūce.  
 2. In summō monte ; ad inum collem.  
 3. Puer summae industriae.  
 4. Ad inferiorem partem insulae vēnērunt.  
 5. Herculē ; ad Inferōs dēscendit.  
 6. Castra locō māximē idōneō posuit.  
 7. Locum nostris iniquissimum dēlēgērunt.  
 8. Seniores priores.  
 9. Ex ūltimis terrae oris ; in ceteriorem Galliam.  
 10. Multa bella mājores nostri gessērunt.  
 11. In ūlteriore flūminis ripā hostēs vidērunt.  
 12. Belgae sunt Germānis proximī.
- B. 1. On the following day ; on the heights.  
 2. In hither Gaul ; into farther Gaul.  
 3. In the previous year ; in early spring (*primus*).  
 4. On the top of a mound ; to the foot of a tree.  
 5. We owe much to our ancestors.  
 6. Out of a more doubtful contest.  
 7. Several from the rear withdrew.  
 8. The enemy made an attack upon the van.  
 9. He chose a place more suitable for a camp.  
 10. On the tops of the hills ; to the foot of the mountain  
 11. He drew up a triple line on the farther bank.

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISE

ON COMPARISON

1. He fought in the front rank (*prima acies*).  
 2. He chose the youngest of the boys.  
 3. In the van ; from the van.  
 4. Into a colder river ; by a swifter (*velox*) wind.  
 5. Of the wisest citizens.

106 IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

6. The oldest are not always the best.
7. They will send a better army.
8. Juniors first; seniors later.
9. He left his books to posterity.
10. They occupied the heights with a very large band  
(*manus*).
11. By a fiercer (*ācer*) attack.
12. He sent the swiftest ships.
13. On the shortest day of the year.
14. Five years older.
15. They will send as many as possible.
16. A worse disaster (Acc.); a fiercer battle.
17. He wrote the most useful books.
18. By the most difficult route.
19. In very numerous (*crēber*) places.
20. The judge is wiser than the king. (Give two  
versions.)
21. Down from a higher tower.
22. Concerning a better plan.
23. He gave more money to the poorest of his neighbors.
24. They opened more roads; collected more forces.

**New Words**

*Leave, choose, contest, triple line, bank, owe, plan.*



LITUUS

Lituus equitēs ad proelium vocat.



MINERVA

(Greek, ATHĒNĒ)

Minerva ex capite Jovis armāta exsiluisse dicitur. Dea belli et eārum artium fuit quārum mulierēs peritae sunt. Fēminās texere, virōs māximā cum arte bellāre docuit. Haec dea innūpta erat.

Clipeum manū sinistrā tenet. Caput galeā tegitur. Pallas interdum appellātur. Palladium, ejus simulācrum, de caelō cecidisse dicēbātur. In templō deae ā Trōjānis positum est.

## LESSON XXXIV

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND  
DECLENSIONSGen. in *-ius*; Dat. in *-i*

Review the declension of *bonus* (page 36). Compare the following declension of *unus* and note the irregularities: —

*Ūnus, one, alone*

	SINGULAR		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ŭn ūs	ŭn a	ŭn um
<i>Gen.</i>	ŭn ius	un ius	ŭn ius
<i>Dat.</i>	ŭn i	ŭn i	ŭn i
<i>Acc.</i>	ŭn um	ŭn am	ŭn um
<i>Voc.</i>		(lacking)	
<i>Abl.</i>	ŭn ō	ŭn ā	ŭn ō
		PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i>	ŭn I	ŭn ae	ŭn a
		(Like <i>bonus</i> )	

Note the following variations: —

*Nom.* *alius, alia, aliud, another, other*  
*Gen.* *alius*  
*Dat.* *alī*  
*Acc.* *alium, aliam, aliud*  
 etc. etc. etc.

*Nom.* *alter, altera, alterum, the one of two, the other*  
*Gen.* *alterius*  
*Dat.* *alteri*  
 etc. etc. etc.



In this manner are declined : —

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <b>alius</b> , alia, aliud, <i>other</i> .          | 6. <b>ūnus</b> , -a, -um, <i>one, alone</i> .                              |
| 2. <b>sōlus</b> , -a, -um, <i>alone</i> .              | 7. <b>alter</b> , altera, alterum, <i>the one, the other, the second</i> . |
| 3. <b>tōtus</b> , -a, -um, <i>whole</i> .              | 8. <b>uter</b> , utra, utrum, <i>which of the two?</i>                     |
| 4. <b>ūllus</b> (= ūn. ulus), -a, -um, <i>any</i> .    | 9. <b>neuter</b> , neutra, neutrum, <i>neither</i> .                       |
| 5. <b>nūllus</b> (n ūllus), -a, -um, <i>no, none</i> . |  |

(Note that **alterius** is the only Genitive of this class that has i short.)

{ <b>alius</b> . . .	<b>alius</b> ,	<i>one</i> . . .	<i>another</i> .
{ <b>alii</b> (pl.) . . .	<b>alii</b> (pl.),	<i>some</i> . . .	<i>others</i> .
{ <b>alter</b> . . .	<b>alter</b> ,	<i>the one</i> . . .	<i>the other</i> .
{ <b>alteri</b> (pl.) . . .	<b>alteri</b> (pl.),	<i>the one party</i> . . .	<i>the other party</i> .

**Ūnus** is used for *one* in contrasting numbers, *one, two, three, etc.*; **alter** contrasts the *members of a pair*.

In a series, *first, second, third, etc.*, **alter** = *second*.

**uterque, utraque, utrumque**, *each of two, both*.

**uterque cōsul** (not plur.), *both consuls*.

**utrique** (plur.), *both parties or groups*.

**Nēmō** (Acc. *nēminem*), pronoun, = *no one*, never employs the Gen. *nēminis* or Abl. *nēminē*. Instead, the adj. forms **nūllus, nūllō**, are used.

EXERCISE

- A. 1. **Ūnī** puerō librum dedit. **Utrī** dedit?  
 2. **Militēs ūnīus** cohortis mīsit.  
 3. **Aliud** bellum gessit.  
 4. **Aliī** puerō librōs dedit magister.  
 5. **Alius** insulae; **alterius** lateris; **alterī** virō.  
 6. **Tōtīus** Galliae eīvitātēs vicit.  
 7. **Aliī** puellae rosam dat, **aliī** eorōnam, **aliī** librum.  
 8. **Alterī** rosās, **alterī** librōs dāmus.  
 9. **Utrius** cōsulis exercitum Hannibal vicit?  
 10. **Utriusque** exercitūs militēs superāvit.

11. Et exercitum et classem miserunt.<sup>1</sup>
12. Unō tempore ē nāvibus dēsiliēbant et in fluctibus cōsistēbant et in hostēs signa ferēbant.
13. Gallī et Rōmānī in ripīs flūminis erant; utrique fortiter pugnābant; alterī eqvīs, alterī pedibus rem gerēbant.
14. In urbem vēnerunt neque ūllam rem miram vidērunt.

<sup>1</sup> Note the difference between the pronominal adj. *uterque*, *both*, and the conjunction *et*, *both*.

- B.
1. With one legion; of the other legion; a defence for the whole island.
  2. They built another temple in the forum.
  3. He gave one boy three books.
  4. One boy's book was black, another's red, another's white.
  5. To one hoy he gave a sword, to the other a beautiful shield.
  6. One side was long, the other short.
  7. Both boys love books (say "each boy").
  8. Both the boys and the girls were playing in the field; the former (= *the one group*, pl.) with swords, the latter (= *the others*) with flowers.
  9. Cicero and Demosthenes were most famous orators; the one a Roman, the other a Greek.
  10. I shall give a flower to neither girl.

Observe this use of *alius*:—

*Alius aliud dixit*, One said one thing, another another (lit., "a different person said a different thing"). *Alius ex aliā nāvī*, one from one ship, another from another.

Translate:—

1. He sent one envoy into one city, another into another.
2. Different soldiers came from different towns.

## LESSON XXXV

## FORMATION OF ADVERBS

1. From adjectives of the **First** and **Second Declensions**, adverbs are usually formed by the **suffix -ē**, as: —

altus, <i>deep</i>	altē, <i>deeply</i>
aeger, <i>ill, feeble</i>	aegrē, <i>feebly, scarcely, with difficulty</i>
liber, <i>free</i>	liberē, <i>freely</i>

2. From adjectives of the **Third Declension**, adverbs are usually formed by the **suffix -ter**, as: —

brevis, <i>brief</i>	breviter, <i>briefly</i>
audāx, <i>bold</i>	audācter, <i>boldly</i>
fēlix, <i>fortunate</i>	fēliciter, <i>fortunately</i>
ācer, <i>sharp, fierce</i>	ācriter, <i>sharply, fiercely</i>
prūdēns, <i>prudent</i>	prūdentē, <i>prudently</i>

(Notice the dropping of the **ti** of the stem in **prūdentē** and of **i** in **audācter**.)

## EXERCISE

Form adverbs from the following adjectives: —

1. longus, gravis, fortis, lātus, vēlōx (like fēlix), sapiēns, diligēns.
2. pulcher, celer, miser, crēber.

## IRREGULAR ADVERBS

3. Some adverbs are formed from a case of the adjective, as follows: —

From the **Neuter Accusative**: —

(1) multum, <i>much</i> .	parum (= parvum), <i>too little</i> .
tantum, <i>only</i> .	plūrimum, <i>very much</i> .
sōlum, <i>only</i> .	facilē, <i>easily</i> .

- (2) **Comparative Adverbs**, as **facilius**, *more easily*; **plūs**, *more*.

From the **Ablative** : —

*tūtō, safely.*

*brevi (tempore), in a short time.*

*subitō, suddenly.*

*multō, (by) much, with comparatives.*

*vērō, true, but.*

4. A few adjectives of the First and Second Declensions form adverbs in **-ter**, as : —

*firmus, firmiter, firmly.*

*alius, aliter, otherwise, differently.*

5. Some adverbs end in **-im** ; a few in **-tus**, as : —

*statim and cōnfestim, immediately.*

*passim, everywhere.*

*paulātim, gradually.*

*ōlim, once upon a time.*

*partim, partly.*

*divinitus, by divine interposition.*

*antiquitus, anciently.*

6. The following are quite irregular : —

*bēnē, well (bonus).*

*diū, long (of time).*

*mālē, badly, ill (mālus).*

*saepe, often.*

*eatis, enough.*

*semper, always.*

*māgnopere, greatly (māgnus).*

*prope, near.*

*modō, only, just.*

*vix, scarcely.*

*nimis, too much.*

7. Many adverbs of place are formed from pronominal stems : —

*hic, here.*

*ibi, there.*

*ubi, where.*

*hūc, hither.*

*eō, thither.*

*quō, whither.*

*hinc, hence.*

*inde, thence.*

*unde, whence.*

### THE COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

1. The **Comparative Adverb** is formed from the **Accus. Sing. Neut.** of the **Comparative Adjective**.
2. The **Superlative Adverb** is formed by the **suffix -ē** from the stem of the **Superlative Adjective**, according to

the rule for Adverbs from Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions: —

a'tē	altius	altissimē
fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
ācritēr	ācrius	ācerrimē
celeriter	celerius	celerrimē

Similarly compare adverbs from *aeger*, *liber*, *pulcher*, *lātus*, *longus*, *miser*, *brevis*, *audāx*, *fēlix*, *prūdēns*, *eapiēns*, *gravis*, *vēlōx*.

The following are compared irregularly: —

bēnē, well	melius, better	optimē, best
mālē, badly, ill	pējore, worse	peessimē, worst
māgnopere, greatly	magis, more	māximē, most, chiefly, specially
parum, too little	minus, less	minimē, least, by no means
diū, long	diūtius	diūtissime
saepe, often	saepius	saepissime
prope, near	propius	proximē, next, last, most recently

## EXERCISE

- A. 1. A happy life (*beātus*); he lives happily; more happily.  
 2. They fight fiercely (*ācer*); more fiercely; most fiercely.  
 3. Bravely, braver, more bravely.  
 4. Easily, easier, more easily, most easily.  
 5. Quickly (*celer*), quicker, more quickly, as quickly as possible.  
 6. Beautifully, freely, heavily, wretchedly, wisely.  
 7. A better boy; he writes better.  
 8. He is the worst boy, but runs the fastest.

9. The road is longer; he remained longer in Gaul; he drove the enemy farther.
10. He inquired as carefully as possible.

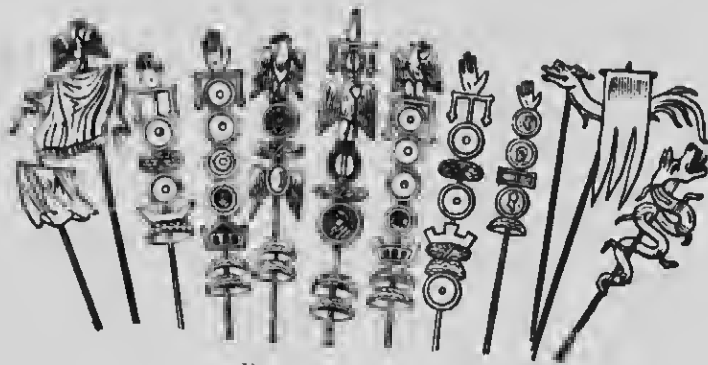
- B.*
1. Ignāviam tuam graviter ferō.
  2. Longē lūtēque agrōs vāstant.
  3. Lātius errābant.
  4. Iter satis longum est; virēs meae parum validae sunt.
  5. Diū et āeriter pugnant utriūque.
  6. Melius serībit quī (*who*) bene legit.
  7. Māgnopere Caesarem ōrant.
  8. Vehementer militēs culpat.
  9. Fortiter in rē, suāviter in modō.
  10. Militēs decimae legiōnis māximē laudat.
  11. Quam celerrimē nāvēs aedificant.
  12. Impetum hostium nōn diūtius sustinnērant.



VEXILLUM

Vēxillum suprā tabernāculum ducis positum sīgnum militibus ad proelium dat.

Aquila vel sīgnum eūjusque legiōnis ab aquiliferō in proeliō portātur.



ROMAN STANDARDS

## LESSON XXXVI

### NUMERALS

Numerals are classified as follows:—

1. Numeral adjectives:—

- a. *Cardinals*: **ūnus**, one; **duo**, two, etc.
- b. *Ordinals*: **primus**, first; **secundus**, second, etc.
- c. *Distributives*: **singulī**, one by one; **bini**, two apiece, two at a time, etc.

2. Numeral adverbs: **semel**, once; **bis**, twice, etc.

For beginners it will be sufficient to memorize the first ten of each class and the remainder of the *Cardinals* and *Ordinals*. The full table is given below for reference.

The pupil would do well to write down the *tens* and *hundreds* in parallel columns and memorize them in contrast, noting the following:—

PREVAILING ENDING  
OF TENS

-āgintā

-āgēsīmus

PREVAILING ENDING  
OF HUNDREDS

-īngenti

-īngentēsīmus

(-gent = -cent)

Note the exceptional endings in the list.

## TABLE OF NUMERALS

CARDINALS	ORDINALS	DISTRIBUTIVES	ADVERBS
1 ūnue, ūna, ūnum	primus, <i>first</i>	singulī, <i>one by one</i>	oemel, <i>once</i>
2 dno, duae, duo	secundus, <i>second</i>	binī, <i>two by two</i>	bie, <i>twice</i>
3 trēs, tria	tertius, <i>third</i>	ternī (trinī)	ter, <i>thrice</i>
4 quattuor	quārtus, <i>fourth</i>	quaternī	quater, <i>four times</i>
5 quinque	quintus	quinī	quinq̄uies <sup>1</sup>
6 sex	sextus	senī	sexies
7 septem	septimus	septēnī	septies
8 octō	octāvus	octōnī	octies
9 novem	nōnus	novēnī	novies
10 decem	decimus	dēnī	decies
11 ūndecim	ūndecimus	ūndēnī	ūndeciēs
12 duodecim	duodecimus	duodēnī	duodeciēs
13 tredecim	tertius decimus	ternī dēnī	terdecies
14 quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	quaternī dēnī	quater decies
15 quindecim	quintus decimus	quinī dēnī	quinq̄uies decies
16 sēdecim	sextus decimus	senī dēnī	sexies decies
17 septendecim	septimus decimus	septēnī dēnī	septies decies
18 duodēviginti	duodēvicēsimus	duodēvicēnī	octies decies
19 ūndēviginti	ūndēvicēsimus	ūndēvicēnī	novies decies
20 viginti	vicēsimus	vicēnī	vielēs
30 trigintā	tricēsimus	tricēnī	triciēs
40 quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus	quadrāgēnī	quadrāgiēs
50 quinquāgintā	quinq̄uāgēsimus	quinq̄uāgēnī	quinq̄uāglēs
60 sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus	sexāgēnī	sexāgiēs
70 septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus	septuāgēnī	septuāglēs
80 octōgintā	octōgēsimus	octōgēnī	octōgiēs
90 nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus	nōnāgēnī	nōnāgiēs
100 centum	centēsimus	centēnī	centiēs
200 ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus	ducēnī	ducentiēs
300 trecentī, -ae, -a	trecentēsimus	trecēnī	trecentiēs
400 quadringenti, -ae, -a	quadringentēsimus	quadringēnī	quadringentiēs
500 quingenti, -ae, -a	quingentēsimus	quingēnī	quingentiēs
600 sescentī, -ae, -a	sescentēsimus	sēscentēnī	sēscentiēs
700 septingenti, -ae, -a	septingentēsimus	septingēnī	septingentiēs
800 octingenti, -ae, -a	octingentēsimus	octingēnī	octingentiēs
900 nōngenti, -ae, -a	nōngentēsimus	nōngēnī	nōngentiēs
1000 mille	millēsimus	singula millia	millēs
2000 duo millia	bis millēsimus	binā millia	bis millēs
3000 tria millia			

<sup>1</sup> The forms quinq̄uies, sexies, etc., are used as well as those ending in -ies.



1. *Twenty-one* { *vīginti ūnus*, or  
                   { *ūnus et vīginti*.

Similarly *22, 23, etc.*; *31, 32, 33, etc.*

- Twenty-first* { *vicēsīmus primus*, or  
                   { *primus et vicēsīmus*.

Similarly the other compound ordinals.

2. Up to 90, the numbers 28, 29, etc., are often expressed by subtraction, thus:—

*vīginti octō* = *duodētrīgintā*  
*vīginti novem* = *ūndētrīgintā*  
*octōdecim* (18) occurs as well as *duodēvīginti*.

3. In compound numbers over 100, the largest number is usually put first, the rest following without *et*, as *centum trīgintā sex*, *one hundred and thirty-six*.  
*annō millēsīmō nōngentēsīmō tertīō*, *in the nineteen hundred and third year*.

Yet *et* may be inserted before a *ten* or a *digit*:—  
*centum et octō* or *centum octō*, *one hundred and eight*.  
*ducenti et quadrāgintā* or *ducenti quadrāgintā*, *two hundred and forty*.

4. Ordinals are declined like *bonus*, as *primus*, -a, -um.

#### DECLENSION OF CARDINALS

5. For the declension of *ūnus* see page 108.

6. *Duo* is declined as follows:—

	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>duae</i>	<i>duo</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>duōrum</i>	<i>duārum</i>	<i>duōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>duōs, duo</i>	<i>duās</i>	<i>duo</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>duōbns</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>

7. **Trēs** is declined as follows:—

	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	trēs	tria
<i>Gen.</i>	trium	trium
<i>Dat.</i>	tribus	tribus
<i>Acc.</i>	trēs	tria
<i>Abl.</i>	tribus	tribus

8. All the simple cardinals from 4 to 100 are indeclinable.

9. The hundreds (except **centum**) are declined like the plural of **bonus**.

10. **Mille** is regularly an adjective in the singular (meaning **one thousand**), and is indeclinable.

In the plural, **millia** (*thousands*) is a neuter substantive, governing the **Partitive Genitive**,<sup>1</sup> and is declined.

Compare the following:—

	1000 SOLDIERS		3000 SOLDIERS
<i>Nom.</i>	mille militēs	tria	millia militum
<i>Gen.</i>	mille militum	trium	millium militum
<i>Dat.</i>	mille militibus	tribus	millibus militum
<i>Acc.</i>	mille militēs	tria	millia militum
<i>Voc.</i>	mille militēs	tria	millia militum
<i>Abl.</i>	mille militibus	tribus	millibus militum

mille passūs, a thousand paces = 1 mile = quinque millia pedum.

(A Roman pace was two steps, or the ground covered by the motion of one foot, 5 Roman feet or 4.842 Eng. feet. Thus a Roman mile =  $\frac{5}{2}$  or about  $\frac{1}{2}$  of an Eng. mile.)

duo millia passuum, two thousand paces = 2 miles.

tria millia passuum, three miles.

quingenti passūs, 500 paces, half a mile.

quingenta millia passuum, 500 miles.

<sup>1</sup> **Partitive Genitive** = Genitive denoting the whole, of which a part is considered, as duo millia militum = two thousands of all possible soldiers.

mille militēs, 1000 soldiers.

tria millia militum, 3000 soldiers.

trecentōs militēs occidērunt, they killed 300 soldiers.

## DISTRIBUTIVES

The **Distributives**, in addition to their ordinary use (*so many at a time*), are used to denote a number multiplied; also with nouns plural in form but singular in meaning.

In the latter case *ūnī* and *trīnī* are used instead of *singuli* and *terni*:—

*trīna castra* = three camps.

*ūnās litterās* = one letter.

*bis centēna millia* = 200,000.

## TIME AND EXTENT OF SPACE

1. Time "*when*" and "*within which*" are expressed by the **Ablative** without a preposition.

*decimō annō*, in the tenth year.

*decem annis*, in (within) ten years.

2. Time "*how long*" (duration of time) is expressed by the **Accusative of Extent**.

*decem annōs bellum gerēbant*, they fought ten years.

3. Distance "*how far*" is expressed by the **Accusative of Extent**.

*arbor trēs pedēs alta*, a tree three feet high.

4. Place "*where*" or "*in which*" is usually denoted by the preposition **in** and the Ablative.

*in urbe*, in the city (place),

but *aestāte*, in the summer (time).

(For the Locative in names of towns, etc., see page 85.)

5. For the **Ablative of Difference** see page 99.
6. Time "*by which*" is expressed by **ad** and the Accusative, as:—
- Ad diem decimam convenient,** *They will assemble by the tenth day.*
7. A date "*for which*" an appointment is made is expressed by **in** and the Accusative. See example 16 below.

## EXERCISE

- A. 1. Ūnūs librī; trium librōrum; cum nāvibus vīgintī duābus.
2. Legiōnēs decem; legiōnis decimae cohortēs quīnque.
3. Obsidēs ad diem quīntam addūxērunt; diē quīntō.
4. Diēbus quattuor Britannōs superāvit.
5. Mūrum tria mīllia passuum longum aedificāvit.
6. Arborem prō portā trēs pedēs altam posuit.
7. Decimō annō Trōjam expugnāvērunt.
8. Annōs decem pugnābant.
9. Puerī librōs binōs ad scholam portant.
10. Nāvēs ternae aut quaternae singulās circumveniēbant.
11. Bis bīna sunt quattuor.
12. Māter pucrum sexiēs vocāvit.
13. Septuāgintā; septingentī; sēscentī; sexāgintā; sēdecim.
14. Rōmulus Rōmam annō ante Christum septingentēsimō quīnquāgēsimō tertiō condidit.
15. Militēs circiter octōgintā dūxit.
16. Concilium in diem tertiam convocāvit.

- B. 1. Three feet; 3000 feet; 1000 feet; 1 mile; 5 miles; half a mile.
2. On the eighth day; in the third summer; for three summers.
3. The boy is three years older.
4. He sent five cohorts of the tenth legion.
5. They leaped down five at a time.
6. He gave the boys three books each.
7. Caesar stationed his soldiers in three camps.
8. They made an attack three or four times.
9. Across three rivers.
10. In about twenty-two towns.
11. 40, 400; 50, 500; 8, 18, 78, 800.
12. With 332 horsemen.
13. In the year of our Lord 1903. (Use ordinals.)

## THE SIBYLLINE BOOKS

Anus<sup>1</sup> quaedam<sup>2</sup> incognita ad Tarquinium rēgem vēnit novem librōs manibus ferēns.<sup>3</sup> Hōs<sup>4</sup> esse<sup>5</sup> dīcēbat dīvina ōrācula. Tarquinius pretium interrogāvit. Mulier nimium poposcit.<sup>6</sup> Rēx irrīsīt.<sup>7</sup>

Tum mulier trēs librōs ex novem ūrit<sup>8</sup> et reliquōs sex eōdem<sup>9</sup> pretiō rēgī vēndere volēbat. Sed Tarquinius id<sup>10</sup> multō magis rīsīt.<sup>11</sup> Mulier deinde trēs aliōs exūssit<sup>12</sup> atque rūsus idem pretium rogāvit. Quamquam trēs modo<sup>13</sup> jam reliquī erant, rēx tantā cōstantiā victus, ēmit.<sup>14</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *anus, -ūs, f., old woman.*

<sup>2</sup> *a certain.*

<sup>3</sup> *Pres. Part. of ferō.*

<sup>4</sup> *Acc. Pl. of Pron. hic, this.*

<sup>5</sup> *Inf. of sum, = to be. (Use an Eng. id'om.)*

<sup>6</sup> *Perf. of poscō.*

<sup>7</sup> *irrideō, laugh (at).*

<sup>8</sup> *ūrō, -ere, ūssi, burn.*

<sup>9</sup> *Abl. of idem, same; Abl. of Price.*

<sup>10</sup> *Acc. Neut. of is, Pron. it, that.*

<sup>11</sup> *rideō.*

<sup>12</sup> *exūrō.*

<sup>13</sup> *Adv., only.*

<sup>14</sup> *Perf. of emō, buy.*



VENUS

(Greek, APHRODITĒ)

(A photograph of the famous mutilated statue, Venus of Milo)

Vēnus dea amōris et pulchritūdinis fuit, Jovis et Diōnae filia. Aphrodītē ā Graecis appellābātur quod ex spūmā maris orta esse crēdebātur. Fīlius ejus, Cupidō, pectora mortālium sagittis amōris trāiciēbat. Venerī Paris mālum aureum dedit quod sē ei fōrmōsissimam in terris mulierem Helenam in mātrimonium datūram pollicita erat. Ita Venus Trōjāni bellī causa fuit. Māter Aenēae esse dicēbātur.

## LESSON XXXVII

## Sum, I am

Principal Parts: **sum, esse, fui**  
 Pres. Stem **es-**; Perf. Stem **fu-**

## INDICATIVE

SINGULAR		PRESENT	PLURAL
su <b>m</b> , <i>I am</i>			su <b>mus</b> , <i>we are</i>
e <b>s</b> , <i>thou art</i>			es <b>tis</b> , <i>you (ye) are</i>
es <b>t</b> , <i>he is</i>			su <b>nt</b> , <i>they are</i>
<b>IMPERFECT</b>			
era <b>m</b> , <i>I was</i> (a continued state)		erā <b>mus</b> , <i>we were</i>	
erā <b>s</b> , <i>thou wast</i>		erā <b>tis</b> , <i>you (ye) were</i>	
era <b>t</b> , <i>he was</i>		era <b>nt</b> , <i>they were</i>	
<b>FUTURE</b>			
er <b>ō</b> , <i>I shall be</i>		eri <b>mus</b> , <i>we shall be</i>	
eri <b>s</b> , <i>thou wilt be</i>		eri <b>tis</b> , <i>you (ye) will be</i>	
eri <b>t</b> , <i>he will be</i>		eru <b>nt</b> , <i>they will be</i>	
<b>PERFECT</b>			
fu <b>i</b> , (1) <i>I have been</i> ; (2) <i>I</i>		fu <b>imus</b>	
fu <b>isti</b> <i>was</i> (a completed		fu <b>istis</b>	
fu <b>it</b> <i>state)</i>		fu <b>erunt</b> (-ēre)	
<b>PLUPERFECT</b>			
fu <b>eram</b> , <i>I had been</i>		fu <b>erāmus</b>	
fu <b>erās</b>		fu <b>erātis</b>	
fu <b>erat</b>		fu <b>erant</b>	
<b>FUTURE PERFECT</b>			
fu <b>erō</b> , <i>I shall have been</i>		fu <b>erimus</b>	
fu <b>eris</b>		fu <b>eritis</b>	
fu <b>erit</b>		fu <b>erint</b>	

Observe (1) that **sum** = *esum*; **sumus** = *esumus*; **sunt** = *esunt*; (2) that **s** of the stem changes to **r** between vowels, as **eram** = *esam*, etc.

## COMPOUNDS OF Sum

**absum**, *I am distant, absent.***absum, abesse, abfui.****prōsum**, *I am serviceable.***prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui.**

## INDICATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	ab-sum	ab-sumus	prō-sum	prō-sumus
	ab-es	ab-estis	prōd-es	prōd-estis
	ab-est	ab-sunt	prōd-est	prō-sunt
<i>Imperf.</i>	ab-eram		prōd-eram	
<i>Fut.</i>	ab-erō		prōd-erō	
<i>Perf.</i>	ab-fui		prō-fui	
<i>Plpf.</i>	ab-fueram		prō-fueram	
<i>Fut. Pf.</i>	ab-fuerō		prō-fuerō	

Note that **prōsum** inserts **d** before a vowel.

Similar to **absum** are : —

**ad-sum**, ad-esse, ad-fui, *I am present.*

**dē-sum**, dē-esse, dē-fui, *I am lacking.*

**prae-sum**, prae-esse, prae-fui, *I am at the head of.*

## EXERCISE

- A. 1. Cīvēs liberī cīvītātis liberāe sumus.
2. Cūr, puer mī, aberās ā scholā herī?
3. Hostēs nōn longius quam duo millia passuum ā castrīs aberant.
4. Fortēs, puerī, estis; patrēs quōque vestrī fortēs erant.
5. Fuimus Trōēs; fuit Ilium et ingēns glōria Teucrūm (= Teucrōrum).

*Note the idea of completion.*

6. Rōma quondam orbis terrārum domina fuit.
7. Erant, erunt, fuerint, fuērunt, fuerant.
8. Et amicīs et cīvītātī prōdest.
9. Exercitūi et classī praeerit.



- B. 1. Why, soldier, are you not faithful to your country?  
 2. Good boys will always be diligent.  
 3. One thing was lacking to Caesar.  
 4. The end of life is close at hand (*adsum*).  
 5. Yesterday thou wert a slave; to-day thou art free; to-morrow thou wilt be owner (*dominus*) of wide estates (= fields).  
 6. We were (continuously); thou hast been; they have been; they will have been.

## LESSON XXXVIII

## DIRECT QUESTIONS

Direct Questions are of two kinds:—

I. Those introduced by interrogative pronouns, adjectives, or adverbs, such as:—

<i>quis, who?</i>	<i>quālis, -ē, of what kind?</i>
<i>cūr, why?</i>	<i>ubi, where?</i>
<i>quandō, when?</i>	<i>unde, whence?</i>
<i>quantus, -a, -um, how large?</i>	<i>quō, whither?</i>
<i>quot (indeclinable), how many?</i>	<i>quōmodō, how?</i>

These cannot be answered by **Yes** or **No**.

II. Those which in English have no interrogative sign-word, but which are indicated almost entirely by the inverted order of the sentence. These must be answered by **Yes** or **No**. For example:—

ASSERTION	QUESTION
<i>The boy is good.</i>	<i>Is the boy good?</i>
<i>He goes to school</i>	<i>Does he go to school?</i>
(= <i>He does go, etc.</i> )	

These questions may have three different values, as follows:—

1. They may be asked **merely for information.**

In Latin these are indicated by the **enclitic**<sup>1</sup> **-nē** added to some important word at the beginning of the sentence, as: —

**Bonusne est puer?** Is the boy good (or bad)?

**Estne puer bonus?** Is the boy good (or was he)?

**Puerne est bonus?** Is the boy good (or is the girl)?

Compare with **Quis est bonus?** *Who is good?* (no enclitic).

2. They may suggest the answer "**Yes**": —

**Nōne puer est bonus,** *Is not the boy good?*

(*The boy is surely good, is he not?*)

(Notice that the presence of *not* indicates that "**Yes**" is expected. *Not?* = **nōne?**)

3. They may suggest the answer "**No**": —

**Num puer est malus?** *Is the boy bad?* (uttered with strong tone of surprise or protest) = "*Surely the boy is not bad, is he?*"

4. **Yes** and **No** are usually expressed by repeating the important part of the question in the form of a statement, as **Puerumne vidisti?** **Vidī,** *Yes*; or **Nōn vidī,** *No.*

**Valdē,** *certainly*; **Minimē,** *by no means.*

#### EXERCISE

- A. 1. **Cūr** Canadam amāmus? Quod patria nostra est.  
 2. **Quis** colit agrōs? Agricola.  
 3. **Ubi** sunt agricolae? In agrīs.  
 4. **Amāsne,** puer, patriam tuam? Amō.  
 5. **Num** nauta agrōs colit? Nōn nauta sed agricola.  
 6. **Nōne** est Britannia patria nautārum? **Valdē,** patria nautārum est.

<sup>1</sup> **Enclitic**, a word added as an extra syllable to a previous word, as **estne?** *terrā marique*; **pāx bellumve.**

7. Num magister puerōs malōs amat? Minimē.  
Malōs castigat neque laudat.
  8. Quō, puer, librōs portās? Ad scholam, magister.
  9. Erāsne in scholā herī, puercule? Eram.
  10. Unde ad Britanniam Caesar nāvigāvit? Ā  
Galliā.
  11. Unde agricolae frūmentum comportābunt? Ex  
agrīs.
  12. Quanta est Britannia? Nōne est parva insula?  
Hibernia nōn est tanta.
  13. Quālēs erant Britannī antiquī? Num ignāvi  
infirmīque erant? Minimē. Fortēs erant  
atque validissimi. Tālēsne, puerī, eritis?
  14. Nōne parentēs amāmus?
  15. Galline Caesarem timēbant?
  16. Quot militēs? Quantae insulae? Tot librī;  
tantae insulae.
- B.*
1. Whence do we get (*parō*) food? From the earth.
  2. Was Caesar a very brave leader?
  3. Did not Caesar conquer Gaul?
  4. Hannibal did not conquer the Romans, did he?
  5. How large are the apple-trees? Are they not very  
small?
  6. How many trees are there in the garden?
  7. Whither are they carrying ropes and other tackle?
  8. Does a brave sailor fear the sea? By no means.
  9. When do the farmers plough their fields? In win-  
ter? No, either in spring or in autumn.
  10. How did the Romans fortify a camp? By rampart  
and trench.
  11. Boys, have you finished your lessons (*pēnsūm*)? Cer-  
tainly, Sir. Will you not now let us out (*dīmittō*)  
to play? (Not infinitive. Use *ad* with a noun.)

## LESSON XXXIX

## REVIEW EXERCISE ON VERBS (ACTIVE INDICATIVE)

- A. 1. Timet, mittet, nūntiat, mūnit, mūniet.  
 2. Veniēbat, veniet, portābat, portābit.  
 3. Habent, aedificant, scribunt, veniunt.  
 4. Vincet, vincit, vicit, vincunt, vicērunt.  
 5. Nōne vicistī? Cūr nōn vicerat?  
 6. Num vincēs, sī ignāvus eris?  
 7. Scripsitne puer ad mātrem litterās?  
 8. Pellit, pellet, pellunt, pellent, pepulit.  
 9. Pellēbant, nāvigābant, mūniēbant.  
 10. Vocās, dēlēs, mittīs, audīs, dūcīs, vēnīs.  
 11. Vocātis, dēlētis, mittītis, audītis, dūcītis.  
 12. Vēnītis, vēnistis, veniunt, regunt.
- B. 1. Thou sendest, thou comest, they send, they come.  
 2. He will send, he will carry, he will fear, he will come.  
 3. You (*plur.*) hear, you (*plur.*) rule, we rule, we hear.  
 4. They hear, they will hear, they heard (continually),  
 they heard (once).  
 5. We are coming, we were coming, we shall come.  
 6. We send, we were sending, we shall send.  
 7. He sees, he will see, he saw (continuously), he saw  
 (once).

## REVIEW WORD LISTS

1. Porta, portus, unda, fluctus, frūmentum, frūctus, cōn-  
spectus, domus, manus, querous, cornū, genū, verū, arcus,  
lacus, exercitus.
2. Equus, eques, equitātus, Idūs, oīvis, oīvītās; pēs, pedes,  
peditātus; senātūs cōnsultum, conjūrātor.
3. Adflotō, oōgō, occidō, pandō, instruō, expugnō, dēpōnō.

4. Day, thing, hope, faith, appearance, line-of-battle, plain, mid-day, revolution, achievement, property, military science, commonwealth.
5. Give the Cardinals and Ordinals up to 10.
6. Once, twice, thrice, ten times, ten apiece, one by one, four, fourth, four at a time, four times, five times, fifth, five.
7. Forty, four hundred; 20, 30, 300; eight, eighth, eighteen, 28, 80, about 800.
8. Aid, troops, boundaries, thanks, epistle, character, places, resources.
9. *Ōlim, statim, paulatim, cōnfestim, saepe, semper, igitur, tamen, tandem, autem, vērō, mox, nbi, tum.*
10. *Tempestās, cōnscendō, expōnō, appellō (ere), appellō (āre), appropinquō, incipiō, ventus, āridus, perveniō, repellō, subducō, lēgātus, obses, imperō, jubeō, remigrō, amittō.*
11. *Timor, revocō, subitō, impetus, pulvis, rota, esseda, excitō, cōnspiciō, circumveniō, strepitus, perturbō, cōnsistō, discōdō.*
12. *Fauci, cōstituō, proelium committō, sustineō, duplicō, adducō, complūrēs, intereā, reficiō, incolumis.*
13. *Crēber, corvus, vicinus, agmen novissimum, posteri, exteri, Superi, Inferi, fidus, mājōrēs, idōneus, antiquus.*
14. Top of a hill, foot of the mountain, daybreak, previous day, rear, van, at the rear, youngest, oldest, ancestors, steep-est, more unfavorable, pitch camp, front rank, choose, farther hank, first of two, heights, occupy.
15. Whole, the other, another, both, no one, no-(adj.), alone; one . . . another; some . . . others; the one . . . the other.
16. Far, long (time), soon, enough, too much, too little, near, immediately, easily, am indignant at, cowardice, lay waste, blame.
17. *Quandō, ubi, unde, quō, quantus, tantus, quālis, tālis, quot, tot, quōmodō.*
18. Foot, pacc, mile, miles, day, night, month, year.

## LESSON XL

## IMPERATIVE MOOD, ACTIVE

## PRESENT TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<b>ěs</b> , <i>be thou.</i> (sum)	<b>es te</b> , <i>be ye.</i>
<b>vooā</b> , <i>call thou.</i>	<b>voā te</b> , <i>call ye.</i>
<b>monē</b> , <i>warn thou.</i>	<b>monē te</b> , <i>warn ye.</i>
<b>regě</b> , <i>rule thou.</i> (capě.)	<b>regī te</b> , <i>rule ye.</i> (capīte.)
<b>audi</b> , <i>hear thou.</i>	<b>audi te</b> , <i>hear ye.</i>

1. Observe that the Singular is the same as the Present Stem. Compare **-te** of the Imperative with **-tis** of the Indicative.

2. There is no first or third person in the Present Imperative.

The following Irregular Imperatives should be noted: —

**đic**, **đuc**, **fer**, **fac**, *say, lead, bear, do or make* (for **đice**, etc.). So pl. **ferite** (for *ferite*). But **đicite**, **đucite**, **facite** are regular.

## FUTURE TENSE

The Future Imperative is seldom met with. Its use is restricted to: —

(1) Laws, treaties, wills.

(2) Commands relating to the distant future, “*Thou shalt*,” etc.

The Fut. Imper. has both the second and the third person.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
2. <b>es tō</b> , <i>thou shalt be.</i>	<b>es tōte</b> , <i>ye shall be.</i>
3. <b>es tō</b> , <i>he shall be.</i>	<b>su ntō</b> , <i>they shall be.</i>
2. <b>vooā tō</b> , <i>thou shalt call.</i>	<b>vocā tōte</b> , <i>ye shall call.</i>
3. <b>vocā tō</b> , <i>he shall call.</i>	<b>voca ntō</b> , <i>they shall call.</i>
2. <b>monē tō</b> , <i>thou shalt warn.</i>	<b>monē tōte</b> , <i>ye shall warn.</i>
3. <b>monē tō</b> , <i>he shall warn.</i>	<b>mone ntō</b> , <i>they shall warn.</i>

SINGULAR	PLURAL
2. <b>regi tō</b> , <i>thou shalt rule.</i>	<b>regi tōte</b> , <i>ye shall rule.</i>
3. <b>regi tō</b> , <i>he shall rule.</i> (capitō.)	<b>regu ntō</b> , <i>they shall rule.</i> (capiuntō.)
2. <b>audi tō</b> , <i>thou shalt hear.</i>	<b>audi tōte</b> , <i>ye shall hear.</i>
3. <b>audi tō</b> , <i>he shall hear.</i>	<b>audiu ntō</b> , <i>they shall hear.</i>

**Negative Commands**

1. **Nē** is the negative for a command ; **nōn** for a statement.
2. In classical prose, however, **nē** is not used with the Imperative, except in the Future.

The most common form of a prohibition in the Second Person is **nōli** (*be thou unwilling*), plur. **nōlite** (see page 251), with the Infinitive, as: —

**Nōli**, puer, malōs laudāre, *Do not, boy, praise the bad.*

**Nōlite**, pueri, cum malis ludere, *Do not, boys, play with the bad.*

But: —

**Homīnem mortuum in urbe nē sepelitō**, *Thou shalt not bury a dead man within the city.*

**EXERCISE**

- A. 1. Cavē canem ; valē ; valēte.
2. Cantāte Dominō ; laudāte Dominum.
3. Nōlite, militēs, hostēs timēre.
4. Dīvide et imperā.
5. Gallī obsidēs nōn mittent.
6. Obsidēs, Gallī, ad castra mea mittito.
7. Filius meus omnia mea habētō.
8. Militēs fortēs sunt. Fortēs este. Fortēs estis.
9. Nōli, puer, librōs malōs legere.
10. Salūs populī suprēma lēx estō.

- B. 1. He will not send messengers.  
 2. Do not hesitate, Gauls, to send hostages.  
 3. Thou shalt not kill.  
 4. Call thou; thou callest; call ye; you (*plur.*) call.  
 5. Hold thou; conquer ye; hear thou; come ye.  
 6. Give (*sing.*); do not give (*plur.*); they do not give.  
 7. Thou shalt love thy neighbor.  
 8. Hear ye; take thou; send thou; come thou.  
 9. Announce ye; behold ye (*cōspiciō*); lead thou; lead ye.  
 10. He says (*dicō*); say thou; thou sayest not; do not (thou) say.  
 11. You (*plur.*) do not say; say ye; say ye not; thou shalt not say.



ROMAN TOGA

Statue of the Emperor  
Tiberius

Civis Rōmānus pāce togā  
virīli indūtus est; bellō sagum  
sūmit. Ducis vestitus est palū-  
dāmentum; Togam praetextam  
senātor habet; eandem puer.





DIANA

(Greek, ARTEMIS)

Diāna soror Apollinis et filia Lātōnae fuit. In Insulā Dēlō cum frātre nāta est. In caelō Lūna erat; in terris Diāna; apud Inferōs Hecatē triformis colēbātur. Bestiās silvārum arcū et sagittis vēnātrix sectābātur. Pharetram humeris fert; vestem juxtā genū succinctam gerit. Māximum et splendidissimum ējus templum Ephesī erat.

## LESSON XLI

## PRONOUNS

## PERSONAL PRONOUNS

	FIRST PERSON	SECOND PERSON	THIRD PERSON		
			SINGULAR		
			M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ego, I	tū, thou	is, he	ea, she	id, it
Gen.	mei, of me	tui, of thee	ejus	ejus	ejus
Dat.	mihi	tibi	eī	eī	eī
Acc.	mē	tē	eum	eam	id
Voc.		tū			
Abl.	mē	tē	eō	eā	eō
			PLURAL		
Nom.	nōs, we	vōs, you	eī (lī)	eae	ea
Gen.	{ nostrum, of us nostri	{ vestrum vestri }	eōrum	eārum	e-rum
Dat.	nōbis	vōbis	eīs (līs)	eīs (līs)	eīs (līs)
Acc.	nōs	vōs	eōe	eās	ea
Voc.		vōs			
Abl.	nōbis	vōbis	eīs (līs)	eīs (līs)	eīs (līs)

1. The Genitives **nostrum** and **vestrum** are Partitives.
2. **Is** and **ea** may mean *it* when they represent objects whose Latin names are masculine or feminine, as: — **eam**, *it* (= **insulam**, *the island*); **eum**, *it* (= **librum**, *the book*); **eās**, *them* (*the islands*); **eōs**, *them* (*the books*); **eam**, *her* (*the girl*); **eum**, *him* (*the boy*); **eōs**, *them* (*the boys*); **ea**, *them* (*the wars*).
3. The Genitives **ejus**, **eōrum**, **eārum** (*of him, of her, of them*) are used instead of possessives of the third person, = *his, her, their*, when the reference is not to the subject.

POSSESSIVES

FIRST PERSON	SECOND PERSON
<i>meus, -a, -um, my.</i>	<i>tuus, -a, -um, thy, your.</i>
<i>noster, nostra, nostrum, our.</i>	<i>vester, vestra, vestrum, your</i> <i>(addressing more than one).</i>

THIRD PERSON

Referring to the subject:—

*suus, -a, -um, his (own), her (own), its (own), their (own).*

Not referring to the subject:—

*ejus (Genitive = of him, etc.), his, her, its.*

*eorum, earum (= of them), their.*

*Meus, tuus, noster, vester, suus* are adjectives and therefore agree with the nouns they modify.

Examples:—

*Librōs meōs habeo, I have my books.*

*Filiam tuam vident, They see your daughter.*

*Librum ejus (eorum) habeo, I have his (their) book.*

*Librōs suōs habet, He has his (own) books.*

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

A Reflexive Pronoun has the following characteristics:—

1. It stands in some objective relation.
2. It points back to the subject.

*Laudō mē, I praise myself.*

*Laudās tē, Thou praisest thyself.*

*Laudat sē, He praises himself.*

From their nature, Reflexive Pronouns lack the *Nom.*

	FIRST PERSON	SECOND PERSON	THIRD PERSON
	SINGULAR		
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>meī, of myself</i>	<i>tui, of thyself</i>	<i>sui, of himself, etc.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mihi</i>	<i>tibi</i>	<i>sibi</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mē</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>sē or sēsē</i>
<i>Abbl.</i>	<i>mē</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>sē or sēsē</i>

## PLURAL

<i>Gen.</i>	<b>nostrī</b> , of our- selves	<b>vestrī</b> , of your- selves	<b>sui</b> , of themselves
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>nōbis</b>	<b>vōbis</b>	<b>sibi</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>nōs</b>	<b>vōs</b>	<b>eō</b> or <b>eōsē</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>nōbis</b>	<b>vōbis</b>	<b>eō</b> or <b>eōsē</b>

1. Observe that in the first and second persons the Reflexives are really the Personal Pronouns.

*I praise myself* = in Latin, *I praise me*.

2. The preposition *cum*, *with*, is an enclitic (see page 126) with the ablatives *mē*, *tē*, *nōbis*, *vōbis*, *eō*, but not with the ablative of *is*; as — *mēcum*, *tēcum*, *nōbiscum*, *vōbiscum*, *sēcum*, *with me*, etc.; but *cum eō*, *with him*; *oum eis*, *with them*.

3. The Personal Pronouns are not expressed as subjects except for emphasis.

## EXERCISE

- A. 1. Dā nōbis pācem.                      4. Tēcum eum mittent.  
 2. Pāx vōbiscum.                            5. Mēcum veniet.  
 3. Cum eis tē mittam.                    6. Cum eō vērērunt.  
 7. Librum habeō; eum tibi dabō.  
 8. Ex insulā vēnimus; eam amāmus.  
 9. Librōs mihi dedit. Eōs ad mē misit.  
 10. Fabrōs sēcum trānsportāvit.  
 11. Eōs sibi obsidēs dare iussit.  
 12. Exercitum suum in eōrum finēs dūxit.  
 13. Ejus exercitum ex suis finibus pepulērunt.  
 14. Patrem suum amat. Patrem ejus amō.  
 15. Nōs tē amāmus; tū nōs nōn culpābis.
- B. 1. I have given you many books. Read them carefully.  
 2. We shall not grant you peace.

3. They gave him hostages.
4. I have it (*the book*); we love it (*the city*); I saw it (*the temple*).
5. He gives them (*the books*) to me.
6. We have not seen them (*the ships*).
7. In it (*the place*); in it (*the city*); into them (*the places*).
8. We shall praise, not ourselves, but him.
9. He will praise, not himself, but us.
10. Do not praise yourself; do not praise yourselves.

## THIRD PERSONAL POSSESSIVES

- C. 1. They do not fear his army.
2. He will attack their camp.
3. He will lead his forces into their state.
4. They will drive his army out of their state.
5. They had not seen his cavalry.
6. He was coming with his cavalry.
7. They fought with his infantry.
8. They will gather (*comportō*) all their effects (*things*) into the woods.
9. They report the matter to their (friends).



MEDUSA

## LESSON XLII

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS AND DEMONSTRATIVE  
PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

**Hic, haec, hōc, *This*** (denoting nearness to the speaker).

Often applied by an advocate in court to his client.

**Ille, illa, illud, *That*** (denoting remoteness).

*That yonder; that other.*

*The celebrated; the well-known.*

Often used to denote "*the enemy.*"

**Is, ea, id, *That*** (without strong demonstrative force).

**Iste, ista, istud, *That of yours.***

*That of which I have told you.*

*That fellow (contemptuously).*

Often applied to an accused person in court.

**Hic, the latter; ille, the former.** This order may be inverted:  
**Hic, the former, the one; ille, the latter, the other.**

**Hic, *This*, plur. *These.***

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	hic	haec	hōc	hi	hae	haec
<i>Gen.</i>	hūjus	hūjus	hūjus	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	huic	huic	huic	his	his	his
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
<i>Abl.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	his	his	his

**Ille, That, plur. Those.**

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	ille	illa	illud	illi	illae	illa
<i>Gen.</i>	illius	illius	illius	illorum	illarum	illorum
<i>Dat.</i>	illi	illi	illi	illis	illis	illis
<i>Acc.</i>	illum	illam	illud	illos	illas	illa
<i>Abl.</i>	illo	illa	illo	illis	illis	illis

**Iste** is declined like **Ille**. For **is, ea, id**, see page 134.

EXERCISE

- A. 1. Hi libri boni sunt; illi mali.
  2. Hos lege; dele illos.
  3. Huic viro laudem dant; illum culpant.
  4. Haec est patria nostra.
  5. Hujus urbis muri non alti erant.
  6. Hoc vult; illud nonvult.
  7. Iste, iudices, vir improbus est.
  8. Ab exploratoribus haec omnia cognovit.
  9. Sine mora imperatori ea nuntiat.
  10. Hostes in iis collibus videt. Illi impetum facere parant.
  11. Copias ad id bellum comparat.
  12. In eum locum venit.
- B. 1. This city (*Nom.*); this city (*Acc.*); in this city; these cities (*Nom.*); into these cities; in these cities.
  2. The cavalry and the infantry fight: the latter (*these*) on foot, the former (*those*) on horseback (*ex equis*).
  3. These ships (*Acc.*); of those rivers; in that city.
  4. By this road (*iter*); those roads; that road.
  5. They prepared themselves for (*ad*) that war,— for this war.
  6. Grain is not ripe in these fields.
  7. He chose this place for a camp.

## LESSON XLIII

## EMPHATIC OR INTENSIVE PRONOUNS

*Ipsē, self, very.*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ipse</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	etc.	etc.	etc.
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	like <i>bonus</i>		
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>			
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>			

Distinguish the Emphatic *ipse* from the Reflexive *se*.

*Ipsē* (1) may be in the *Nom.*;

(2) may be in any person;

(3) usually is in apposition to the word emphasized.

*Se* must be an object pointing back to the subject and is always third person.

*Idem, the same.*

(Is, he, that, and suffix -dem, the same.)

	SINGULAR		
	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>idem</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ejusdem</i>	<i>ejusdem</i>	<i>ejusdem</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eidem</i>	<i>eidem</i>	<i>eidem</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>idem</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eodem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>eodem</i>

	PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>eidem (isdem)</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>eorumdem</i>	<i>eorumdem</i>	<i>eorumdem</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eisdem (isdem)</i>	<i>eisdem (isdem)</i>	<i>eisdem (isdem)</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eisdem</i>	<i>eisdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eisdem (isdem)</i>	<i>eisdem (isdem)</i>	<i>eisdem (isdem)</i>

*Idem* = *is-dem*; *Idem* = *id-dem*.



Observe the phonetic change in

*eundem* to **eundem**,

*eōrundem* to **eōrundem**,

on the "principle of ease," *n* being an easier sound than *m* before *d*.

**Īdem** is often translated *also*.

#### EXERCISE

- A.
1. Puerum ipsum laudāvī, nōn ējus frātrem.
  2. Puer sē nōn laudābit.
  3. Ipse cum equitibus ad īnum collem properāvit.
  4. Eōdem tempore hostēs vīdit.
  5. Eandem civitātem anāmus.
  6. Ipse hōc dīxit.
  7. Īdem multa bella gessit. Īdem bellum gessit.
  8. Imperātōris ipsīus verba audīvī.
  9. Nōs eum laudāmus; sē ipsum nōn laudat.
  10. In eādem urbe vivimus.
  11. Eādem ipsā nocte impetum in cōs fēcit.
- B.
1. The island itself; of the city itself; in the same sea.
  2. They blamed themselves, not him.
  3. He blamed themselves, not their soldiers.
  4. On that very day they captured the town.
  5. He was consul the same year (*Abl.*).
  6. The same (man) said it; he said the same (thing).
  7. Of the same states; in the same state; into the same state.
  8. In the state itself; the state will protect (*dēfendō, -ere*) itself.
  9. They reported this to their (friends).
  10. We shall see that in their city.

## LESSON XLIV

## THE RELATIVE (OR CONJUNCTIVE) PRONOUN

Qui, who, which, that.

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cūjus	cūjus	cūjus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

The usual duty of the so-called Relative Pronoun is to join a clause to an antecedent in the same sentence.

In Latin, the Relative is freely used to introduce a new sentence, where English would use a Demonstrative.

In the following examples observe the rules that decide the form of the relative : —

1. **Puerum qui** librum habet videō.  
*I see the boy who has the book.*
2. **Puer quem** videō librum habet.  
*The boy whom I see has the book.*
3. **Pueri quōrum** librōs habemus eōs nobīs dabunt.  
*The boys whose books we have will give them to us.*
4. **Puellae quārum** librōs habemus, etc.  
*The girls whose books we have, etc.*
5. **Urbs quam** aedificāvit est magna.
6. **In urbe quae** in colle est.
7. **Liber quem** scripsit est bonus.  
*The book (that) he wrote is good.*
8. **Ego, qui** hōc tibi dixi.

In these examples the following principles are to be noted : —

1. The Relative Pronoun agrees in gender, number and person with the antecedent. (*For person, note the verb in example 8.*)
2. The Relative does not take its case from the antecedent, but from its own relation in its own clause.

Note that the relative is never omitted in Latin. (*See example 7, above.*)

Is qui = *he who, that one who, the man who.*

Ii qui = *those who.*

## EXERCISE

- A. 1. Urbs quam vidisti est Rōma.
  2. Urbem, quae est omnium m̄xima, cēpit.
  3. Eae civitatēs, quās superāvit, obsidēs dedērunt.
  4. Mūrī, quibus Rōmam mūnivit, nōn altī erant.
  5. Mūrī quōs aedificāvit; lēgātus cui exercitum dedit.
  6. Civēs, quōrum amor patriae m̄ximusest, ii optimī sunt.
  7. Templum quod est m̄jus vidī.
  8. Librum qui melior est habeō.
  9. Quod ubi audīvit, lēgātōs dimisit.
- B. 1. The boy to whom I gave a book ; the boys to whom.
  2. To the boy whom I see ; of the boy who sees.
  3. The girl whose books I have.
  4. In the city which he captured.
  5. The city in which he lived.
  6. The war which he waged ; the wars that he waged.
  7. All the books I have.
  8. The house you built ; in the river which we see.
  9. He reported to Caesar that which he had learnt.
  10. Those who say these things err.
  11. He who secs bclieves.
  12. We help (*adjuvō, -āre*) those we love.
  13. We who see; thou who sendest; you (*plur.*) who believe.

## LESSON XLV

## INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

**Quis, who?**

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	quis		quid	quī		quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cūjus		cūjus	quōrum		quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui		cui	quibus		quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem		quid	quōs		quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō		quō	quibus		quibus

*The Fem. is practically not used as a pure Pronoun.*

Observe, **quis** (not *quī*); **quid** (not *quod*).

The **Interrogative Adjective** is

<b>quis</b> (or <i>quī</i> )	<b>quae</b>	<b>quod</b> (not <i>quid</i> )
etc.	etc.	etc.

**quis vir?** or **quī vir?** *what man?*

**quī exercitus?** *what army?*

**quis dixit?** *who said it?*

**vir qui dixit,** *the man who said it.*

**quid fecit?** *what did he do?*

**quod bellum gessit?** *what war did he wage?*

**bellum quod gessit,** *the war which he waged.*

## EXERCISE

- A. 1. **Quis tibi hōc dixit?**
2. **Is quī dixit, errāvit.**
3. **Quid mihi dixisti?**
4. **Id quod dixisti nōn vērūm est.**
5. **Quod templum est sacrum iis quī exercitūs nostrōs dūcunt?**

6. Quem vidisti? Quid vidisti? Quam urbem amās?
7. Quis puer mihi librum dabit?
8. Quā in urbe habitās?

- B.
1. The man who conquered Gaul.
  2. Who led the army which conquered Gaul?
  3. What army crossed (*superō*) the Alps?
  4. Whose army nearly captured Rome? Hannibal's.
  5. Whose books are these? Are they the boys'?
  6. What army did he lead?
  7. What states did he conquer?
  8. What sea do they sail?
  9. What will they see?
  10. Whom do the citizens choose?
  11. To whom do we give praise? Who gives?

Sagittārius arcum tendit. Pharetram ā tergō gerit. Optimī sagittārii ex insulā Crētā veniēbant.



SAGITTĀRIUS

## LESSON XLVI

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

**Aliquis** (aliqua), aliquid, *some one*.

**Quis**, quae or qua, quid, *any* (after *sī*, *if*, *nō*, *lest*, and a few other words).

**Quisquam**, quaequam, quidquam, *any* (in a negative connection, expressed or implied).

**nec quisquam**, *nor any one = and no one*.

**vix quisquam**, *scarcely any one*.

**fortior quōquam**, *braver than any one* (all others excluded).

**Quisque**, quaeque, quidque, *each*.

**Uterque**, utraque, utrumque, *each of two, both*.

**Quidam**, quaedam, quiddam, *a certain one*.

{ **Quivīs**, quaevis, quidvis, } *any one you please.*

{ **Quilibet**, quaelibet, quidlibet, } *any one whatever.*

**Quidam** has Acc. Sing. *quendam*, *quandam*; Gen. Plur. *quōrundam*, *quārundam*.

**Quicquam** is often used for *quidquam*.

The preceding pronouns may be turned into adjectives by changing *quis* to *qui* and *quid* to *quod*. They are declined like *quis* or *qui*. **Uterque** is declined like *uter*.

## EXERCISE

- A. 1. *Sī quid vīdistī, dīc mihi.*  
 2. *Nōnne aliquid dīxistī?*  
 3. *Vix quidquam audīvī.*  
 4. *Nec quemquam āmisērunt.*  
 5. *Optimum quemque laudat.*  
 6. *Quemvis dēlige; quidlibet dīc.*

7. Utrumque cōsulem occidērunt.
8. Nec quicquam vestitūs praeter pellēs habent.

- B.
1. If he saw (*plpf.*) any one, he always told (*imperf.*) me.
  2. If any one comes (= *shall have come*), I will tell you.
  3. And no one remained in the camp (say "nor any one").
  4. Lead the army by any-way-you-like.
  5. Did you hear some one?
  6. Give to each boy a crown.
  7. If anything — lest any one — lest to any one — and nothing (do not say *et nihil*, but "nor anything").
  8. They conquered both fleets.

## REVIEW WORD LIST

1	2	3	4
vetō	faber	verbum	nēmō
obses	neoō	crēdō	nūllus
bona ( <i>n. plur.</i> )	vāstō	exercitus	quisquam
mortuus	ipse	laus	aliquis
nōlī	īdem	quīdam	hīc
	īmus collis	quisque	ille
5	6	7	8
him	this	the man who	each (of several)
us	that	the men whom	both consuls
thee	these (men)	what man?	a certain
thy	these (things)	what did he say?	that one who
his	same	lest any	those to whom
his own	the very man	if any	believe
your	who? whom?	nor any one	praise
except	on account of	some one	blame
		without	clothing
			skin (fur)



VESTA

(Greek, HESTIA)

Vesta mākimē a Rōmānis colēbātur. In ējus templō ignis perpetuus a virginibus Vestālibus cūstōdiēbātur. Dea castitātis et domestici foci erat. Aenēas imāginem ējus ex Trōjā incēnsā sēcum ad Italiā tulisse existimābātur.



## LESSON XLVII

## THE PASSIVE VOICE

## INDICATIVE

SINGULAR		PRESENT	PLURAL
1. <b>voco r</b>	<i>I am called</i>	<b>vocā mur</b>	<i>we are called</i>
2. <b>vocā ris (-re)</b>	<i>thou art called</i>	<b>vocā mini</b>	<i>you (ye) are called</i>
3. <b>vocā tur</b>	<i>he is called</i>	<b>voca ntur</b>	<i>they are called</i>

(The 2 Sing. **vocāre** (= **vocāris**) is mostly poetic.)

SINGULAR		IMPERFECT	PLURAL
1. <b>vocā bar</b>	<i>I was being called</i>		1. <b>vocā bā mur</b>
2. <b>vocā bā ris (-re)</b>			2. <b>vocā bā mini</b>
3. <b>vocā bā tur</b>			3. <b>vocā ba ntur</b>

SINGULAR		FUTURE	PLURAL
1. <b>vocā bor</b>	<i>I shall be called</i>		1. <b>vocā bi mur</b>
2. <b>vocā bē ris (-re)</b>			2. <b>vocā bi mini</b>
3. <b>vocā bi tur</b>			3. <b>vocā bu ntur</b>

Compare with these the forms of the corresponding active tenses, e.g. **vocā bam**, **-bās**, **-bat**, etc. It will be noticed that the passive can be obtained from the active in these three tenses by substituting as follows:—

ACTIVE ENDINGS		PASSIVE ENDINGS
(-m)	<i>I</i>	-r
-s	<i>thou</i>	-ris (-rē)
-t	<i>he</i>	-tur
-mus	<i>we</i>	-mur
-tis	<i>you</i>	-mini
-nt	<i>they</i>	-ntur

In **vocābis**, **vocāberis**, note that **-bi** is changed to **-be**.  
**vocābant**, *they were calling*; **vocābantur**, *they were being called*.

**Ablative of the Agent**

1. The person by whom an act is performed is called the agent. In Latin the agent is expressed with the Passive Voice by the *Ablative Case, governed by the preposition a, ab.*

*Ā* māt̄re puer vocātur, *The boy is called by his mother.*  
*Ā* senātū condemnātur, *He is condemned by the senate.*

**Ablative of the Means or Instrument**

2. The means or instrument, the thing by which an act is performed, is expressed by the *Ablative without a preposition.*

*Lapide* necātur, *He is killed by a stone.*  
*Vī* superātur, *He is overcome by means of force.*

**EXERCISE**

- A. 1. Vocat, vocātur; vocābat, vocābātur; vocābit, vocābitur.
2. Necās, necāris; necābās, necābāris; necābis, necābēris.
3. Laudāmur, laudābāmur, laudābimur, laudābimus.
4. Bestiae in silvīs ā Diānā fugantur.
5. Deī ab hominibus in periculīs ōrantur.
6. Diāna bestiās fugat; hominēs deōs ōrant.
7. Ab amicīs laudāris; ab inimicīs condemnāris.
8. Tōta Gallia ā Caesare superātur.
9. Per hōs annōs Gallī ā Rōmānīs superābantur.
10. Frūmentum carrīs in tēcta portābitur.
11. Nāvēs parābunt; nāvēs ab eīs parābuntur.
12. Librī tibi ā mē dabuntur.
13. Tēlīs hostium multī militēs necantur.

- B. 1. Caesar gives the signal; the signal is given by Caesar.
2. These books are given me by you (*sing.*).
3. A bridge will be built by the Romans by means of ships.
4. A war-ship is very quickly prepared by the workmen.
5. The battle was fought long and fiercely by both (parties). (Use the impersonal "*it was fought.*")
6. The city is surrounded with a wall by the citizens.
7. Beasts of burden used to be procured (*parō*) in Gaul.
8. The Gauls are very greatly pleased with beasts of burden (*dēlectō*).
9. He is giving; it is given; he was giving; it was being given.
10. Ships will be prepared by them; they will prepare ships.
11. Thou wilt be called; thou wilt call.
12. We shall praise; we shall be praised.



Scutum

Scutum sinistrā miles legiōnārius portat.  
Ita dextrum latus est apertum.  
Quae sunt alia arma militis Rōmāni?

## LESSON XLVIII

## THE PERFECT PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

The **Supine**: Acc. -um; Abl. -ū

The Principal Parts of the verb **vocō**, as usually given in dictionaries, are:—

<b>vocō</b>	<b>vocāre</b>	<b>vocāvī</b>	<b>vocātum</b>
pres. indic.	pres inf.	perf. indic.	supine

The term **Supine** is applied in Latin Grammar to a certain kind of **Verbal Noun**. This noun is of the Fourth Declension, and is used in two cases only, the Accusative and the Ablative:—

*e.g.* Acc. **vocātum**  
Abl. **vocātū**

Theoretically, **vocātus, -ūs**, etc., means *the act of calling*.

1. The **Accusative Supine** is used to denote purpose in connection with a **Verb of Motion**, and is usually rendered in English by the **Adverbial Infinitive**:—

**Vocātum vērērunt**, *They came to call.*

**Līgātōs pācem petītum mittunt**, *They send ambassadors to seek peace.*

(**N. B.**—The **Infinitive** is never used in good Latin prose to denote Purpose.)

2. The **Ablative Supine** is used in a few phrases as a modifier of an **Adjective**, as:—

**horribile dictū**, *horrible to see.*

**optimum factū**, *the best thing to do.*

Literally, *horrible in the telling, best in the doing.*

## The Perfect Passive Participle

3. The Supine occurs but rarely. Its form has acquired an importance in Latin grammar from the fact that most dictionaries and grammars give it as one of the principal parts of the verb, and in this connection it is especially important, because from it we obtain the **Stem of the Perfect Passive Participle** and all the **Perfect Passive tense phrases of the Verb**. Thus:—

SUPINE	PERF. PASS. PARTICIPLE	
<b>vocātum</b>	<b>vocātus</b>	<i>with I</i>
stem, <b>vocāt-</b>		<i>having been called</i>
<b>monitum</b>	<b>monitus</b>	<i>warned</i>
<b>scriptum</b>	<b>scriptus</b>	<i>written</i>
<b>dātum</b>	<b>dātus</b>	<i>given</i>
<b>pulsum</b>	<b>pulsus</b>	<i>driven</i>
<b>missum</b>	<b>missus</b>	<i>sent</i>
<b>visum</b>	<b>visus</b>	<i>seen</i>

The Perf. Pass. Participle is declined, **vocātus, -a, -um** like **bonus**, and agrees, like an adjective, with its noun.

## EXERCISE

- A. 1. Find in the Vocabulary and write the Principal Parts of **nūntiō, creō, dōleō, capiō, jubeō, vincō, gerō, audiō, trahō**, noting the Supine Stem.
2. Give Latin Participles meaning:—  
*announced, created, destroyed, taken, ordered, conquered, waged (carried on), heard, drawn.*
- B. 1. **Lēgātī obsidēs datum vērunt.**  
2. **Militēs misit Germānōs ex Galliā pulsum.**  
3. **Hōc est difficile dictū.**  
4. **Obsidēs ā Gallis datōs ad urbem misit.**  
5. **In urbe captā ; urbem ā Caesare captam vidī.**

6. Militēs ā Rōmānīs missī Gerinānōs ex Galliā populērunt.
7. Militēs missōs timēbant Germānī.
8. Ā mīlitibus missīs superantur.
9. Signum ā duce datum audīvērunt.
10. Servus epistolam ā dominō scriptam in urbem portat.
11. Leō est asper tāctū.

*Distinguish carefully the Perf. Part. from the Supine.*

- C. 1. The walls of the city taken by our (men) were high.
2. I have the book given me by you.
  3. A story easy to tell (*nārrō*).
  4. He came to tell a story.
  5. The wars waged by Caesar were difficult.
  6. The cities destroyed were many.
  7. In the city destroyed; in the town destroyed.
  8. The ships taken were long and swift.
  9. The enemy seen on the hills were infantry.
  10. Did you read the letter sent you by me?
  11. In the house built by you; in the ship taken by him.

**Caution.** — Beware of the tendency to think that the Supine is a usual equivalent of the English Infinitive.

#### The Muses

CLIŌ, <i>History</i>	TERPSICHŌRĒ, <i>Choral Dance</i>
EUTERPE, <i>Lyric Poetry</i>	ERĀTŌ, <i>Amorous Poetry</i>
THALIA, <i>Comedy</i>	POLYHYMNIA, <i>Sublime Verse</i>
MELPOMĒNE, <i>Tragedy</i>	URĀNIA, <i>Astronomy</i>
	CALLIŌPE, <i>Epic Poetry</i>

LESSON XLIX

PERFECT PASSIVE TENSES OF Vocō

INDICATIVE MOOD

The following is a synopsis of the Indicative Passive : —

PRESENT	<b>vocor</b>	<i>I am (now) called, am being called</i>
IMPERFECT	<b>vocābar</b>	<i>I was being called, was called (repeatedly)</i>
FUTURE	<b>vocābor</b>	<i>I shall be called</i>
PERFECT	<b>vocātus sum</b>	<i>(1) I have been called, (2) I was called (once)</i>
PLUPERFECT	<b>vocātus eram</b>	<i>I had been called</i>
FUT. PERF.	<b>vocātus erō</b>	<i>I shall have been called</i>

PERFECT

SINGULAR		PLURAL
<b>vocātus sum</b>		<b>vocāti sumus</b>
<b>vocātus es</b>		<b>vocāti estis</b>
<b>vocātus est</b>		<b>vocāti sunt</b>

PLUPERFECT

<b>vocātus eram</b>	<b>vocāti erāmus</b>
<b>vocātus erās</b>	<b>vocāti erātis</b>
<b>vocātus erat</b>	<b>vocāti erant</b>

FUTURE PERFECT

<b>vocātus erō</b>	<b>vocāti erimus</b>
<b>vocātus eris</b>	<b>vocāti eritis</b>
<b>vocātus erit</b>	<b>vocāti erunt</b>

1. The phrase **vocātus sum**, *I was called or have been called*, is not to be translated in the same way as the words taken separately : **sum**, *I am* ; **vocātus**, *called*.

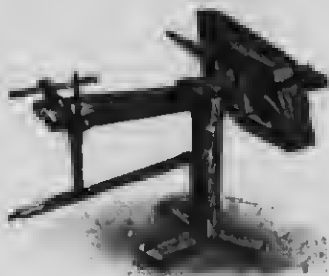
**vocor** = *I am (now) called.*

**vocātus sum** (Perfect) = *I am (in the position of having been) called, i.e. I have been called; was called; am (already) called.*

2. Note the agreement of the participle in **puella vocāta est; puellae vocātae sunt; templum aedificātum est.**

## EXERCISE

- A. 1. Mūri aedificātī sunt; aedificantur; aedificātī erant.  
 2. Haec rēs nobīs nūntiāta est.  
 3. Māj̄rēs cōpiae jam parātae crant.  
 4. Māxima classis ā Rōmānīs comparāta erit.  
 5. Frūmentum in oppida comportātur.
- B. 1. A temple is being built; is (already) built.  
 2. Temples were being built; were (already) built.  
 3. The Gauls were conquered by the Roman people.  
 4. Large ships will have been prepared.  
 5. The consuls were elected (created) by the people (once); were elected (repeatedly).  
 6. Thou art (now) called; thou hast been called.  
 7. We were (continually) called; we were called (once).



CATAPULTA

Haec est mächina ad tēla ingentis māgnitūdinis concientiā idōnea.



## LESSON L

## SECOND CONJUGATION

## PASSIVE VOICE

## PRINCIPAL PARTS

<b>moneō</b> , -ēre, monuī, monitum, <i>warn, advise.</i>
<b>teneō</b> , -ēre, tenuī, tentum, <i>hold.</i>
<b>habeō</b> , -ēre, habuī, habitum, <i>have.</i>
<b>dēleō</b> , -ēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum, <i>destroy.</i>
<b>videō</b> , -ēre, vīdī, vīsum, <i>see.</i>

## INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT	moneor	videor
IMPERFECT	monēbar	vidēbar
FUTURE	monēbor	vidēbor
PERFECT	monitus sum	visus sum
PLUPERFECT	monitus eram	visus eram
FUT. PERF.	monitus erō	visus erō

	PRESENT		PLURAL
SINGULAR			
moneo r, <i>I am advised</i>			monē mur
monē ris (-re)			monē minī
monē tur			mone ntur
	IMPERFECT		
monē ba r, <i>I was being advised</i>			monē bā mur
monē bā ris (-re)			monē bā minī
monē bā tur			monē ba ntur
	FUTURE		
monē bo r, <i>I shall be advised</i>			monē bī mur
monē bē ris (-re)			monē bī minī
monē bī tur			monē bu ntur

## PERFECT

monitus sum { 1. I have been advised  
2. I was advised (once) } moniti sumus

## PLUPERFECT

monitus eram, I had been advised } moniti erāmus

## FUTURE PERFECT

monitus erō, I shall have been advised } moniti erimus

## Vocō

## Moneō

ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
vocō	vocor	moneō	moneor
vocābam	vocābar	monēbam	monēbar
vocābō	vocābor	monēbō	monēbor
vocāvī	vocātus sum	monuī	monitus sum
vocāveram	vocātus eram	monueram	monitus eram
vocāverō	vocātus erō	monuerō	monitus erō

## EXERCISE

- A. 1. Monēris ā patre ; pater tē monet.  
 2. Hostēs vīsī sunt ; vidēbantur.  
 3. Collis ā nostris tenēbātur.  
 4. Castra ab hostibus teuēbuntur.  
 5. Nihil ab eīs respōnsum est.  
 6. Vidēmur, vidēmus ; vidēbis, vidēberis.  
 7. Urbs ā militibus dēlēta est.  
 8. Nāvēs tempestāte dēlētae erant.  
 9. Oppidum ab exercitū tenētur ; exercitus oppidum tenet ; tenētis, tenēmus.  
 10. Monēmus, monēmur ; timent, timentur.  
 11. Jubētur, jubēbantur, jubēbitur, jussus est.  
 12. Vidēminī, vidētis ; monēs, monēris ; teuēmur, tenēminī.

- B. 1. The enemy are seen on the top of the mountain.  
 2. Our ships will be destroyed by the waves.  
 3. The hills are held by Caesar.  
 4. Thou art seen, thou seest.  
 5. Caesar's ships were now seen (*being seen*) from the shore.  
 6. The soldiers will be kept (*contineō*) in camp.  
 7. The ship will have been destroyed.  
 8. The war-ships were feared (*timeō*) by the Britons.  
 9. Thou wilt be feared by all.  
 10. Who was feared by the Gauls?  
 11. The Gauls were ordered (*jubeō*) to bring hostages.  
 12. We order, we are ordered; you (*plur.*) hold; you (*plur.*) are being held, you (*sing.*) were being held; you were holding.  
 13. Thou wilt see; thou wilt be seen.



Ballista saxa in hostem conicit. Catapulta et ballista sunt tormenta.

## LESSON LI

## THIRD CONJUGATION

## PASSIVE VOICE

## PRINCIPAL PARTS

**regō**, -ēre, rēxi, rēctum, *rule*.  
**vincō**, -ēre, vici, victum, *conquer*.  
**gerō**, -ēre, gessi, gestum, *carry, carry on, do*.  
**mittō**, -ēre, misi, missum, *send*.  
**dūcō**, -ēre, duxi, ductum, (1) *lead*, (2) *think*.  
**scribō**, -ēre, scripsi, scriptum, *write*.  
**cognōscō**, -ēre, cognovi, cognitum, *learn, ascertain*.  
**pellō**, -ēre, pepuli, pulsum, *drive*.  
**petō**, -ēre, petivi, petitum, *seek*.  
**frangō**, -ēre, frēgi, fractum, *break*.

**Regō**, *I rule*

## INDICATIVE MOOD

## PRESENT

<b>rego</b> r, <i>I am ruled, am being ruled</i>	<b>regi</b> mur
<b>regē</b> ris (-re)	<b>regi</b> minī
<b>regi</b> tur	<b>regu</b> ntur

## IMPERFECT

<b>regē</b> ba r, <i>I was being ruled,</i> <i>was ruled (continuously)</i>	<b>regē</b> bā mur
<b>regē</b> bā ris (-re)	<b>regē</b> bā minī
<b>regē</b> bā tur	<b>regē</b> ba ntur

## FUTURE

<b>rega</b> r, <i>I shall be ruled</i>	<b>regē</b> mur
<b>regē</b> ris (-re)	<b>regē</b> minī
<b>regē</b> tur	<b>regē</b> ntur

Compare the Active: **regam**, -ēs, -et, etc.

PERFECT

rēctus sum } 1. *I have been ruled*  
 } 2. *I was ruled*                      rēcti sumus  
 (a completed occurrence)

PLUPERFECT

rēctus eram, *I had been ruled*                      rēcti erāmus

FUTURE PERFECT

rēctus erō, *I shall have been ruled*                      rēcti erimus

Similarly : —

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
vincō	vincor
vincēbām	vincēbar
vincam	vincar
vici	victus sum
viceram	victus eram
vicerō	victus erō

Make an Active and Passive Synopsis for each of the following: gerō, mittō, dūcō, scribō, cognōscō, pellō, petō, frangō.

EXERCISE

- A. 1. Regēris, regēris; regitur, regētur.  
 2. Reguntur, regentur, regēmur, regimur.  
 3. Gallia a Caesare vincēbātur.  
 4. Multi militēs in Galliam dūcentur.  
 5. Dum haec geruntur.  
 6. Multa bella ā Rōmānīs gerēbantur.  
 7. Scribis, scripseris, scribitur, scribētur.  
 8. Cīvēs malī ex civitāte pelluntur.  
 9. Lēgātī ad Caesarem dē pāce mittentur.

10. Mittēris, mittēris, miseris, miserunt.
11. Gallia victa est ; lēgāti missī sunt.
12. Epistolae missae erant.
13. Vincī, vīcī, vincēre, vincēris, vicēris, vincēris.
14. Mittimur, mittiminī ; vincimus, vincēmur, vincēbāmur.

- B.
1. Thou art conquered, he is conquered ; thou wilt be conquered, he will be conquered.
  2. We are sent, we shall be sent ; they are sent, they will be sent ; the letter is (already) sent ; is always sent.
  3. Ambassadors were sent to the general about these matters.
  4. War is being waged, will he waged, has been waged.
  5. Wars are being waged, will he waged, had been waged.
  6. He had learnt all these things from scouts.
  7. They are driven out of the states ; they will be driven ; they will have been driven ; they were being driven.
  8. Letters were written ; had been written ; the letter is being written ; the letter will be written ; was (already) written.
  9. Thou writest, thou art driven, thou wilt be sent.
  10. While this war was being waged (*say is being waged*).
  11. While he was waging these wars (*say is waging*).
  12. Peace is sought by the Gauls ; will be sought ; has been sought.
  13. Camp will be pitched (*pōnō*) ; is being pitched ; is pitched daily ; is already pitched.

## LESSON LII

## FOURTH CONJUGATION

## PASSIVE VOICE

## PRINCIPAL PARTS

audiō, -ire, audivī, auditum, *hear*.  
 sepeliō, -ire, sepelivī, sepultum, *bury*.  
 aperiō, -ire, aperui, apertum, *open*.  
 reperiō, -ire, repperi, repertum, *find* (after searching).  
 inveniō, -ire, invēni, inventum, *find* (unexpectedly).  
 vinciō, -ire, vinxi, vinctum, *bind*.  
 mūniō, -ire, mūnivī, mūnitum, *fortify*.

**Audiō, I hear**

## INDICATIVE MOOD

## PRESENT

audio r, <i>I am heard, am being heard</i>	audi mur
audi ris (-re)	audi mini
audi tur	audi ntur

## IMPERFECT

audiē ba r, <i>I was being heard, I was heard (continuously or repeatedly)</i>	audiē bā mur
audiē bā ris (-re)	audiē bā mini
audiē bā tur	audiē ba ntur

## FUTURE

audia r, <i>I shall be heard</i>	audiē mur
audiē ris (-re)	audiē mini
audiē tur	audiē ntur

Compare the Active, *audiam, -iēs, -iet*, etc.

## PERFECT

auditus sum, 1. *I have been heard*      auditi sumus.  
 2. *I was heard (once)*

## PLUPERFECT

auditus eram, *I had been heard*      auditi erāmus

## FUTURE PERFECT

auditus erō, *I shall have been heard*      auditi erimus

Similarly : —

sepelior  
 sepelliēbar  
 sepeliar

sepultus sum  
 sepultus eram  
 sepultus erō

1. Make an Active and Passive synopsis for *aperiō, reperiō, inveniō, vinciō, mūniō*.
2. Compare *vincō* with *vinciō*.

## EXERCISE

- A. 1. Lēgātus audītur, mittitur, audiētur, mittētur, audiēbātur, mittēbātur, audītus est, missus es.
2. Verba lēgātōrum ā Caesare audientur; audita sunt.
3. Cadāvera hominum in sepulchris sepeliuntur.
4. Multa et mākima animālia in silvis inveniēbantur.
5. Epistola ā Juce aperitur.
6. Haec omnia ā mē reperta sunt.
7. Inveniris, mittēris, inveniēris, mittēris.
8. Manūs captīvōrum vincientur; vincetae erant
9. Nōnne castra ā nostris locō māgis idōneō mūni-  
 entur; pōnentur; mūnita sunt; posita erunt?
10. Vincitur, vincitur; vinciuntur, vincuntur.



11. Quis vincietur? Cūr nōn audītur?
  12. Num vincētur? Ā quō vletī sumus? Vincitī sumus.
  13. Oculōs, epistolās aperīmus; portam, viam patēfacimus.
- B.*
1. Thou art heard; thou art placed (*pōnō*); he is being placed; he is heard.
  2. Your hands have not been bound by him; will not be bound; are not being bound.
  3. The conditions of peace have not been heard by us.
  4. Was the camp being fortified by a rampart?
  5. He will soon be discovered by them.
  6. They will very quickly discover him.
  7. Thou art binding; thou art being bound; we are being bound.
  8. Thou art conquering; thou art being conquered.
  9. Their eyes were opened; the camp had been fortified; the bodies will have been buried.

**Mūsae**

Mūsae, quae novem fuērunt, apud Helicōnem montem habitāre existimābantur. Parnassus mōns et fōns Castāliac etiam iīs sacri erant. Poētae nōmina eārum invocābant. Sī quis cum iīs carmine contendere audēbat, gravibus poenīs afficiēbātur. Virginēs novem, sic fert fābula, Pierī filiae, hōc tāle ausae, in speciem avium mūtātae sunt.

(See page 154.)

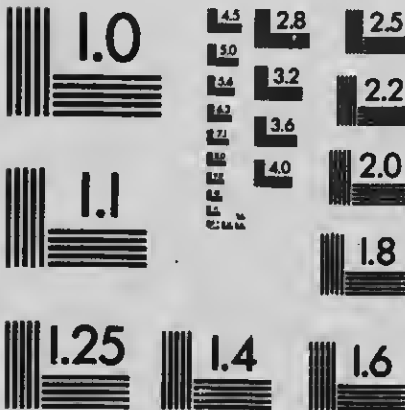
Vōs lēne cōnsilium et datis et datō  
Gaudētis almae.

HORACE, *Odes* III, 4.



# MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



**APPLIED IMAGE Inc.**

1653 East Main Street  
Rochester, New York 14609 USA  
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone  
(716) 288 - 5969 - Fax

## SYNOPSIS OF REGULAR VERBS

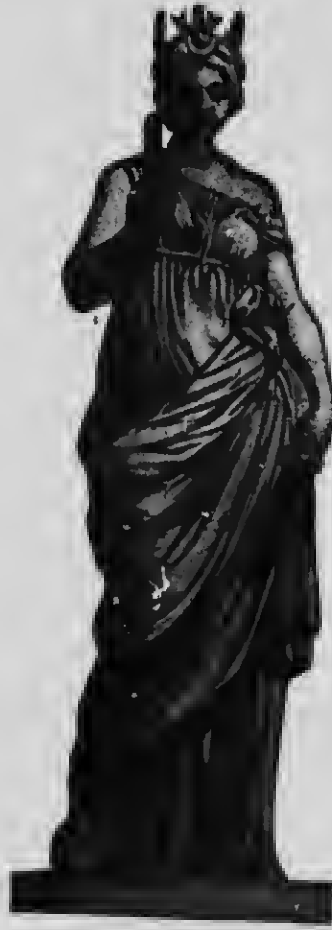
## INDICATIVE MOOD

## ACTIVE VOICE

I Vocō (-āre)	II Moneō (-ēre)	III Regō (-ēre)	IV Audiō (-ire)
vocō, -ās, -at vocābam vocābō	moneō, -ēs, -et monēbam monēbō	regō, -īs, -it regēbam regam, -ēs, -et	audiō, -īs, -it audiēbam audiam, -iēs, -iet
vocāvī vocāveram vocāverō	monuī monueram monuerō	rēxi rēxeram rēxerō	audiāvī audiiveram audiiverō

## PASSIVE VOICE

I Vocor (-ārī)	II Moneor (-ērī)	III Regor (-ī)	IV Audior (-īrī)
vocor, -āris(-re), -ātur	moneor, -ēris(-re), -ētur	regor, -ēris(-re), -itur	audior, -iris(-re), -itur
vocābar vocābor, -bēris (-re)	monēbar monēbor, -bēris (-re)	regēbar regar, -ēris(-re), -ētur	audiēbar audiar, -iēris(-re), -iētur
vocātus sum vocātus eram vocātus erō	monitus sum monitus eram monitus erō	rēctus sum rēctus eram rēctus erō	audītus sum audītus eram audītus erō



CERES

(Greek, DEMETER)

Cerēs dea agricultūrae fuit, Jovis soror et Prōserpinae māter. Frū-  
menta hominibus nūtrit. Filia ējus a Plūtōne in Inferōs abrepta est.  
A mātre reperta illa tertiam partem anni uxor cum Oreō cōsumere  
coācta est ; reliquam partem cum mātre in terris manēre ei licēbat.

## LESSON LIII

## IMPERATIVE MOOD

## PASSIVE VOICE

## FIRST CONJUGATION

## PRESENT

*vocāre, be thou called**vocāmini, be ye called*

## FUTURE

*vocātor, thou shalt be called**vocātor, he shall be called**vocantor, they shall be called**See Imperative Active, page 130.*

## SECOND CONJUGATION

## PRESENT

*monēre**monēmini*

## FUTURE

*monētor**monētor**monentor*

## THIRD CONJUGATION

## PRESENT

*regere**regimini*

## FUTURE

*regitor**regitor**reguntor*

## FOURTH CONJUGATION

## PRESENT

*audire**audimini*

## FUTURE

*auditor**auditor**auduntor*

IMPERATIVE MOOD

ACTIVE VOICE

<b>PRESENT</b> 2. vocā, vocāte	<b>PRESENT</b> 2. monē, monēte	<b>PRESENT</b> 2. regē, regite (capē, capite)	<b>PRESENT</b> 2. audī, audite
<b>FUTURE</b> 2. vocātō, vocātōte 3. vocātō, vocāntō	<b>FUTURE</b> 2. monētō, monētōte 3. monētō, monentō	<b>FUTURE</b> 2. regitō, regitōte 3. regitō, reguntō	<b>FUTURE</b> 2. auditō, auditōte 3. auditō, audituntō

PASSIVE VOICE

<b>PRESENT</b> 2. vocāre, vocāminī	<b>PRESENT</b> 2. monēre, monēminī	<b>PRESENT</b> 2. regere, regiminī (capere, capiminī)	<b>PRESENT</b> 2. audire audiminī
<b>FUTURE</b> 2. vocātor 3. vocātor, vocāntor	<b>FUTURE</b> 2. monētor 3. monētor, monentor	<b>FUTURE</b> 2. regitor 3. regitor, reguntor	<b>FUTURE</b> 2. auditor 3. auditor, audituntor

EXERCISE

- A. 1. Vocā, vocāre, vocāris, vocās.
2. Monēs, monē, monēris, monērc.
3. Regere, regis, rege, regeris, regī, regēris.
4. Audī, audīs, audiris, audīre.
5. Vince, vincī, vīcī, vincere (*imperat.*), vinceris, vincēris, vincīs, vincēs.
6. Tenēre, tenētor, tenēminī, tenentor, tenentur.
7. Vincīre (*inf.*), vincīrī, vincīre (*imperat.*), vincī, vincīs, vincīris.
8. Vocāminī (*two values*); regere (*three values*).

- B.* 1. Lead thou, lead ye, be thou led, be ye led.  
 2. Thou shalt lead, thou wilt lead, they will lead, they shall lead.  
 3. Thou shalt be led, thou wilt be led, they will be led, they shall be led.  
 4. To send, to be sent, send thou, be thou sent.  
 5. Thou sendest, thou art sent, thou wilt be sent.  
 6. He shall send, he shall be sent, they will be sent, they shall be sent.  
 7. They are called, they shall be called, they will be called, thou shalt call, thou shalt be called.



SIGNIFER VEL AQUILIFER

Is quī signum fert.



LESSON LIV

PASSIVE VOICE OF *Capiō*

*capior, capī, captus sum, I am taken*

*What is the rule for inflecting capiō? See page 48.*

INDICATIVE

PRESENT	<i>capior</i> <i>capēris(-re)</i> <i>capītur</i>	<i>capīmur</i> <i>capīminī</i> <i>capīuntur</i>
IMPERFECT	<i>capīēbar</i>	<i>capīēbāmur</i>
FUTURE	<i>caplar</i> <i>capīēris(-re)</i> <i>capīētur</i>	<i>capīēmur</i> <i>capīēmīnī</i> <i>capīentur</i>
PERFECT	<i>captus sum</i>	<i>captī sumus</i>
PLUPERFECT	<i>captus eram</i>	<i>captī erāmus</i>
FUTURE PERFECT	<i>captus erō</i>	<i>captī erimus</i>

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT	<i>capere</i>	<i>capīminī</i>
FUTURE	<i>capitor</i> <i>capitor</i>	— <i>capīuntor</i>

EXERCISE

4. Read aloud carefully and translate: —
1. *Regīs, audīs, capīs; regītur, auditur, capītur.*
  2. *Pōnunt, veniunt, faciunt; pōneris, pūnīris, capēris.*
  3. *Mittīmur, audīmur, capīmur.*
  4. *Capiēs, capiēris; capiet, eapiētur.*

5. Ciuitās interficitur ; Gallia vincitur ; manus vincitur.
6. Epistola ā tē accipitur ; litterāe accipiuntur.
7. Capī, cēpī, cape ; accipit, accēpit, accipī, accipe.

*B.* Translate orally : —

1. Thou art sent, thou art punished, thou art taken.
2. The camp is placed ; the enemy are punished ; the guards are slain.
3. He will be sent ; he will be killed.
4. The villages were being plundered by the enemy.
5. He is being taken ; he is being punished ; he will be taken.
6. The city has been plundered by the army.
7. We are being plundered by the rich.
8. All this time darts were being hurled.



SIGNUM LEGIŌNIS

Signa ex auro aut argentō facta sunt.

## LESSON LV

## DEPONENT VERBS

(Dēpōnō, *I lay aside*)

DepONENT verbs are those which have "laid aside" their active conjugation and assumed active meanings for their passive forms, e.g. : —

I Conj.	cōnor, oōnāri, cōnātus, try, attempt.
II Conj.	vereor, verēri, veritus, fear.
III Conj.	sequor, sequi, secūtus, follow.
IV Conj.	ōrdior, ōrdiri, cōrsus, begin.

Cōnor, *try, attempt*

## INDICATIVE MOOD

Pres.	cōnor, -āris(-re), -ātur, etc.,	<i>I try.</i>
Imperf.	oōnābar, -bāris, etc.,	<i>I was trying.</i>
Fut.	cōnābor, -beris, etc.,	<i>I shall try.</i>
Perf.	cōnātus sum,	<i>I tried, have tried.</i>
Plup.	cōnātus eram,	<i>I had tried.</i>
Fut. Perf.	cōnātus erō,	<i>I shall have tried.</i>

The inflections of **cōnor** are the same as those of **vocor** (see page 155).

Similarly: **hortor**, *exhort*; **moror**, *delay*; **suspīcor**, *suspect*; **cunctor**, *hesitate*.

The pupil may similarly work out **vereor**, **sequor**, **ōrdior**, taking **moneor**, **regor**, **audior** as models (see page 160).

## EXERCISE

- A. 1. Vocat, vocātur, cōnātur, vocāmus, cōnāmur.
2. Vocās, vocāris, hortāris, hortāminī, vocāte.
3. Laudābant, morābantur, suspīcābātur.

4. *Cōnābimur militēs hortārī.*
  5. *Nōlite, militēs, cunctārī.*
  6. *Suōs sē sequī jubet.*
  7. *Vocāvērunt, cōnātī sunt, vocātī erant.*
- B.*
1. They praise; they exhort; we are exhorting.
  2. You (*plur.*) are praising; you (*plur.*) are not hesitating.
  3. He will call; he will try; he was trying.
  4. He wishes to try, to follow, to begin.
  5. Thou dost not suspect; thou hast delayed.
  6. Do not, lieutenant, delay.
- C.*
1. Make a synopsis of the Indicative of each of the following verbs: *hortor, vereor, sequor, ōrdior.*
  2. Write out in full the Pres. Indic. of *hortor, vereor, sequor, ōrdior.*
  3. Write out the Fut. Indic. Active and Passive of *regō* and the Fut. Indic. of *sequor.*
  4. Write the same as in 3 for *audiō* and *ōrdior.*

### C. JULIUS CAESAR

Born 100 B.C. Consul 59 B.C. Joined Pompey and Crassus in the First Triumvirate. Campaigns in Gaul, Germany, and Britain, 58-49 B.C.

Quarrel with Pompey and the Senate. Battle of Pharsalia, 48 B.C. Caesar sole master of the Roman Empire. Appointed Dictator for ten years. Assassinated 44 B.C.

#### [LATINE]

C. Jūlius Caesar, annō urbis conditae sēscentēsīmō quinquāgēsīmō quārtō nātus est. Annōs quadrāgintā ūnum nātus, cōsul creatus est. Cum Pompēiō et Crassō in societātem inīit; novem circiter annōs prōcōsul bellum in Galliā, Britannīā, Germāniā gerēbat.

Posteā, ubi Pompēius et senātus ei bellum indixērunt, exercitum in Italiā dūxit; inimicōs superāvit. Post quattuor annōs ipse ā cōjūrātōribus occisus est.

LESSON LVI

DEPONENT VERBS

(Continued)

THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

INDICATIVE MOOD

I	II	III	IV
cōnor, -āris, etc.	vereor, -ēris, etc.	sequor, -ēris, etc.	ōrdior, -īris, etc.
cōnābar	verēbar	sequēbar	ōrdiēbar
cōnābor	verēbor	sequar, -ēris, etc.	ōrdiar, -iēris, etc.
cōnātus sum	verītus sum	secūtus sum	ōrsus sum
cōnātus eram	verītus eram	secūtus eram	ōrsus eram
cōnātus erō	verītus erō	secūtus erō	ōrsus erō

See Passive Voice of vocō, moneō, regō, audiō, page 166.

IMPERATIVE MOOD

<i>Pres.</i> cōnāre, -āmini	<i>Pres.</i> verēre, -ēmini	<i>Pres.</i> sequere, -imini	<i>Pres.</i> ōrdire, -imini
<i>Fut.</i> cōnātor, etc.	<i>Fut.</i> verētor, etc.	<i>Fut.</i> sequitor, etc.	<i>Fut.</i> ōrditor, etc.

CAPIŌ DEPONENT VERBS

patior, pati passus, I suffer, allow

INDICATIVE

patior, -ēris, -itur, etc.  
 patiēbar  
 patiar, -iēris, -iētur, etc.  
 passus sum, etc.

IMPERATIVE

*Pres.* patere, -imini  
*Fut.* patitor, etc.

## SEMI-DEPONENTS

**audeō**, -ēre, ausus, *dare*.      **soleō**, -ēre, solitus, *accustomed*.  
**gaudeō**, -ēre, gavisus, *rejoice*.      **fidō**, -ere, fīsus, *trust, rely upon*.

These verbs are Deponent in the Perfect Tenses only.

## LIST OF DEPONENT VERBS

## FIRST CONJUGATION

**arbitror**, -āri, -ātus, *think*.      **moror**, -āri, morātus, *delay*.  
**hortor**, -āri, hortātus, *exhort*.      **miror**, -āri, mirātus, *admire*.  
**cunctor**, -āri, cunctātus, *hesitate*.

## SECOND CONJUGATION

**polliceor**, -ērī, pollicitus, *promise*.      **videor**, -ērī, visus, *seem (practically*  
**confiteor**, -ērī, cōfessus, *confess*.      *a Deponent in meaning)*.  
**misereor**, -ērī, miseritus, *pity (Governs the Gen.)*.      **videor** also = *am seen*.

## THIRD CONJUGATION

**loquor**, -i, locūtus, *speak*.      **utor**, -i, ūsus, *use (Governs the Abl.)*.  
**queror**, -i, questus, *complain*.      **nāscor**, -i, nātus, *am born*.  
**proficiscor**, -i, profectus, *set out*.      **nanciscor**, -i, nactus, *find, obtain*.

LIKE **Capitō**

**prōgredior**, -i, prōgressus, *advance*.      **morior**, -i, mortuus, *die*.  
Also, **patior**, *suffer*.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION

**experior**, -iri, expertus, *make trial, test*.      **mētior**, -iri, mēsus, *measure*.  
**potior**, -iri, potitus, *gain possession (Governs the Abl.)*.      **mentior**, -iri, mentitus, *lie, speak falsely*.  
**orior**, -iri, ortus, *arise*.

NOTE. — **Orior** takes some forms of the Third Conj.: **orēria, oritur**.  
Distinguish **queror**, *complain*, from **quaerō**, *ask*.

## EXERCISE

4. 1. Cōnābimur loquī ; ab initiō ōrdiēmur.
  2. Verēri neque audēre vidētur.
  3. Nunc sequeris ; mox nōn sequēris.
  4. Gallī Caesarī obsidēs polliciti sunt.
  5. Paucōs diēs in eā regiōne morātur.
  6. Questus est quod obsidēs, quōs polliciti erant,  
nōn dederant.
  7. Quaesiit eōrum sententiam.
  8. Queritur, quaerit ; quereris, quaerēs, querēris.
  9. Nōne queri vidēris, Caesar ?
  10. Dē hīs rēbus cum lēgātis loquēmur.
  11. Rhēnus fluvius ex Alpibus oritur.
  12. Principēs in castris colloquēbantur.
  13. Queruntur, quaerunt ; morātur, moritur, mori-  
riētur.
- B.*
1. They will attempt to set out.
  2. He obtained suitable weather.
  3. A very great storm is arising ; has arisen.
  4. He tells many lies (*he lies many things*).
  5. They seem to suspect.
  6. Why do you hesitate, soldiers ? Leap down.
  7. Thou speakest ; we suffer ; they begin ; he confesses.
  8. They delay ; they die ; he complains ; he will complain.
  9. He dares ; he hears ; he was daring ; he will dare ; he  
will hear.
  10. He has dared ; he has heard ; they rejoice ; they had  
rejoiced.
  11. Follow (thou) ; follow (ye) ; dare (thou) ; dare (ye) ;  
to speak ; speak (thou) ; speak (ye).
  12. He exhorts them.
  13. They will set out for home.
  14. He fears an uprising (*mōtus, -ūs*) of the Gauls.



BRITISH WARRIORS

## READING LESSON

## CAESAR'S LANDING IN BRITAIN

1. Caesar ipse cum primis nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus hostium cōpiās armātās cōspexit. Cūjus locī haec erat nātūra. Montibus angustis mare continēbātur. Ex locis superiōribus etiam ad litus tēlum adigī poterat. Locus ad ēgrediendū<sup>1</sup> nēquāquam idōneus erat. Caesar igitur reliquās nāvēs in ancoris ad hōram nōnam exspectāvit; tum ab eō locō circiter millia passuum septem prōgressus est. Reliquae nāvēs, quae equitēs trānsportā-

<sup>1</sup> Gerund of ēgredior, for disembarking, see page 216.



bant, nōn ad insulam pervēnērunt sed tempestāte ad continentem rējectae sunt.

2. At barbarī, quī cōsiliū ejus cognōverant, equitātum et essedāriōs praemiserant et cum expectābant. Ubi Rōmānī ēgredi cōnātī sunt, illī eōs prohibēbant. Ex aridō enim in aquam prōgrediēbantur, tēla audācter coniciēbant, equōs incitābant. Māgna erat difficultās Rōmānōrum. His enim omnibus rēbus perterritī sunt neque pristinō studiō ūtēbantur. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quarum speciēs erat barbaris inūsitiōr, rēmīs incitārī et ad dextrum latus hostium cōstituī jussit. Barbarī, nāvium figurā et rēmōrum mōtū perterritī, pedem rettulērunt.<sup>1</sup> Aquilifer legiōnis decimae māgnā vōce "Dēsilite," inquit, "militēs, nisi vultis<sup>2</sup> aquilam hostibus prōdere." Tum ē nāvī sē ējēcit et sīgnum ad hostēs inferre<sup>3</sup> incēpit. Reliquī eum sequēbantur et hostibus appropinquāvērunt.

### NEW WORDS

Attingō, ibi, armātus, contineō, etiam, adigō, nēquāquam, ēgredior, reliquus, tum, perveniō, rēiciō, essedārius, praemittō, prōgredior, aridus, incitō, difficultās, perterreō, pristinus, studium, animadvertō, mūsitātus, cōstituō, mōtus (-ūs), re-ferō, prōdō, ēiciō, inferō, appropinquō.

### SAMPLES OF PARSING

**Ipse** (page 178, line 1): Intensive Pron.; Nom., Sing., Mas.; in apposition to the subject *Caesar*.

**Cōspexit** (line 3): Verb, cōspiciō, ěre, -spexī, -spectum; Perf. Indic., Act., 3 Sing.; agreeing with the subject *Caesar*.

**Order of Parsing**:—(1) General description; (2) Particular statement of inflectional form; (3) Syntax or Relation.

<sup>1</sup> See *referō*.

<sup>2</sup> See *volō, velle*.

<sup>3</sup> Pres. Inf. of *inferō*.

## LESSON LVII

## PARTICIPLES

A Participle is a Verbal Adjective.

1. It does **not assert**, but it may govern an object, and otherwise has the force of the Verb. It is a **Verbal word** but **not a Verb**.

2. As a **descriptive word or modifier**, it is attached to a noun or pronoun. Hence it is of the nature of an **Adjective**, is **declined** and **agrees** in case, number and gender with the word modified, *e.g.* :—

**Sōlem orientem vidī**, *I saw the sun rising.*

**Orientem** here is a participle agreeing with **sōlem** in the Acc. Sing. Mas.

## SCHEME OF PARTICIPLES

**Vocō**, *call*

Pres. Stem, **Vocā-**; Supine Stem, **Vocāt-**

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	<b>vocā ns</b> , ( <i>while</i> ) <i>calling.</i>	_____
<i>Perf.</i>	_____	<b>vocāt us</b> , (1) <i>called.</i> (2) <i>having been called.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<b>vocāt ūrus</b> , ( <i>when</i> ) <i>about to call</i>	_____

1. Notice that the following are lacking in Latin: —

Perfect Active Participle = *having called*.

Present Passive Participle = *(while) being called*.

Future Passive Participle = *(when) about to be called*.

2. The so-called Present Participle does not necessarily designate present time. It represents an action as **going on (not yet completed) et whatever time the sentence refers to**, whether that be past, present or future, as

*vidī sōlem orientem, I saw the sun rising, — PAST.*

*videō sōlem orientem, I see the sun rising, — PRESENT.*

*videbō eōlem orientem, I shall see the sun rising, — FUTURE.*

A more accurate name would be **Imperfect Participle**.

3. The **Perfect Participle** represents something as **completed before the time designated** by the principal verb.
4. The **Future Participle** represents something as **expected to take place after the time designated** by the principal verb.

#### The Formation of Participles

5. The **Present Participle Active** is formed from the **Present Stem (vocā) + ns**, and is declined **vocāns**, Gen. **vocantis** (see *prūdēns*, page 76).

6. The **Future Participle Active** is formed from the **Supine Stem (vocāt) + ūrus, -a, -um**, declined like **bonus**.

7. The **Perfect Participle Passive** is formed from the **Supine Stem (vocāt) + us, -a, -um**, declined like **bonus**.

#### EXERCISE

- A. 1. *Dāns, datus, datūrus; militēs dantēs; librī datī; ducēs datūrī.*
2. *Puerum stantem vidī. Puerōsne stantēs vidistī?*

3. Cum puerō stante; cum puerīs stantibus collocūtus est.
  4. Arma militum pugnantium.
  5. Mihi vocantī nōn respondit. Ducibus vocantibus nōn respondētis.
  6. Rem nūntiātam audīvī. Rēs nūntiātās audiēs.
  7. Militēs pugnātūrī deōs ōrābant.
  8. Militēs pugnātūrōs Caesar hortātus est.
  9. Vōcem Caesaris laudantis audiēbant.
- B.*
1. He saw the cavalry (*plur.*) fighting.
  2. With the guards standing in the camp.
  3. They were frightened by the affair reported.
  4. (When) about to prepare forces, they sent out (*dīmittō*) messengers.
  5. They wept (when) begging peace (use *ōrō*).
  6. The words of the envoys imploring Caesar were heard.
  7. They made no reply to his question (say *They replied nothing to him asking*), (*rogō*).
  8. He did not believe them (when) reporting these things (*crēdō governs the Dat.*).
  9. Of the boys standing. They heard him praising.
  10. In the city freed by him; of the city freed.

#### Active Periphrastic Conjugation

The simple future is *vocābō*, *I shall call*.

The periphrastic ("round-about") future is: —

*vocātūrus sum*, *I am about to (intend to) call*.

*vocātūrus eram*, *I was about to (intended to) call*.

*vocātūrus erō*, *I shall be about to call*.

## EXERCISE

1. The soldiers intended to fight.
2. The ambassadors intend to ask peace.
3. Caesar does not intend to grant (give) peace.
4. The queen had intended to free the islands.
5. I heard the envoys asking peace.
6. Caesar pitied them (*Gen.*) (when) asking peace.
7. He granted the peace asked by the Gauls.
8. The scouts were about to report to Caesar.
9. They will fight; they are going-to-fight.



SACRIFICE TO BACCHUS

## LESSON LVIII

## PARTICIPLES

(Continued)

Study the following schemes of Participles:—

## TRANSITIVE VERBS

**Moneō, warn, advise****Regō, rule**Pres. Stem, **monē-**; Supine Stem,  
**monit-**Pres. Stem, **reg-** (**rege**); Su-  
pine Stem, **rēct-**

## PARTICIPLES

## PARTICIPLES

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	<b>monē ns</b>	—	<b>regē ns</b>	—
<i>Perf.</i>	—	<b>monit -us</b>	—	<b>rēct -us</b>
<i>Fut.</i>	<b>monit -ūrus</b>	—	<b>rēct -ūrus</b>	—

**Vocāns, vocātūrus, vocātus** have been given on page 181.**Audiō (ire), hear****Capiō (ere), take**Pres. Stem, **audi-**; Supine Stem,  
**audit-**Pres. Stem, **capī-**; Supine  
Stem, **capt-**

## PARTICIPLES

## PARTICIPLES

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	<b>audiē ns</b>	—	<b>capīē ns</b>	—
<i>Perf.</i>	—	<b>audit -us</b>	—	<b>capt -us</b>
<i>Fut.</i>	<b>audit -ūrus</b>	—	<b>capt -ūrus</b>	—

## INTRANSITIVE VERBS

**Veniō, come**Pres. Stem. **veni-**; Supine Stem. **vent-**

## PARTICIPLES

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	<b>venīē ns</b>	—
<i>Perf.</i>	—	} none except in the impersonal <b>ventum est</b>
<i>Fut.</i>	<b>vent -ūrus</b>	

Observe the four endings of Present Participles according to the four Conjugations: —

1	2	3	4
-āns	-ēns	-ēns ( <i>regēns</i> ) but -iēns ( <i>capiēns</i> )	-iēns
based upon the Pres. Stems,			
vocā-	monē-	reg- ( <i>rege-</i> ) capi- ( <i>capie-</i> )	audi- ( <i>audie-</i> )

Form Present Participles from: —

<b>faciō</b>	<b>teneō</b>	<b>pugnō</b>
<b>nūntiō</b>	<b>creō (-āre)</b>	<b>mittō</b>
<b>sentīō</b>	<b>videō</b>	<b>servō</b>
<b>spoliō (-āre)</b>	<b>pāreō</b>	<b>vincō</b>
<b>cōnspicīō</b>	<b>parō</b>	<b>vinciō</b>
<b>mūniō</b>	<b>parcō</b>	<b>coniciō (-ere)</b>
<b>jubeō</b>	<b>pariō (-ere)</b>	<b>cognōscō</b>

## EXERCISE

A. Give Latin for:—

1. Taken, heard, calling, seeing, seen.
2. Warning, about to rule, hearing.
3. Given, giving, about to take, coming.

4. I saw the cities taken by the enemy.
5. We saw the enemy taking the city.
6. She was about to hear; they were about to rule; the enemy intend to take.

B. 1. Write out the principal parts of *teneō, vincō, videō, mittō, jubeō, gerō, faciō, petō, oōgō, sentiō, pōnō, relinquo, servō, mūniō*.

2. Write a scheme of participles for each of the foregoing verbs.

C. Translate the following and account for the case of every participle: —

1. Multī, Galliam vincentēs, interfectī sunt.
2. Litterās ā tē missās accēpī.
3. Lēgātī ā Gallīs missī pācem ā Caesare petivērunt.
4. Caesar lēgātōs pācem petentēs audivit.
5. Pācem Gallīs petentibus dedit; pācem petitam dedit.
6. Militēs, ā duce jussī, castra posuērunt.
7. Hostēs impetum in eōs, castra pōnentēs, fēcērunt.
8. Caesar hostēs impetum facientēs subitō adortus est.
9. Britannī celeritātem Rōmānōrum sentientēs pedem rettulērunt (*referō*).
10. Gallia victa est; manūs virginis sunt vinetae.

- D. 1. The difficulties of Caesar (when) conquering Gaul were great.
2. Many soldiers were killed (when) waging war in Gaul.
3. They intended to send ambassadors and seek peace.
4. I have received the books sent to me by them.



5. The Gauls made an attack upon the Romans (as the latter were) fortifying camp.
6. To me seeking; by him asking; of him ordering.
7. In the town taken; of the Romans taking.
8. Out of the city seen; the enemy seeing Caesar; they were about to see.
9. Hercules freed the maiden bound by the king.
10. Caesar spared the Gauls (*Dat.*) (when) conquered.

*E. Translate by a participle, where possible, or indicate where such translation is impossible: —*

1. Seeing, having seen, seen, about to be seen.
2. About to send, having been sent, (while) being sent, sending, having sent, being (already) sent.
3. Waging, having waged, (when) about to wage, (while) being waged, (already) waged, about to be waged.
4. Given, giving, having given, having been given, (when) about to give.



SCĀLAE

## LESSON LIX

## PARTICIPLES OF DEPONENT VERBS

*Cōnor, attempt*

## PARTICIPLES

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>cōnāns, attempting.</i>	none
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>cōnātus, having attempted</i>	none
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>cōnātūrus, about to attempt</i>	none

1. In Deponent Verbs, the Present Participle and the Future Participle are taken from the Active Conjugation.
2. The Perfect Participle is a pure Deponent: Passive in form, Active in meaning.
3. Many Deponent Verbs show a tendency to avoid the Present Participle: —

*veritus, fearing (= having conceived fear) — not verēns.*

*arbitrātus, thinking — not arbitrāns.*

*ūsus, using — not ūtēns.*

*suspiciātus, suspecting — not suspiciāns.*

## EXERCISE

- A. 1. Write schemes of participles for —

*versor, sequor, potior, prōgredior, morior, moror,*  
*polliceor, proficiscor.*

Translate: —

2. *Prōgressus, moritūrus, sequēns, pollicitus, pollicitūrus, prōgrediēns.*
3. *Prōgressūrī erant; militēs prōgredientēs.*

4. Caesar proficiscēns castra mūniri jussit.
5. Impetum in Rōmānōs ē nāvibus ēgredientēs fecērunt', impetum in Rōmānōs ēgressōs fecērunt.
6. Caesar, impetum veritus, praesidium reliquit.
7. Meritūri tē salūtāmus, Caesar.

B. Translate where possible, otherwise indicate: —

1. Having feared, having been followed, having followed, (while) exhorting, having exhorted, (when) about to exhort.
2. (While) trying, having been tried, having tried.
3. (When) dying, (when) about to die, having died.
4. Caesar, thinking the place suitable, pitched camp (say *having thought*).
5. They came, using the same guides (say *having made use of*). (*Utor* governs the Abl.)
6. The Gauls, fearing Caesar, sought peace (*having feared*).
7. Having exhorted the soldiers, Caesar gave the signal.
8. Caesar, suspecting a renewal of the war (*rebelliō*), sent cohorts.



ARIÈS

## LESSON LX

## ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

1. The ordinary relations of a Noun or Pronoun, are as follows: —

As Subject of a Verb.

Object of a Verb.

Object of a Preposition.

Predicate Nominative.

Predicate Objective (Accus.).

Adverbial Objective of Extent, &c.

Appositive.

In the following sentence, the noun has none of the ordinary **case-deciding relations**; it is, in a sense, “*cut loose*,” and is said to be **absolute** (*ab, from; solvō, I loose*): —

*The sun rising, they set out (= as the sun was rising, etc.).*

In English the noun “*sun*” is said to be in the **Nominative Absolute**: it is modified by the participle “*rising*,” but has none of the ordinary relations.

The English **Nominative Absolute** is represented in Latin by the **Ablative Absolute**, *e.g.*: —

*Sōle oriente, profecti sunt.*

Notice that the participial modifier agrees with its noun. These together form an **Absolute Phrase**, denoting some adverbial notion of *time, cause, etc.*

*The sun rising*, may mean { (1) *when (or as) the sun was rising.*  
(2) *because the sun was rising.*

2. The same may be used with a Perfect Participle, as : —

**Sōle ortō, profecti sunt,** *the sun having risen, they set out.*

3. A common use of the Ablative Absolute is in such phrases as : —

**Mariō cōnsule** { *Marius (being) consul,*  
*in the consulship of Marius,*  
*when Marius was consul.*

**tē duce** { *you (being) leader,*  
*under your leadership,*  
*with you as leader.*

There is **no present participle of the verb "sum."**

Hence "*being*" is not expressed in Latin.

Compare

**tē invitō** { *you (being) unwilling,*  
*ag. inst. your will,*  
*without your consent.*

**EXERCISE**

- A. 1. The rising sun was seen.  
 2. We saw the light (*lux*) of the rising sun.  
 3. They saw the rising sun.  
 4. They were pleased (*dēlectō*) with the rising sun.  
 5. As the sun rose, they embarked (*nāvem cōscedō*).  
 6. He set out as the stars were rising.  
 7. He set out when the stars had risen ("*ut* : stars *having risen*").  
 8. He was born in the consulship of Pompeius and Crassus.  
 9. The Romans, under the leadership of Caesar, conquered Gaul.
- B. 1. *Signō datō, milites proelium commiserunt.*  
 2. *Castris munitis, legio quietem cepit.*

3. Rē nūntiātā, omnem equitātum mīsīt.
4. Cōsulēs creatī ad exercitum profectī sunt.
5. Cōsulibus creatīs, dux ad exercitum profectus est.
6. Lēgātī ā Gallīs missī pācem petivērunt.
7. Lēgātīs missīs, pācem petivērunt Gallī.
8. Gallīs, Dīvitiacō petente, pācem dedit.
9. Oppidum occupāvit, nūllō resistente.
10. Castrīs, Caesare invitō, ēgressī sunt.
11. Catilīna, Cieerōne cōsule, conjūrātiōnem fēcīt.

## LESSON LXI

## PERFECT PARTICIPLE PASSIVE AND THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

1. It has been noted that (except in Deponent Verbs) Latin lacks a Perfect Active Participle. Thus there is no literal translation for : —

1. *Having taken the city*, he returned home.
2. *Having given the signal*, he joined battle.
3. *Having seen the enemy*, the scouts reported.

The nearest Latin would mean : —

1. *The city having been taken*, he returned.
  2. *The signal having been given*, he joined battle.
  3. *The scouts, the enemy having been seen*, reported.
- Here *city, signal, enemy*, would be **absolute**.

In Latin, thus : —

1. U: he captā, domum revertitur.
2. Signō datō, proclium commisit.
3. Explōrātōrēs, hostibus vīsīs, Caesarī rem nūntiāvērunt.

2. Hence with Perfect Participles the Ablative Absolute is a very common construction, owing simply to the lack of a Perfect Active Participle. In most cases a literal translation into English of a Perfect Passive Participle thus used, would be very awkward, as in No. 3 above. In such cases, it is better to render the meaning in *English* by the corresponding Perfect Active Participle, or by a "when" clause.

3. The English Present Participles loosely used.

In such cases as the following, English uses the present participle where the perfect is meant: —

1. *Throwing away their javelins, they made a charge,*  
= *Having thrown away, etc., not (while) throwing.*
2. *Sending ambassadors, they asked peace,*  
= *Having sent, etc., not (while) sending.*

Latin: —

1. *Tēlis abjectis, impetum fecerunt.*
2. *Lēgātis missis, pācsm petiverunt.*

4. Note that there is no difficulty in regard to Dependent Perfect Participles, the construction being the same as in English, as: —

1. *Caesar, legionem hortatus, signum dedit.*  
*Caesar, having exhorted the legion (not legione hortatā),*  
*gave the signal.*

*Hortatus* agrees with the subject *Caesar*.

EXERCISE

1. *Caesar, rē audītā, ad flūmen iter fecit.*
2. *Nāvibus cōspectis, ad litus properābant.*
3. *Hostēs, māgnis cōpiis coāctis, ad castra vēnerunt.*
4. *Caesar, septem millia passuum prōgressus, nāvēs cōstituit.*

5. Caesare ad eum locum prōgressō, Britannī etiam eōdem cum equitibus contendēbant.
6. Gallīs obsidēs pollicitīs, Caesar exercitum redūxit
7. Gallī, obsidēs pollicitī, ea quae rogāverant impetrāvērunt.
8. Gallīs (*Dat.*) pācem petentibus obsidēs imperāvit.
9. Lēgātī, obsidēs pollicitī, ad snōs revertuntur.
10. Caesar, Volusēnum idōneum arbitrātus, ad Britanniam praemisit.

B. Translate the following participles, noting the difference between the Deponent Perfect and the Passive Perfect: —

victus	morātus	locūtus
arbitrātus	vulnerātus	dictus
missus	cōnātus	pollicitus
ēgressus	profectus	cunctātus

- C. 1. The soldiers, having landed, were making their way (*contendō*) towards the camp.
2. When the soldiers had landed, the Gauls made an attack. (Say, "*the soldiers having landed.*")
3. Caesar, suspecting these things, did not grant peace.
4. On seeing the army, they fled.
5. On learning these things, they sent envoys concerning peace.
6. Being driven from Rome, he went to Athens.
7. Having driven the conspirators out of the city, Cicero made a second (*alter*) speech.
8. Having delivered the speech (*ōrātiōnem habēō*), he dismissed the assembly.
9. Having said these things, he sat down.

Use (a) *dicō*, (b) *loquor*.



*D. Translate : —*

1. Having seen the city.
2. Having waged war.
3. Having conquered Gaul.
4. Having wounded several.
5. Having received few wounds.
6. Having sought peace.
7. Having drawn up a line of battle.
8. Having led his army.
9. The cavalry, having followed the Gauls, killed many.
10. They intended to follow.
11. He saw them following.
12. Leaving a guard, he hastened towards the enemy.

**videō, -ēre, vidī, visum**

1. *Translate (or indicate where translation is impossible) : —*

- |                   |                            |
|-------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. seen           | 4. (while) being seen      |
| 2. having seen    | 5. (when) about to see     |
| 3. (while) seeing | 6. (when) about to be seen |

2. *Write the Latin for the above in the form of a scheme, showing the blanks (see page 184).*

3. *Write a similar exercise based upon scribō, write; dō, give.*

THE CHIEF ROMAN MAGISTRATES

Consuls	Censor
Praetors	Pontifex Maximus
Quaestors	Tribune of the Plebs
Aediles	(Dictator, occasional)

*(These words are Anglicized. Use Eng. pronunciation.)*

## READING LESSONS

**The Greedy Dog**

Canis olim per flumen carnem ore ferens natābat, cum subitō simulācrum suum sicut in speculō in aquā tranquillā cōspexit. Alteram praedam ab alterō caue ferrī arbitrātus, ēripere voluit. Spēs tamen eum fefellit; dum enim aliēnō cibō potiri cōnātur, eum quem suō ore tenēbat dīmisit. Avidum canem postea omnēs eum appellat it.

*Is quī aliēnum appetit saepe suum amittit.*

Distinguish **alius** from **aliēnus**. Notice the **Vivid Present** with **dum**, *while*.

**Fefellit**, see **fallō**. **Simulācrum**, *image, likeness*. **Speculum**, *mirror*.

Translate **spēs eum fefellit** idiomatically.

**The Sacred Geese**

Galli olim Rōmani petierunt. Exercitum Rōmānum apud Alliam fluvium superāvērunt et victōrēs ad urbem pervēnērunt. Adventū eōrum cognitō, Rōmāna juventūs cum Mānliō in arcem, quae in monte Capitōlinō posita est, fūgit; seniōrēs vērō domōs regressi adventum Gallōrum expectābant. Hi omnēs in sēdibus suis trucidāti<sup>1</sup> sunt.

Galli deinde impetum facere in arcem statuunt. Nocte sublūstri,<sup>2</sup> alii aliōs<sup>3</sup> trahentēs, in summum saxum evāsērunt. Nōn cūstōdēs solum fefellērunt sed nē canēs quidem excitāvērunt. Nōn ānserēs<sup>4</sup> tamen fefellērunt, quibus<sup>5</sup> in summā inopiā<sup>6</sup> Rōmāni abstinerant, quia aves erant Jūnōnis sacrae. Nauque clangōre eārum ālārumque crepitū<sup>7</sup> excitātus est Mānlius. Galli deinde facile dēturbantur.

<sup>1</sup> **trucidō**, -āre, *slaughter, butcher*. <sup>2</sup> **sublūstris**, -e, *rather dark*. See page 109; 4. <sup>3</sup> **ānser**, -erie, f., *goose*. <sup>4</sup> **ānser**, -erie, f., *goose*. <sup>5</sup> Abl. of Separation, *from*, etc. <sup>6</sup> **inopiā**, *want, scarcity*. <sup>7</sup> **crepitus**, -ūs, *noise, clapping, flapping*.



THE SACRED GESE

## INFINITIVES

## LESSON LXII

## INFINITIVES

*Sum, I am*Pres. Stem, **es-**; Perf. Stem, **fu-**; Fut. Part. **fut-ūrus**

## INFINITIVES

<i>Pres.</i>	<b>esse</b> , to be.
<i>Perf.</i>	<b>fu-isse</b> , to have been.
<i>Fut.</i>	<b>fut-ūrus esse</b> , to be about to be.

**fore** is often used instead of **futūrus esse**.*Vocō, I call*Pres. Stem, **vocā-**; Perf. Stem, **vocāv-**; Supine Stem, **vocāt-**

## INFINITIVES

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	<b>vocāre</b> , to call	<b>vocārī</b> , to be called
<i>Perf.</i>	<b>vocāv-isse</b> , to have called	<b>vocāt-us esse</b> , to have been called
<i>Fut.</i>	<b>vocāt-ūrus esse</b> , to be about to call	<b>vocāt-um irī</b> , to be about to be called

(Fut. Pass. **vocātum irī** is the Supine + the Pres. Inf. Pass. of **eō**, *I go*. The phrase cannot be translated literally.)*Moneō, I call**Regō, I rule*Pres. Stem, **monē-**; Perf. Stem, **monu-**; Supine Stem, **monit-**; Pres. Stem, **reg-**; Perf. Stem, **rēx-**; Supine Stem, **rēct-**

INFINITIVES

INFINITIVES

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	monē-re	monē-ri	rege-re	reg-ī
<i>Perf.</i>	monu-isse	monit-us esse	rēx-isse	rēct-us esse
<i>Fut.</i>	monit-ūrus esse	monit-um iri	rēct-ūrus esse	rēct-um iri

*Audiō, I hear*

*Capiō, I take*

Pres. Stem, **audi-**; Perf. Stem, **audiv-**; Supine Stem, **audit-**

Pres. Stem, **cap(e-)**; Perf. Stem, **cēp-**; Supine Stem, **capt-**

INFINITIVES

INFINITIVES

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	audi-re	audi-ri	cape-re	cap-ī
<i>Perf.</i>	audiv-isse	sudit-us esse	cēp-isse	cspt-us esse
<i>Fut.</i>	sudit-ūrus esse	sudit-um iri	cspt-ūrus esse	capt-um iri

An Infinitive used as a Substantive is neuter, as: —  
*Dulce est prō patriā mori, It is sweet to die for one's country.*

EXERCISE

- A. 1. Regere, regī, sequī; rēctus esse, secūtus esse; rēxisse.
2. Audīri, mentīri; auditus esse, audīre, auditum iri.
3. Capī, cēpī, cape; cēpisse, captus esse.
4. Vocātus, vocātus esse, captūrus esse, captūrus.
5. Captus, captum iri, captus esse, captūrus erat.
6. Audīre vidētur; sequī vidēbantur; vocāvisse videntur.
7. Oppidum capere vult; oppidum capī vult.

8. Urbem captūrī esse vidēmur.
9. Multōs annōs rēxisse dīcitur.
10. Castra paucīs diēbus expugnātūrī esse videntur.
11. Haec legiō urbem captūra esse vīsa est.
12. Hae legiōnēs captūrae esse vīsaē sunt.
13. Pueris grātum est lūdere.

- B. 1. To rule; to be ruled; to have ruled; to have been ruled.
2. To be called; to be about-to-call; to be about-to-be-called.
3. To have heard; the voices seem to have been heard.
4. The soldiers are thought to have been advised.
5. They did not seem to be likely to (*about to*) capture the heights.
6. The heights seemed to have been taken.
7. Take thou; I have taken; to be taken; to have taken.
8. To advise; to be advised; to rule; to be ruled.
9. Having been heard; to have been heard; about to hear; to be about to hear; to have heard.
10. It is pleasant to hear sweet songs.
11. To give is better than to receive.
12. They seem to have been wise; to be about to be free.

## FABLE

## THE FOX AND THE TRAGIC MASK

Persōnam tragicam forte vulpēs vīderat,  
 "O quanta speciēs" inquit "cerebrum nōn habet!"  
 Hōc illīs dictum est, quibus honōrem et glōriam  
 Fortūna tribuit, sēsum commūnem abstulit.

LESSON LXIII

THE FORMATION OF INFINITIVES

PRESENT

ACTIVE

**vocā-re, monē-re, rege-re, audī-re.**

PASSIVE

**vocā-rī, monē-rī, reg-I, audī-rī,**

Based upon the **Present Stems, vocā-, monē-, reg- (rege-); audī-**.

Note the form, **reg-I**, as compared with the others.

PERFECT

ACTIVE

**vocāv-isse, monu-isse, rēx-isse, audīv-isse;**  
Based upon **Perf. Stem.**

PASSIVE

**vocātus esse, monitus esse, rēctus esse, audītus esse;**  
**Perf. Passive Participle (from Supine Stem) + esse.**

FUTURE

ACTIVE

**vocātūrus esse, etc. Future Participle Active (from Supine Stem) + esse.**

PASSIVE

**vocātum irī, etc. Supine of Purpose + Irī (Pres. Pass. Infin. of eō, go).**

1. The Future Passive Infinitive must be translated mechanically, the nearest possible literal translation for **vocātum irī** being: —

*“the-act-of-going to-be-performed towards-calling.”*

(Supine of Purpose with a verb of motion.)

Infinitives of **videō** :—

Prin. Parts, **videō**, **-ēre**, **vidi**, **visum**, *see*.

Stems, **vidē-**, **vid-**, **vis-**.

INFINITIVES

vidē-re	vidē-ri
vid-isse	vis-us esse
vis-ūrus esse	vis-um iri

Similarly form Infinitives from

**vincō**, **-ere**, **vici**, **victum**, *conquer*.

Stems, **vinc-**, **vicio-**, **vict-**.

**mitto**, **-ere**, **misi**, **missum**, *send*.

Stems, **mitt-**, **mis-**, **miss-**.

**cognōscō**, **-ere**, **cognōvi**, **cognitum**, *ascertain*.

Stems, **cognōsc-**, **cognōv-**, **cognit-**.

EXERCISE

A. Write out the Principal Parts and Stems of the following verbs and make for each a table (a) of Participles, (b) of Infinitives :—

**creō**, **pōnō**, **jubeō**, **spoliō**, **veniō** (*active only*), **cōspiciō**, **relinquō**, **respondeō**, **pellō**, **gerō**, **dō**.

B. Translate :—

1. Cognōvisse, cognōscēns, cognitus, cognitum iri, cognōscēi, cognitūrus, cognitūrus esse.
2. Mitti, misi, missi sunt; lēgātis missis; lēgātī missi esse videntur; lēgātōs misisse vidētur.
3. Magnō cum exercitū vēnisse existimātur.
4. Ventūrī esse dicuntur.
5. Omnēs bonōs sapientēsque civitate pepulisse visi sunt.



6. Urbe pulsī esse cīvēs vidēbantur.
7. Omnibus impedimentis relictis; omnia impedimenta relinquit jussit.

C. *Translate*:—

1. He ordered camp to be pitched; they seem to have pitched.
2. To be robbed, to have created, to be seen, to have seen, to have been seen, seen.
3. To have sent, to be sent, sent (*participle*), to have been sent.
4. Writing, written, to write, to be written, to have written, to be about to write, to be about to be written.
5. Having waged war; the Romans (while) waging war; they seem to be waging; they seem to have waged.
6. Having given the signal; of the leader (when) giving; he is thought to have given; they stood still (*cōsistō*) (when) about to give; she seemed to be about to give.
7. Having learnt these things, he sent soldiers.
8. They believed him to have learnt.
9. We thought them to be coming, to be sending, to have sent, to be sent, to have been sent.
10. He declared himself to have saved his country. -  
(What noun clause could be substituted for *himself to have*, etc.?)

**Proverbs**

*Ars longa; vīta brevis.*

*Verbum sapientii sat (verb. sap.).*

*Nōn sine pu'vere palma.*

*Vōx populī vōx Deī.*

## LESSON LXIV

## THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE

Verbs signifying **Say, Think, Know, Hear, See, Believe,** etc., turn an English *that* clause into a Latin Infinitive phrase. The Subject of the Infinitive is put in the Accusative Case.

(This construction is used also with such expressions as *vĕrum est, it is true; manifestum est, it is evident.*)

## ENGLISH

## LATIN

He says *that I am rich,* { He says *me to be rich.*  
 { *Dicit mē dīvitē esse.*

(*dīvitē* is a Predicate Adj. agreeing with *mē*, subject of *esse*.)

We know *that he came,* { We know *him to have come.*  
 { *Scimus eum vēnisse.*

I believe *that they will send,* { I believe *them to be about to*  
 { *send.*  
 { *Crēdō eōs missūrōs esse.*

## Tense Values of the Infinitive

It is a mistake to represent the *time values* of the Tenses of the Infinitive by the terms Present, Past and Future.

1. Examine the following : —

*Eum stāre aciō* = *I know him to be (now) standing,*  
*that he is standing.*  
*that he stands.*

*Eum stāre aciōbam* = *I knew him to be (then) standing,*  
*that he was standing,*  
*that he (then) stood.*

**Eum stāre sciam** = *I shall know him to be standing, that he is (then) standing.*

Notice that in all these cases the so-called **Present Infinitive** represents the **same time** as that referred to by the **governing verb**, whether that be **present, past, or future**.

2. Compare the following: —

**Dixit sē venire** = *He said that he was (then) coming.*

**Dixit sē vēnisse** = *He said that he had come (himself to have come, at some previous time).*

**Dixit sē ventūrum esse** = *He said that he would come (himself to be about to come afterwards).*

## TENSE VALUES

PRESENT INFINITIVE—	the same time as	} that expressed by the governing verb.
PERFECT INFINITIVE—	time before	
FUTURE INFINITIVE—	time after	

## EXERCISE

*Translate all Infinitive phrases by "that" clauses.*

- A. 1. **Eum patriam servāre crēdimus.**
  2. **Eum patriam servāre crēdidimus.**
  3. **Sē patriam servāvisse dīcit.**
  4. **Sē patriam servāvisse dīxit.**
- (Note the difference between **eum** and **sē**.)
5. **Caesarem pācem datūrum esse arbitrantur.**
  6. **Eum pācem datūrum esse arbitrātī sunt.**
  7. **Eōs oppidum captūrōs esse spērāvit.**
  8. **Urbem captam esse audīvit.**
  9. **Urbem captum irī vidēbant.**
  10. **Explōrātōrēs Caesari nūntiāvērunt hostēs castra expugnāvisse, — impetum in castra facere, — castra ab hostibus oppugnārī, — castra oppugnāta esse, — castra expugnātum irī.**

11. Bonum esse melius est quam dīvitem esse.
12. Bonus esse vult. Bonī fuisse videntur.

- B.*
1. We heard that they were coming, that he had come, that you (*plur.*) would come.
  2. They say they are fighting, fought, will fight.
  3. She said she had been sent.
  4. They saw that the hill was held by the enemy.
  5. They reported that a greater dust was seen.
  6. They reported that they saw, had seen.
  7. We believe they saw, were seen, are seen, will see.
  8. It is true that the city has been taken.
  9. It was evident that they would ask peace.
  10. They believed their country was safe.

- C.* **Acie**m instruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctam, *I form line of battle.*

*Translate : —*

1. Having formed line of battle, they waited.
2. The enemy attacked<sup>1</sup> them (when) forming line of battle.
3. They intended to form.
4. He saw that they were forming, had formed.
5. He learned that line of battle was being formed by them.
6. He believed they would form, that line had been formed, that line would be formed.

<sup>1</sup> *adorior.*

- D.* **Bellum** gerō, -ere, -gessī, gestum, *I wage war.*

*Translate : —*

1. Having waged war, he returned home.
2. Many were killed (while) waging war.
3. It was our intention to wage war.

1. He said they were waging, that he had waged, that many wars had been waged, would be waged.
5. They knew he would wage.
6. We wage, we shall wage; they wage, they will wage.

*Similar exercises may be made from:—*

cōpiās cōgō	pācem petō
castra pōnō	lēgātōs mittō
urbem vidēō	Galliam vincō
etc.	etc.

LESSON LXV

DEPONENT INFINITIVES

	ACTIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	<b>sequī. to follow.</b>
<i>Perf.</i>	<b>secūtus esse, to have followed.</b>
<i>Fut.</i>	<b>secūtūrus esse, to be about to follow.</b>

Similarly:—

cōnārī	verērī	adorīrī
cōnātus esse	veritus esse	adortus esse
cōnātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	adortūrus esse

Notice that the future infinitive of deponent verbs is the active form, not *secūtum īrī*, etc.

EXERCISE

- A. 1. Cognōvit eōs castra pōnere cōnārī.
2. Eī nūntiāvērunt sē hostēs multa millia passuum secūtōs esse.
3. Caesarem sequī vidērunt.

4. Militēs nāvibus ēgressōs esse atque ad castra contendere intellegēbant.

- B. 1. He thought they would follow.  
 2. They said they did not fear (*they denied that they*).  
 3. They saw that the war-ships had advanced.  
 4. He said he would set out next day.  
 5. He perceived that they were hesitating.  
 6. They heard he would send war-ships.  
 7. They perceived that he did not believe these things.  
 8. It was reported that he was setting out; had set out; would set out.

#### Proverbs

1. *Salūs populī suprēma lēx.*
2. *Bona ancilla dīvitiae, domina pessima.*
3. *Puer nōn rēs est sed spēs.*
4. *Quot hominēs tot sententiae.*
5. *Quod nōn opus est asse cārū est.*
6. *Semper inops quicumque cupit.*
7. *Poēta nāscitur, nōn fit.*
8. *Quod scriptōrī clārum, nōnumquam lēctōrī obscurum est.*
9. *Nīl dēspērāndum.*
10. *Dē gustibus nōn est disputāndum.*
11. *Vincit quī sē vincit.*
12. *Possunt quia posse videntur.*

#### Contentment

Multa petentibus  
 Dēsunt multa.

HORACE, *Odes* III, 16.

## LESSON LXVI

## HOPE, PROMISE, UNDERTAKE

Examine the following: —

**Spērō mē visūrum esse, I hope to see.**

(literally, *I hope myself to be about to see, that I shall see.*)

**Spērās tē visūrum esse, Thou hopest to see.**

**Spērant sē visūrōs esse, They hope to see.**

**RULE.** — Verbs signifying *hope, promise, undertake*, where English would have the present infinitive without a pronoun, take in Latin the pronoun with the future infinitive.

This is really equal to a "that" clause; *he promised to = he promised that he would.* Of course **Spērō eum ventūrum esse = I hope (that) he will, etc.**

*He promised to come, Pollicitus est sē ventūrum esse (not venire).*

*They undertook to finish the work, Sē opus cōfectūrōs esse suscipērunt (not cōficere).*

The verb *swear* is really a verb of *promising*.

**spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, hope.**

**polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus, promise.**

**suscipiō, -ere, suscipī, susceptum, undertake.**

**jūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, swear.**

## EXERCISE

- A. 1. Mē (esse) ventūrum spērāvī.
2. Tē missūrum (esse) pollicitus es.
3. Sē scriptūram (esse) pollicita est.

**NOTE.** — The fut. inf. often omits **esse**.

4. *Suscēpimus nōs opus cōfectūrōs.*
  5. *Vōs victūros jūrāvistis.*
  6. *Sē scriptūrās pollicitae sunt.*
- B.*
1. *Spērāvit cōs armā trāditūrōs esse.*
  2. *Sē aut victūros aut moritūrōs jūrāvērunt.*
  3. *Nōs hunc diem numquam vīsūrōs esse spērāvimus.*
  4. *Spērat sē ad flūmen ūnō diē perventūrum esse.*
  5. *Rēgīna sē numquam pauperum oblitūram esse pollicētur.*
  6. *Jūrant sē patriam dēfēnsūrōs.*
  7. *Spērāsne mē hoc factūrum ?*
- C.*
1. We swear to drive the enemy from our native land.
  2. He undertook to finish the war in three months.
  3. She hoped to come ; they hope to come.
  4. You (*sing.*) promised to ascertain all (things).
  5. Do you (*pl.*) swear to do or die ?
  6. They promise not to set out before daybreak.
  7. They will undertake to collect larger forces.
  8. He had hoped to take the city.
  9. We hope to see, to follow, to use, to live.
  10. They promised to return in three days.
  11. I hoped he would come.

#### Abbreviations

<i>i.e.,</i>	<i>id est.</i>
<i>e.g.,</i>	<i>exempli grātiā.</i>
<i>N.B.,</i>	<i>Notā bene.</i>
<i>P.S.,</i>	<i>Post scriptum.</i>
<i>A.M.,</i>	<i>Ante merīdiem.</i>
<i>P.M.</i>	<i>Post merīdiem.</i>





## READING LESSON

### THE WOLF AND THE LAMB

Lupus et āgnus ad eundem fluvium, siti coāctī, vērē-  
runt. Superior stābat lupus, longē inferior āgnus.  
“Cūr mihi,” inquit lupus, “aquam turbulentam bibentī  
fēcisti?” “Quōmodō,” ait āgnus, “illud facere potuī?  
Ā cē enim ad mē fluit rīvus.” “Abhinc sex mēnsēs  
mihi maledixisti.” “Ego vērō,” respondit ille, “nōn-  
dum nātus eram, cāre lupe.” “Pater tuus igitur,” ait  
lātrō lupus, “mihi maledixit.” Tum, capite āgnī  
arreptō, dentibus eum saevissimē lacerāvit.

*Cū bonō est cum lātrōne disputāre?*

*Translate:—*

1. He says that the wolf stood higher up.
2. He said that the lamb had made the water muddy.
3. The lamb did not see that he (the wolf) was drinking.
4. The wolf said the lamb's father had reviled him (*reflexive*), and that therefore he would tear the lamb.

## LESSON LXVII

## INTRANSITIVE VERBS THAT GOVERN THE GENITIVE, THE DATIVE, OR THE ABLATIVE

Many verbs, which in English are transitive, do not govern the Accusative case in Latin. They are intransitive, and govern, some the Genitive, some the Dative and some the Ablative.

This is owing to some peculiar hidden meaning, which in most cases can be traced.

## GENITIVE VERBS

**reminiscor**, -i (no perfect), *remember*

**obliviscor**, -i, **oblitus**, *forget*

**misereor**, -ēri, **miseritus**, *pity*

## EXERCISE

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| A. 1. He pities the poor.                              | 4. He will forget them.                        |
| 2. We pity the women<br>and children of the<br>enemy.  | 5. He will not see them.                       |
| 3. They do not forget<br>their valor; he for-<br>gets. | 6. They will forget him.                       |
|  | 7. Pity me.                                    |
|  | 8. Do not forget us.                           |
|  | 9. Remember, soldiers, your<br>old-time valor. |

## DATIVE VERBS

(For Principal Parts, see Vocabulary.)

The following verbs, denoting Advantage or Disadvantage, govern the Dative: —

- |                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 1. <b>invidēō</b> , <i>envy</i> | <b>crēdō</b> , <i>believe (put confidence in)</i> |
| <b>parōō</b> , <i>spare</i>     | <b>persuādēō</b> , <i>persuade</i>                |
| <b>pāreō</b> , <i>obey</i>      | <b>imperō</b> , <i>command</i>                    |

**ignōsoō**, pardon

**subveniō**, aid

**noceo**, hurt, injure

**serviō**, serve

**resistō**, resist

2. Compounds of the verb **sum**, and many other compounds, as:—

**Dēsum civitāti**, *I am lacking to (I fail) the state.*

**Bellum tibi inferō**, *I wage war upon you.*

NOTE. — **Juvō** and **adjuvō**, *aid*, govern the Acc. **Jubeō**, *order*, governs the Acc. with the Infinitive. **Crēdō**, *I believe a thing*, Acc.

#### EXERCISE

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| B. 1. They spare me.                       | 8. They go to the aid of their friends.      |
| 2. He will not spare you ( <i>sing.</i> ). | 9. They aid Caesar ( <i>adjuvō</i> ).        |
| 3. He envies you ( <i>plur.</i> ).         | 10. You ( <i>plur.</i> ) serve your country. |
| 4. Thou wilt pardon them.                  | 11. We save our country.                     |
| 5. They believe him.                       | 12. This injures the state.                  |
| 6. Whom ( <i>sing.</i> ) will he persuade? | 13. He pities me.                            |
| 7. He commands the army ( <i>imperō</i> ). | 14. He will forget thee.                     |
|  | 15. They remember us.                        |

#### ABLATIVE VERBS

(For Principal Parts, see Vocabulary.)

The following govern the Ablative:—

**utor**, use

**fruor**, enjoy

**fungor**, fulfil, perform

**potior**, gain possession

**vescor**, eat, feed upon

**Fidō**, *trust, rely upon*, and its compounds govern the Dat. of a person but the Abl. of a thing.

## EXERCISE

- C. 1. He uses cavalry.  
 2. They enjoy peace.  
 3. He will not gain possession of our city.  
 4. They will perform their duty.  
 5. They feed upon milk and flesh.  
 6. They trust you (*sing.*).  
 7. They relied upon their valor.  
 8. We shall not believe him.  
 9. He will not persuade us.  
 10. You (*sing.*) will not forget your country.

## Perseus

Perseus filius Danaae et Jovis fuit. Avus Acrisius propter oraculum nepotem timebat. Arcam igitur fecit et matrem filiumque in ea inclusos in mare conjecit. Jupiter arcam ad oram insulae cujusdam appulit, cujus Polydectes erat rex. Ille Danaen in matrimonium duxit. Mox eum paenituit quod Perseus domi manebat. Eum igitur domo abire jussit. Perseus id quod facere jussus erat libenter fecit et in alias regiones orbis terrarum profectus est. Postquam caput Medusae magno cum periculo abscidit, in fines Aethiopum pervenit. Ibi Cepheus regnabat. Horribile autem monstrum cotidie e mari veniebat et illius agris vastabat. Deus quidam Cepheum filiam suam, Andromedam, virginem formosissimam, monstrum dare jussit. Quamquam id graviter feribat, deo parere constituit et filiam ad rupem, quae in mari haud procul a litore erat, adligari jussit. Mox monstrum in conspectum venit. Sed dum virginem devorare parat, Perseus advenit et monstrum necavit.



PERSEUS AND ANDROMEDA.

## LESSON LXVIII

## THE GERUND

1. The Gerund is a **Verbal Noun**.

The following is its declension: —

<i>Nom.</i>	(lacking), supplied by present infinitive.
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>vocandī</b> , of calling.
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>vocandō</b> , for calling { (rare; chiefly after adjectives of Fitness).
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>vocandū</b> , calling (after prepositions, <b>ad</b> , etc.).
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>vocandō</b> , by calling.

**Difference between the Participle and the Gerund**

2. The participle has been seen to be a verbal adjective: —

**vir vidēns** crēdit, a man *seeing* believes.

Here **vidēns** is a participle modifying **vir**.

**videntis** does not mean *of seeing*; **vidente** does not mean *by seeing*.

**virī videntis** = *of a man seeing*.

**ā virō vidente** = *by a man seeing*.

Here **videntis** and **vidente** are descriptive modifiers, not nouns.

**videndī causā** = *for the sake of seeing*.

**videndō crēdimus** = *we believe by seeing*.

Here **videndī** is the Gen. of the Gerund (a noun) governed by **causā**; **videndō** is the Abl. of the Gerund used as an Abl. of Means.

3. Compare **causā** and **ad** in the following: —

- |                         |   |
|-------------------------|---|
| 1. <b>vocandī causā</b> | } = <i>for the purpose of calling</i> . |
| 2. <b>ad vocandū</b>    |   |

**causā** governs the Gen. and stands after its case.

**ad** governs the Acc. and stands before.

4. The Infinitive supplies the place of the Nom. Gerund,  
as: —

vidēre est orōdere, } seeing is believing.  
                          } to see is to believe.

#### Formation of the Gerund

5. Notice the parallel between the types of the Present Participle and those of the Gerund: —

#### PARTICIPLE

1	2	3	4
vocā ns	monē ns	regē ns (caplēs)	audiē ns
GERUND			
voca ndī	mone ndī	rege ndī (caplēndī)	audie ndī
-andī	-endī	-endī (-lēndī)	-lēndī

The Gerund is based upon the Present Stem; thus, *regēndī* (*reg-*), not based upon *rēx-* or *rēot-*.

6. Deponents take their Gerund from the Active Conjugation.

#### EXERCISE

A. Form (1) *Pres. Participle*, (2) *Perf. Participle*, (3) *Gerund*, from *videō*, *nūntiō*, *oro*, *vincō*, *parō*, *mittō*, *gerō*, *faciō*, *mūniō*, *scribō*, *dō*, *hortor*, *sequor*, *polliceor*.

B. *Translate*: —

1. Seen; (when) seeing; for the purpose of seeing; seeing (= to see).
2. (While) giving; given; by giving.
3. Giving is better than receiving.
4. (While) fortifying; having been fortified; for fortifying (*ad*).
5. Of writing; written; (while) writing.

6. By reporting; (when) reporting; having been reported.
7. Taken; (while) taking; by taking; for taking (*ad*).
8. Water is useful for drinking (*Dat.*).
9. Weather suitable for sailing (*ad*).
10. We learn by teaching.

## LESSON LXIX

## OBJECT OF THE GERUND

The Gerund may govern the same case as the Verb governs: —

*senibus parcendō*, by sparing the old men.  
*lūdōs videndi causā*, for the purpose of seeing the games.

## EXERCISE

- A. 1. *Pauperum miserendō*.  
 2. *Gallōs vincendī causā*.  
 3. *Ad amicis persuādendum*. (*What is the object of ad?*)  
 4. *Nāvibus ūtendō (Abl.)*.  
 5. *Ad urbem videndum*.  
 6. *Pācem petendī causā*.
- B. 1. By sending ambassadors.  
 2. By seeking peace.  
 3. For the purpose of seeing the soldiers.  
 4. For the purpose of gaining possession of the camp.  
    (1) *ad*, (2) *causā*.  
 5. The place is suitable for pitching camp (*ad*).  
 6. By aiding (*subveniō*) the poor.  
 7. For the purpose of conquering these states (*vincō* and *superō*). (1) *ad*, (2) *causā*.  
 8. The art of writing letters.



## PURPOSE

Examine the following modes of expressing Purpose: —

*He came to see the city.*

1. **Urbem visum vēnit** (*Supine; see page 152*).
2. **Ad urbem videndum vēnit.**
3. **Urbem videndī causā vēnit.**

The Infinitive is not used in good Latin prose to express Purpose. Other expressions for Purpose will be learnt under the Subjunctive Mood.

## EXERCISE

*Translate in three ways: —*

1. Ambassadors came to seek peace.
2. They sent Caesar to conquer Gaul.
3. Many came to hear the speech.
4. They set out to get grain (*frūmentor, -ārī*).

## Proverbs

1. *Post tenebrās lūx.*
2. *In vīnō vēritās.*
3. *Nē sūtor ūltrā crepidam.*
4. *Est modus in rēbus.*
5. *Ex nihilō nihil fit.*
6. *Labor omniā vincit.*
7. *Nōn omnem errōrem stultitiam oportet dicere.*
8. *Experientia docet.*
9. *Dulce et decōrum est prō patriā mori.*
10. *Dulce est dēsipere in locō.*
11. *Hūmānum est errāre.*

## LESSON LXX

## THE GERUNDIVE

The Gerundive is a **Passive Verbal Adjective** denoting **Necessity, Fitness, Obligation**. Its form resembles that of the Gerund: —

*vocandus, -a, -um, such-as-ought-to-be-called.*

*puer laudandus =* { *a boy deserving-to-be-praised.*  
*that-ought-to-be-praised.*  
*that-must-be- (has-to-be-) praised.*

*epistola scribenda = a letter that-has-to-be-written.*

Because it expresses an obligation, *i.e.* something that *must be done in the future*, the Gerundive is sometimes called a Future Passive Participle, but *puer laudandus* (a boy who *ought to be praised*), although implying that the act *is to be done or ought to be done in the future*, is not the passive of *puer laudaturus* (a boy who *is-about-to-, going-to-, likely-to-praise*). There is strictly no participle that means “*about-to-be-praised*” as a prediction of mere futurity.

Note the following variations in form: —

*laudandus, -a, -um, that-ought-to-be-praised,*  
*vincendus, -a, -um, that-must-be-conquered,*  
*captendus, -a, -um, that-has-to-be-taken.*

Contrast the following: —

GERUND		GERUNDIVE		
		M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	lacking	<i>Nom.</i> <i>vocandus</i>	<i>vocanda</i>	<i>vocandum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>vocandi</i>	<i>Gen.</i> <i>vocandi</i>	<i>vocandae</i>	<i>vocandi</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>vocandō</i>	etc.	etc.	etc.
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>vocandum</i>			
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>vocandō</i>			
	like <i>bellum</i>		like <i>bonus</i>	

## EXERCISE

A. Form *Perfect Participles* and *Gerundives* from *videō*, *mittō*, *nūntiō*, *gerō*, *moneō*, *regō*, *audiō*, *cognōscō*, *parō*, *petō*.

B. *Translate* :—

- |                   |                     |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| 1. Sīgnum dandum. | 3. Cōpiae cōgendae. |
| 2. Rēs nūntianda. | 4. Opus faciendum.  |

C. *Translate* :—

1. Things to-be-done (*gerō*).
2. A city to-be-taken; cities to-be-taken.
3. A town to-be-stormed (*expugnō*); walls to-be-stormed.
4. A bridge to-be-built.

Observe that the *Passive Infinitives*, *geri*, *capī*, *expugnārī*, do not express **obligation**.

## Periphrastic Passive Conjugation

1. *Urbs est capiēda*, *the city is to-be-taken*, is called the *Periphrastic Passive Conjugation*, just as *urbem captūrus est* (*he intends to take*) is called the *Periphrastic Active Conjugation*. The following contains another example :—

*Dicit urbem capiendam esse*, *He says that the city must-be-taken*.

## Dative of the Agent

2. Usually the *Agent* with the *Passive Voice* is expressed by *a*, *ab*, and the *Ablative*, as :—

*Gallia a Caesare victa est*, *Gaul was conquered by Caesar*.

But with the *Gerundive* the *Agent* is usually expressed by the *Dative*, which is really a *Dative of Interest*; thus,

*Gallia mihi vincēda est*, *Gaul is to-be-conquered by me*, really means

"To me (the person interested) Gaul is a country to-be-conquered."

3. Observe that the **Gerundive is Passive**. Hence, *We must praise the boy* is not *Laudandī puerum sumus*, but *Puer nōbīs laudandus est*. *Laudandī sumus* = *We are to be praised*, not *We are to praise*.

4. The **Gerundive of Deponent Verbs is Passive** in meaning: —

*Militēs hortandī sunt* (hortor), *The soldiers are to be exhorted*.

## EXERCISE

- A. 1. Pāx est nōbīs petenda.  
 2. Pāx ā nōbīs est petīta.  
 3. Gallia Caesari erat vincenda.  
 4. Gallia ā Caesare victa erat.  
 5. Hic liber mihi legendus erit.  
 6. "Dēlenda est Carthāgō," inquit Catō.  
 7. Classis nōbīs est aedificanda.  
 8. Classis ā Rōmānīs aedificāta est.  
 9. Māgnū bellum est tibi gerendum.  
 10. Mājus bellum ā tē est gestum.  
 11. Multae epistolae hodiē mihi sunt scribendae.  
 12. Paucae epistolae heri ā mē scriptae sunt.  
 13. Dixit Galliam sibi vincendam esse.  
 14. Classem sibi aedificandam esse arbitrātī sunt.
- B. 1. A letter is to be written by me.  
 2. A letter has been written by me.  
 3. The city had been taken by him.  
 4. The city was to-be-taken by him.  
 5. Caesar must lead an army; had to lead many armies  
 (were to-be-led).  
 6. We must send hostages.

7. You will have to read the letter (*the letter will be to-be-read*).
8. Hostages were sent by them.
9. The letter will have been read by you.
10. They saw that they must seek peace.
11. I must conquer the Gauls.
12. Caesar will have to build a bridge.
13. The Gauls have been conquered by me.
14. A bridge was built by him.
15. He knew that he had to conquer the Gauls.
16. They knew that a bridge had been built by him.

Similar sentences may be formed with : —

aciem instruō  
cōplās cōgō

castra pōnō  
rem nūntiō

## LESSON LXXI

### THE GERUNDIVE SUBSTITUTED FOR THE GERUND

While the Gerundive properly denotes obligation, there is a common use of it, in which this meaning seems to be obscured or weakened.

There are two ways of translating the following : —

*“I shall win glory by taking the city” :*

(1) Laudem **urbem** **caplendō** (*Gerund*) parābō.

(2) Laudem **urbe** **caplendā** (*Gerundive*) parābō.

In (1) **caplendō** = “*by taking*” and **urbem** is the object of the Gerund : “*I shall win glory by taking (the city).*”

In (2) the meaning is “*I shall win glory by means of the city (but it is one) that-must-be-taken.*”

In the one case the glory is won *by the act of taking*, in the other *by the thing taken*.

Compare : —

(1) *Lēgāti ad pācem petendum vēnērunt.*

*petendum*, Gerund (*Acc.*) object of *ad*, and *pācem* the object of the Gerund.

(2) *Lēgāti ad pācem petendam vēnērunt.*

*pācem* the object of *ad*, and *petendam* the Gerundive — a modifier agreeing with *pācem*.

In (1) they came for seeking — peace.  
(Emphasis falling on the act.)

In (2) they came for peace — viewed as something to be sought.  
(Emphasis falling on the thing.)

1. This substitution of the Gerundive for the Gerund is possible only where the Verb governs the **Accusative**.
2. In such cases the **Gerundive** is nearly always the preferred construction.

Instead of the Gerund : use the Gerundive :

<i>Gen.</i> pācem petendī,	pācis petendae, of seeking peace.
<i>Dat.</i> pācem petendō,	pāci petendae, for seeking peace.
<i>Acc.</i> ad pācem petendum,	ad pācem petendam, for seeking peace.
<i>Abl.</i> pācem petendō,	pāce petendā, by seeking peace.

#### SUMMARY

Two uses of the Gerundive : —

1. Denoting Obligation, Necessity, etc. —

*Pāx mihi est petendā.*

(Periphrastic Passive Conjugation, accompanied by the Dative of the Agent.)

2. Substituted for the Gerund—

**Ad pācem petendam.**

(The idea of obligation being weakened ; possible only with Transitive Verbs.)

GERUND	GERUNDIVE
1. <b>A Verbal Noun.</b>	1. <b>A Verbal Adjective.</b>
2. <b>Active.</b>	2. <b>Passive.</b>
3. <b>Governs a Case.</b>	3. <b>Agrees with a Noun.</b>

The Gerundive is usually preferred.

But the Gerund is used in the following cases:—

1. When the Gerund is in the Genitive Case and its Object is a *neuter* pronoun or adjective used as a noun, as **aliquid faciendī, cupiditās plūra habendī.**

2. When the verb is Intransitive (*i.e.* does not govern the Acc.), as **victis parcendō** (not *victis parcendis*), **frumentandī causā.**

But *utor, fruor, fungor, potior*, which governed the Acc. in old Latin, regularly take the Gerundive construction, as **epōe potundōrum castrōrum.**

3. With **mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri**, the Gerund, qualified by the possessive adj., is used rather than (*a*) the Gerund governing the Acc., or (*b*) the Gerundive being in gender and number, as **sui purgandī causā** (not *sē purgandī* or *sui purgandōrum*), *for the purpose of clearing themselves = for the sake of their own clearing.*

This is sometimes explained as a Gerundive, agreeing with **mei**, etc., a *neuter substantive = of my (being)*, etc.

4. There is a decided tendency to regard euphony by avoiding the Genitive Plural of the Gerundive and noun, especially when the noun ends in **-ōrum** or **-ārum**, as **Gallōe vincendī causā**, rather than **Gallōrum vincendōrum causā.**

EXERCISE

- A. 1. Galli in cōsiliis capiendis mōbilēs sunt.
2. Ea quae cognōvī mihi sunt dissimulanda.
3. Māgna pars equitātūs trāns flūmen frumentandī causā missa est.

4. Lēgātī mihi nōn audiendī sunt.
5. Tempus Gallis ad cōnsilia capiēda nōn dandum est.
6. Spatium eis ad arma capiēda nōn dedit.
7. Epistolīs scribēdis exercēmur.
8. Hominēs poētīs legendīs ērudiuntur.
9. Māgnam nāvium cōpiam ad militēs trānsportandōs pollicēbantur.
10. Summa difficultās erat pontis faciendī.

(In each of the following, give the preferred construction.)

- B. 1. He sent Volusēnus for the purpose of ascertaining these things. Use (1) *ad*, (2) *causā*, (3) *the Supine*.
2. Ambassadors came to seek peace. Avoid the *Infīn*. Use (1) *ad*, (2) *causā*, (3) *the Supine*.
3. They came to see the city (translate in three ways).
4. Caesar delays for the purpose of preparing ships.
5. By persuading his friends; by advising his friends.
6. For the purpose of aiding his friends (*ad*). (1) *subveniō* (*Dat.*); (2) *adjuvō* (*Acc.*).
7. For the purpose of hearing; of complaining.
8. By ordering the soldiers. (1) *jubeō*; (2) *imperō*.

#### Proverbs

1. Cito dare est bis dare.
2. Ūna salūs victīs nullam spērāre salūtem.
3. Festīnā lentē.
4. Vigilantibus nōn dormientibus servit lēx.
5. Suus cuique mōs.
6. Facilis dēscēsus Avernō.
7. Victrix fortunāe sapientia.
8. Dum spīrō, spērō.
9. Dum vitant stultī vitia, in contrāria currunt.
10. Necessitās nōn habet lēgem.
11. Cūrandum est ut sit mēns sāna in corpore sānō.



## READING LESSON

## Lōbō Rēx Currumpae

(Latinized from the story of Ernest Thompson Seton in "Wild Animals I Have Known," by kind permission of the author.)

In Novā Mexicōne abhinc haud multīs annīs lupus ferōcissimus et sagācissimus habitābat. Ingentī corporis māgnitūdine fuit et gregem sibi similiarum sed minus sagācium dūcēbat. Hī semper eī pārēbant et ad ējus ululātūs undīque ex silvīs montibusque concurrēbant.

Māgna in agrīs armenta, multī pāstōrēs armentōrum hunc rēgem lupōrum pertimēscēbant. Noctū enim dē montibus dēscendēbat et māne bovēs pinguissimī dēsīderābantur. Venēnō illum necāre aut īnsidiīs caecīs et accūrātissimē parātīs excipere frūstrā diū cōnātī sunt.

Adulēscēns tandem, strēnuus ac fortissimus, ex Canadā vēnit. Fāmā hūjus lupī acceptā, praemiīs adductus, ad eum locum multa mīllia passuum per cīvitatēs multās ad illum excipiendum iter fēcerat.

Omnia expertus, quae cēterīs nōta erant, novam tandem rem animadvertit. Lupa enim alba, quae numquam antea cōspecta erat, jam cum grege currēbat. Nōn tamen rēgī tam diligenter quam cēterī obtemperābat illa. Nam īnsidiās nōn pertimēscēbat, propiusque, rēge invitō, appropinquāre audēbat. Quod ubi animadvertit adulēscēns, cōnsilium novum cēpit. Complūribus pedicīs dispositīs, ēventum expectābat. Mox lupa, quam Blanca pāstōrēs jam appellāverant, excepta est.

Corpore domum lātō, adventum amātōris expectābat. Ille vērō procul remanēns ululātūs horrendōs ad sīdera tollēbat neque aedificiīs appropinquāre volēbat. Deinde adulēscēns, īnō pede lupae mortuae excisō, in campīs multis locīs terram sicut vēstigiīs tetigit. Rēx uxōrem appetēns, vēstigia ista simulāta secūtus, tandem exceptus atque vinctus domum adlātus est.

Cibum vērō sūmere nōlēbat. Frāctī animī; diūtius vīvere, uxōre mortuā, jam molestissimum erat. Ita uxōrem, incautiōrem quidem sed tamen cārissimam, lūgēns, Lōbō rēx Currumpae mortuus est.

#### REVIEW WORD LIST

1. Sciō, intellegō, arbitror, existimō, putō, crēdō, vidēō, audiō, cognōscō, audeō, nūntiō, dīcō, nārrō, sentiō, loquor, certiōrem faciō.
2. Vērū est, manifestum est, polliceor, spērō, suscipiō, jūrō, juvō, subveniō.
3. Cōnficiō, servō, serviō, oppugnō, expugnō, adior, impetum faciō, aciem instruō, cōpiās cōgō, hōc tē facere cōgō.
4. Think (3), believe, see, understand, perceive, feel, am aware, learn (= ascertain), learn (a lesson), teach, inform, tell, say, announce, dare, hear, speak.
5. Hope, promise, undertake, it is true, swear, aid, finish, attack (2), take by storm, make an attack upon, collect, compel, form line.

#### A Well-balanced Mind

Aequam mementō rēbus in arduīs  
 Servāre mentem, nōn secus in bonīs  
 Ab insolenti temperātam  
 Laetitiā, moritūre Dellī.

HORACE, *Odes* II, 3.



A ROMAN WAR GALLEY

## LESSON LXXII

## THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

The Indicative is the Mood of **Fact**.

The Subjunctive is the Mood of **Conceived Possibility**.

The uses of the Subjunctive in Latin are many and varied, and it is impossible to give any fixed translation for the Subjunctive forms.

Latin employs the Subjunctive in many places where English would have the Indicative. All these uses can be learnt only after careful study and considerable experience in reading the language.



3. A Periphrastic Future Subjunctive is used : —  
*futūrus sim ; futūrus essem.*

4. Observe that the Imperfect Subjunctive can be obtained by adding *-m*, etc., to the Pres. Inf. *esse*. This applies to all verbs.

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	<i>est, he is.</i>	<i>ut sit,</i>	<i>in order that he may be.</i>
Imperf.	<i>erat, he was.</i>	<i>ut esset,</i>	<i>in order that he might be.</i>
Perf.	<i>fuit, he has been.</i>	<i>utinam fuerit,</i>	<i>O that he may have been.</i>
Pluperf.	<i>fuerat, he had been.</i>	<i>utinam fuisset,</i>	<i>O that he had been.</i>
		<i>fuisset,</i>	<i>he would have been.</i>
		<i>si fuisset,</i>	<i>if he had been.</i>

**Some Common Uses of the Subjunctive**

1. *Ut*, in order that ;  
*Nē*, lest, in order that not, } take a Subjunctive of Purpose.

*Quis*, after *nē*, = any.

2. *Cum*, since, in all tenses takes the Subjunctive of Cause (Causal Subjunctive).

This corresponds to the Eng. Indicative. Compare *quod*, because, with the Indicative.

3. *Cum*, when, (a) in the Pres., Fut., and Perf. (Primary Tenses) takes the Indicative ;

(b) in the Imperf. and Pluperf. (Historical Tenses) usually takes the Subjunctive.



## LESSON LXXIII

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

## ACTIVE VOICE

	Vocō	Moneō	Regō	Audiō
<i>Pres.</i>	voc em ēs et ēmus ētis eot	mou eam eās eat eāmus eātis eant	reg am ās at āmus ātis ant	aud iam iās ist iāmus iātis iant
<i>Impf.</i>	voc ārem ārēs āret ārēmus ārētis āreut	mou ārem ārēs āret ārēmus ārētis ārent	reg erem erēs eret erēmus erētis ereut	aud irem irēs iret irēmus irētis ireut
<i>Perf.</i>	vocāv erim eris erit erimus eritis erint	monu erim eris erit erimus eritis erint	rēx erim eris erit erimus eritis erint	audi v erim eris erit erimus eritis erint
<i>Plupf.</i>	vocāv issem issēs isset issēmus issētis issent	mouu issem issēs isset issēmus issētis issent	rēx issem issēs isset issēmus issētis issent	audi v issem issēs isset issēmus issētis issent

**Capiō**

## SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

<i>Present</i>	<b>capiam, -iās, -iat, -iāmus, -iātis, -iant.</b>
<i>Imperfect</i>	<b>caperem, caperēs, etc.</b>
<i>Perfect</i>	<b>cēp-erim, etc.</b>
<i>Pluperfect</i>	<b>oēp-issem, etc.</b>

Similarly : —

	<b>dō (dāre)</b>	<b>videō (ēre)</b>	<b>vincō (ēre)</b>	<b>veniō (ire)</b>
<i>Present</i>	dem	videam	vincam	veniam
<i>Imperfect</i>	dārem	vidērem	vincerem	venīrem
<i>Perfect</i>	dederim	viderim	vicerim	vēnerim
<i>Pluperfect</i>	dedissem	vidissem	vicissem	vēnissem

Notice the difference between the following : —

<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	<b>regam, -ās, -at, etc.</b>
<i>Fut. Indic.</i>	<b>regam, -ēs, -et, etc.</b>

**An Exhortation or Command** in the 1st or 3d Person (Eng. *let us, let him*) is expressed in Latin by the Present Subjunctive, as : —

**ōrēmus, let us pray.**  
**jūstītia fiat, let justice be done.**

## EXERCISE

A. *Outline the Subjunctive Active, 1. sing., of the following verbs : —*

**nūntiō, respondeō, mittō, faciō, mūniō, pāreō, parō, parcō, cognōscō.**

B. *Translate : —*

1. Ut vocet, ut moneās, ut vincat, ut audiāmus.
2. Cum vocās; cum vocēs; cum sunt; cum sint.
3. Vocābāmus; cum vocārēmus.
4. Cum vocāvit; cum vocāverit.



5. Cum vēnisset, ut venīret, ut veniātis.
6. Vincit, vincēs, cum vincātis, ut vincat, ut vincēmus, cum vinceret, ut vinceret, ut vincās.
7. Cum videant, ut vidērent, cum vīdissent.
8. Ut mittant; nē mitterent, cum mīssissent, mittent.
9. Utinam veniās; utinam venirētis; utinam vēnissemus.
10. Nē vocēs; nōn vocās; cum pāreāmus; ut capiās; cum cēperis.
11. Faciet; faciat; veniēmus; veniāmus.
12. Vidēbunt, vident, cum videant, ut vocent.
13. Dēmus (*exhortation*); dent (*command*); utinam det; utinam dedisset; ut daret.
14. Ut faciās; ut facerēs; ut veniāmus; nē venirēmus.
15. Ut sint; nē essent; ut cognōscat; nē quis cognōsceret.

C. *Translate* : —

1. In order that they may call, may see, may send, may come.
2. In order that we might call, might see, might send, might come.
3. Since he has called, has seen, has sent, has come.
4. When he had called, had seen, had sent, had come.
5. Let us not (*nē*) answer, send, do, give; we do not send, etc.
6. I shall tell him (= *to him*) when I see him (*say shall see*).
7. I told him when I saw (*Perf.*) him, — when he had come.
8. They saw him when he was coming.
9. We shall see him when he comes (*say shall have come*).

236 EQUIVALENTS FOR THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE

10. When he is; since he is; when they are; since they are.
11. He was standing; when he was standing.
12. On coming to Rome (*when, etc.*), he learnt these things.
13. On learning this (*which when he had learnt*), he sent soldiers.
14. Lest any one might order, conquer; may order, conquer.
15. In order that they may fight, conquer, see, take, do, give.
16. In order that you (*plur.*) might fight, conquer, see, take, do, give.
17. He sends, will send; let him send, send thou.
18. He sees, will see; let him see, see ye.

LESSON LXXIV

EQUIVALENTS FOR THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE

Observe the following equivalents:—

1. *Having sent soldiers, they conquered Gaul.*
  - (1) **Militibus missis, Galliam vicērunt.**
  - (2) **Cum milites misissent, Galliam vicērunt.**
  - (3) **Postquam (ubi) milites miserunt, Galliam vicērunt.**

In such cases:—

**Cum** takes the *Pluperf. Subjunctive*.

**Postquam** (*after*), **ubi** (*when*), the *Perfect Indicative*.

2. *Having said these things, he, etc.*
  - (1) **Hic (rēbus) dictis, etc.**
  - (2) **Cum haec dixisset.**
  - (3) **Ubi (postquam) haec dixit.**
  - (4) **Haec locūtus (loquor, Deponent).**

3. *Having arrived at the river, they, etc.*

(*Veniō*, Intransitive Verb, no *Perf. Participle*.)

(1) *Cum ad flūmen vēnissent.*

(2) *Postquam (ubi) ad flūmen vēnērunt.*

#### EXERCISE

*Translate in all possible ways : —*

1. On coming to camp, they learnt, etc.
2. After setting out, they saw, etc.
3. Having sent ambassadors, they sought peace.
4. Having said these things, they departed.
5. Having seen the city, they returned home.
6. On learning this, he sent soldiers.
7. Having exhorted the soldiers, he gave the signal.

#### Man's Presumption

Nil mortālibus arduū est ;  
Caelum ipsum petimus stultitiā neque  
Per nostrum patimur scelus  
Iracunda Jovem pōnere fulmina.

HORACE, *Odes* I, 3.

#### Cincinnatus, 458 B.C.

Aequi olim totum exercitum Rōmānum circumventum cōnsulemque tenēbat. Quod cum Rōmam renūtiātum esset, T. Quinctius Cincinnātus omniū cōsēnsū dictātor est dictus. Ille, spēs unica imperi Rōmāni, trāns Tiberim tunc quattuor jūgerū colēhat agrum. Ad quem missi lēgātī nūdum eum arantem offendērunt. Salūte datā redditāque Quinctius togam properē ē tuguriō prōferre uxōrem jussit, ut senātūs mandāta togātus audiret.

Postquam, abstersō pulvere ac sūdōre, togā indūtus prōcessit, dictātōrem eum lēgātī grātulantēs cōnsalūtant. Quinctius Rōmam vēnit; victōs hostēs sub jugum mīsit.

## LESSON LXXV

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

## PASSIVE VOICE

	Vocō	Moneō	Regō	Audiō
<i>Pres.</i>	voc er ēris (re) ētur ēmur ēminī entur	mon ear eāris (re) eātur eāmur eāminī eantur	reg ar āris (re) ātur āmur āminī antur	aud iar iāris (re) iātur iāmur iāminī iantur
<i>Impf.</i>	voc ārer ārēris (re) ārētur ārēmur ārēminī ārentur	mon ērer ērēris (re) ērētur ērēmur ērēminī ērentur	reg erer erēris (re) erētur erēmur erēminī erentur	aud irer irēris (re) irētur irēmur irēminī irentur
<i>Perf.</i>	vocātus sim sis sit vocātī simus sitis sint	monitus sim sis sit monitī simus sitis sint	rēctus sim sia sit rēctī simus sitis sint	auditus sim sia sit auditī simus sitis sint
<i>Plupf.</i>	vocātus essem essēs esset vocātī essēmus essētis essent	monitus essem essēs esset monitī essēmus essētis essent	rēctus essem essēs esset rēctī essēmus essētis essent	auditus essem essēs esset auditī essēmus essētis essent

**Capiō**

SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

<i>Present</i>	<b>captar, -iāris, -iātur, -iāmur, -iāminī, -iantur.</b>
<i>Imperfect</i>	<b>caperer, caperēris, etc.</b>
<i>Perfect</i>	<b>captus sim, etc.</b>
<i>Pluperfect</i>	<b>captus essem, etc.</b>

DEPONENT VERBS

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

	I	II	III	IV
<i>Present</i>	<b>cōner, -ēris</b>	<b>verear, -eāris</b>	<b>sequar, -āris</b>	<b>potiar, -iāris</b>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<b>cōnārer</b>	<b>verērer</b>	<b>sequerer</b>	<b>potīrer</b>
<i>Perfect</i>	<b>cōnātus sim</b>	<b>veritus sim</b>	<b>secūtus sim</b>	<b>potītus sim</b>
<i>Pluperf.</i>	<b>cōnātus essem</b>	<b>veritus essem</b>	<b>secūtus essem</b>	<b>potītus essem</b>

Notice the Active endings, **-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt**; Passive endings, **-r, -ris (-re), -tur, -mur, -minī, -ntur**.

EXERCISE

- A. 1. *Outline the Subjunctive Passive, 1. sing., of the following verbs: —*  
**amō, teneō, mittō, cōnspiciō, videō, vinc sepeliō.**
2. *The same in the 2. sing.*
3. *Outline the Subjunctive, 1. sing., of the following Deponents: —*  
**proellor, -ārī; polliceor, -ērī; proficiscor, -ī; morior, -ī; moror, -ārī; adolor, -īrī; patior, -ī; progredior, -ī.**
4. *The same in the 2. sing. and in the 3. plur.*
- B. 1. **Vocāris; ut vocēris; vidēris; ut videāris; mitteris; mittēris; ut mittāris.**
2. **Nōn sequitur; sequētur; nō sequātur.**

3. Sequentur; ut sequantur; sequuntur.
  4. Verentur; ut vereantur; verēbuntur.
  5. Cum polliceantur; quod pollicentur.
  6. Nē mittantur; nōn mittuntur; nōn mittentur.
  7. Ut videātur; nē quis vidērētur; nōn vidēbātur.
  8. Cum pollicitī sint; cum pollicitī sunt; cum pollicitī essent.
  9. Ut cōnārēmur; ut vidērēminī; ut paterēris; nē adorīrentur.
  10. Tria millia passuum prōgressī, hostēs vidērunt.  
(Give two equivalents for *prōgressī*.)
- C.
1. In order that he may be called, advised, ruled, heard.
  2. In order that they might not be prepared, seen, sent, taken.
  3. Since he attempts, fears, follows, takes possession.
  4. When thou wert attempting, promising, setting out, dying, attacking, suffering.
  5. When they had set out; since they have been seen.
  6. He seems; since he seems; lest he might seem.
  7. He conquers, is not being conquered; may he conquer; may he not be conquered (*nōn* of *fact*; *nē* of a *wish* or *purpose*).
  8. Let us not follow; we shall not follow; because we do not follow (*quod*); since they have not followed (*cum*).
  9. *Translate in three ways: —*
    - (a) Having attacked the camp, they were repulsed. (1) Perf. part., (2) *ubi*, (3) *oim*. Use *adorior*.
    - (b) Having repulsed the enemy, Caesar moves camp.
- In two ways: —*
- (c) Having arrived there, they pitched camp.

## LESSON LXXVI

## PURPOSE CLAUSES

Adverbial clauses of Purpose are technically called **Final Clauses** (*finis, end*), because they denote the *end in view*.

**The Infinitive is not used in good Latin prose to express Purpose.**

1. Three of the most common modes of expressing Purpose are:—

1. **Ut** (negative **nē**) with the Subjunctive.
2. The Accusative Supine (only after Verbs of Motion).
3. **Ad** or **causā** with the Gerund or Gerundive.

2. *In order that not* (purpose) is never **ut nōn**, but **nē** (*lest*).

*In order that no one* is never **ut nēmō**, but **nē quis** (*lest any one*).

*In order that nothing* is never **ut nihil**, but **nē quid** (*lest anything*).

3. Note the following, with special reference to the tense of **videat** and **vidēret**:—

*He has come to see the city*:—

1. **Vēnit ut urbem videat** (that he may see).
2. **Vēnit urbem vīsum**.
3. **Vēnit ad urbem videndam** (*urbis videndae causā*).

*He came to see the city*:—

- Vēnit ut urbem vidēret** (that he might see).

## Sequence of Tenses

The examples just preceding suggest a certain correspondence between the tense of the subordinate clause and that of the principal clause. This is called Sequence, and is observed in English as well as in Latin.

**Primary Sequence**

(Relating to the realm of possibility — the Present or the Future.)

<i>Pres. Perf.</i>	<i>I have come</i>	} that I <i>may</i> see ( <i>ut videam</i> ).
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>I come (am coming)</i>	
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>I shall come</i>	
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>I shall have come</i>	
		<b>Present Subjunctive of Purpose</b>

**Historical (or Secondary) Sequence**

(Relating to the realm of historical (or past) occurrence.)

<i>Hist. Perf.</i>	<i>I came (once)</i>	} that I <i>might</i> see ( <i>ut vidērem</i> ).
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>I was coming, came</i> ( <i>repeatedly</i> )	
<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>I had come</i>	
		<b>Imperfect Subjunctive of Purpose</b>

NOTE. — The Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are seldom required in Purpose Clauses: Present, *may*; Imperfect, *might*.

**Rule for Sequence.** — A Primary Tense governs a Primary Tense; an Historical governs an Historical.

In actual practice, the Perfect seldom acts as a Primary Tense, even where the Eng. seems to require *have*. Still, where the meaning plainly refers to the present, the above rule holds.

**EXERCISE**

- A. 1. *Caesarem Rōmānī mīserunt ut Galliam vinceret.*  
 2. *Exercitum suum dūxit Gallōs victum.*  
 3. *In finēs Gallōrum vēnit ad bellum gerendum*  
*(substitute causā).*  
 4. *Vēnimus ut pācem petāmus, Caesar* (*substitute*  
*(1) ad, (2) the Supine, (3) causā*).  
 5. *Ut vincāmus pugnābimus.*  
 6. *Ut videāmus vēnimus.*



7. Adsumus ut obsidēs polliceāmur.
8. Ut obsidēs pollicērēmur ā nostrīs missī sumus.
9. Hāc viā vēnimus nē quis nōs vidēret.
10. Hōc cūrāvit Caesar nē cui militēs nocērent.

- B.*
1. We have come to see, not to be seen.
  2. They came not to hear, but to be heard.
  3. We shall send forces to conquer them (1) *ut*, (2) *ad*, (3) *Supine*.
  4. They said they had been sent to seek peace.
  5. He learnt that they had come to promise.
  6. We come to school that we may learn (*discō*).
  7. Is it true that we are learning? (*Does that here mean in order that?*)
  8. They said they would fight to conquer.
  9. They hoped to conquer or die.
  10. They promised to give hostages; they came to give; it is better to give than to receive.
  11. He took care that no one should see them coming.
  12. He will take care that no one sees; that they see no one; that they hurt no one; that they forget no one.
  13. He said that no one would see them.

#### The Golden Mean

Rēctius vivēs, Licinī, neque altum  
 Semper urgendō neque, dum procellās  
 Cautus horrēscis, nimium premendō  
 Litus inīqnum.

Sæpius ventis agitātur ingēns  
 Pīnus et celsae graviōre cāsū  
 Dēcidunt turrēs feriuntque summōs  
 Fulgura montēs.

HORACE, *Odes* II, 10.

## LESSON LXXVII

## DEPENDENT QUESTIONS

"*How large is the island?*" is a **Direct Question**.

In the sentence: "He could not find out *how large the island was*," the subordinate noun clause "*how large*," etc., is a **Dependent or Indirect Question**.

**RULE.** — The verb of a **Dependent Question** in Latin is in the **Subjunctive Mood**.

Dependent Questions are governed by such words as *ask, find out, tell, know, etc.*

## DIRECT QUESTION

Quanta **est** insula?  
*How large is the island?*

DEPENDENT (OF INDIRECT)  
QUESTIONS

1. Quaerit quanta **sit** insula.  
*He inquires how large the island is.*
2. Quaesivit quanta **esset** insula.  
*He inquired how large the island was.*

## Sequence of Tenses

As seen in the foregoing examples, the same correspondence in tense between the dependent question and the governing clause exists in Latin as in English: *is* (after *inquires*) = **sit**; *was* (after *inquired*) = **esset**.

Rogō unde **venīās**, *I ask whence you come.*  
Rogāvī unde **venīrēs**, *I asked whence you were coming.*  
Unde **vēnistis**? *Whence have you come?*  
Rogāvī unde **vēnissent**, *I asked whence they had come.*  
Quid **faciēs**? *What will you do?*  
Rogō quid **factūrus sīs**, *I ask what you will do.*

## EXERCISE

1. Where is Britain? He asks where Britain is.
2. They asked where Britain was.
3. Why did you not send hostages?
4. He asked why they had not sent hostages.
5. How large are the harbors?
6. He did not ascertain how large the harbors were.
7. He learnt that they were so large.
8. What sort of men inhabit the island?
9. Tell me what sort of men inhabit it.
10. They told him what sort of men inhabited it.
11. How many ships have they?
12. He inquired how many ships they had.
13. He learnt they had not many, — so many.
14. Who was sent? I ask who was sent. I asked who had been sent.
15. What have you learnt? Tell me what you have learnt: He heard what they had learnt. He heard that they had learnt many things. He heard what (= that which) they said.

## Proserpina

Proserpina, Cereris filia, aliquandō in Sicilia ad urbem Hennam in agris florēs carpēbat; sarta nectēbat ludēbatque cum comitibus. Subitō terrā concussā<sup>1</sup> Plūtō, Inferōrum deus, cūjus currum equi ātri vehēbant, ē terrā ēmersit. Deus Proserpinam abduxit ut uxor sua et Inferōrum rēgina esset<sup>2</sup>; clamōrem puellae compressit. Māter cum ignorāret<sup>3</sup> ubi filia esset,<sup>2</sup> tōtū orbem terrārum frūstrā peragrāvit.

Tandem Cerēs ā Sōle, qui omnia cōspicit, audivit quis<sup>3</sup> filiam abduxisset.<sup>2</sup> Itaque statim iter ad Jovem flexit et precibus animō ejus persuāsit, ut filia a Plūtōne remitteretur. Proserpinae permissum est ut per partem anni apud mātrem per partem alteram apud Inferōs esset.

<sup>1</sup> *Concutiō*.    <sup>2</sup> Why subj.?    <sup>3</sup> What difference between *quis* and *qui*?



PLUTO AND PROSERPINA

LESSON LXXVIII

IRREGULAR VERBS

PRINCIPAL PARTS

**possum, posse, potui.** *I am able, I can.*

**volō, velle, volui.** *I wish, am willing.*

*non velle, nolui.* *I am unwilling.*

*mā velle, mā vult.* *I prefer.*

**ferō, ferre, tulī.** *I bear, carry.*

*Passive, feror, ferri, lātus sum.*

**eō, ire, ivi (ii), itum.** *I go.*

**fiō, fieri, factus sum.** (1) *be made*, (2) *be done*, (3) *become.*

(*Passive of faciō, do, make.*)

PRESENT INDICATIVE

possum	volō	ferō	eō	fiō
potes	vīs	fers	īs	fis
potest	vult	fert	it	fit
possumus	volumus	ferimus	īmus	fīmus
potestis	vultis	fertis	ītis	fītis
possunt	vohunt	ferunt	euunt	fīunt

mālō

māvis

māvult

mālumus

māvultis

mālunt

nōlō

nōn vīs

nōn vult

nōlumus

nōn vultis

nōhunt

mālō = mā (*more*) + volō

nōlō = nōn volō

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

possim	velim	feram	eam	fiam
possis	vellis	ferās	eās	fiās
possit	velit	ferat	eat	fiat
possimus	velimus	ferāmus	eāmus	fiāmus
possitis	velitis	ferātis	eātis	fiātis
possint	velint	ferant	eant	fiant

mālim, -is, -it, etc.

nōlim, -is, -it, etc.

## EXERCISE

- A. 1. Potest; ut possit; nōn possunt; nē possint.  
 2. Vult; cum velit; cum volunt; cum nōlint.  
 3. Omnia fert; hōc ferāmus (*exhortation*); fers; potes.  
 4. Dicit sē velle; id ferre nōlumus; ire potes.  
 5. Tēcum haec ferre quam (*rather than*) cum eō ire māvult.  
 6. Nē eat; cum haec fieri possint.  
 7. Cicerō cōsul fit; imperātor fieri nōn potest.
- B. 1. He can; he wishes; he bears; he goes; it is done.  
 2. They go; they bear; they wish; they cannot; these things are done.  
 3. Since he cannot; let them not go; lest it be done; since he wishes.  
 4. He is unwilling; he prefers to go with you (*pl.*); they do not wish; they prefer; we prefer.  
 5. He learnt that they had not been able.  
 6. They said they could not.  
 7. They go; lest they go; since they are unwilling.  
 8. Caesar becomes leader; he does not wish to become king.

LESSON LXXIX

**Possum, posse, potui, I am able, I can**

(**pot-**, a stem = *able*, and **sum**, *I am*)

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	possum, potes, potest, etc.	possim, -sis, -sit, etc.
<i>Imperf.</i>	poteram	possem, -ēs, -et, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	poterō	
<i>Perf.</i>	potui	potuerim
<i>Pluperf.</i>	potueram	potuissem
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	potuerō	

The perfect stem **potu-** is said to be from an old verb **poteō**.

	INFINITIVES		
<i>Pres.</i>	posse	<i>Perf.</i>	potuisse
		<i>Fut.</i>	none

The participial form **potēns** is used as an adjective = *powerful*.

**PREPOSITIONAL COMPOUNDS OF SUM**

**absūm**, abesse, abfui, *am absent, am distant*.

**adsum**, adesse, adfui, *am present, am close at hand*.

**dēsum**, dē-esse, dēfui, *am lacking*.

Similarly : —

**intersum**, *take part in*; **obsum**, *am hurtful to*; **praesum**, *am at the head of* (*pres. part.*, **praesēns**, *present*), **supersum**, *am left over, survive*.

Observe **prōsum**, **prōd-esse**, **prōfui**, *am serviceable to*.

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	prō-sum	prō-sumus	prō-sim, etc.
	prōd-es	prōd-estis	prō-sis
	prōd-est	prō-sunt	prō-sit
<i>Imperf.</i>	prōd-eram		prōd-essem
<i>Fut.</i>	prōd-erō		
<i>Perf.</i>	prō-fui		prō-fuerim
<i>Plup.</i>	prō-fueram		prō-fuissem
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	prō-fuerō		

## INFINITIVES

<i>Pres.</i>	prōd-esse
<i>Perf.</i>	prō-fuisse
<i>Fut.</i>	prō-futūrus esse

*Observe prōd- before a vowel.*

**Rule of Syntax.**—Prepositional Compounds of **sum** usually govern the **Dative** case.

**Absum** usually takes **a, ab** with the Ablative.

## EXERCISE

- A.**
1. Nōn potest ire.
  2. Dīcit sē nōn posse.
  3. Poterat, potuerat.
  4. Poterit, potuerit.
  5. Peterunt, potuērunt, potuerint.
  6. Ut possīmus; nē possent.
  7. Cognōvit nāvēs cursum tenēre nōn potuisse.
  8. Abest, adsunt; praec-erat exercitūi.
  9. Prōderit amicīs.
  10. Potesne hōc facere?
  11. Mihi māximē prōdes.
- B.**
1. They cannot come.
  2. Since they are not able.
  3. He was able, he will be able, he had been able, he will have been able.
  4. They will be able, they will have been able, they have not been able.
  5. In order that we might be able.
  6. He believed that they could.
  7. Tell me who can.
  8. Thou canst not; lest thou be able.
  9. You (*pl.*) can; you (*pl.*) are serviceable.
  10. We shall be able; we used to be able.



## LESSON LXXX

## VOLŌ AND ITS COMPOUNDS

**volō, velle, voluī, wish**nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *am unwilling.*mālō, mälle, mālul, *prefer.*

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	volō, vīs, vult, etc.	velim, velīs, velit, etc.
<i>Imperf.</i>	volēbam	vellem
<i>Fut.</i>	volam, -ēs, -et, etc.	
<i>Perf.</i>	voluī	voluerim
<i>Pluperf.</i>	volueram	voluissem
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	voluerō	

	INFINITIVES	PARTICIPLE
<i>Pres.</i>	velle	<i>Pres.</i> volēns
<i>Perf.</i>	voluisse	

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
nōlō	mālō	nōlim	mālim
nōlēbam	mālēbam	nōllem	māllem
nōlam	mālam		
nōlul	mālul	nōluerim	māluerim
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVES	
<i>Pres.</i>	nōli      nōllite	<i>Pres.</i>	nōlle      mälle
<i>Fut.</i>	nōllitō    nōllitōte	<i>Perf.</i>	nōlhisse    māluisse
	nōllitō    nōlluntō		

## PARTICIPLE

*Pres.* nōlēns

Volō and mālō have no imperatives.

## EXERCISE

- A. 1. Visne? nōn vīs, māvult.  
 2. Dixit sē hōc facere mälle quam illud.  
 3. Veniet cum volet.  
 4. Rogō cūr nōlis mihi prōdesse.  
 5. Nōne eum vōs vidēre vultis?  
 6. Eōs arbitror voluisse.  
 7. Nōli, amice, meī obliviscī.  
 8. Nōn proficiētur, cum nōlit periculum facere.  
 9. Cūr nōn vult? 10. Quid vis?  
 11. Nesciō quid velis.
- B. 1. Does he wish? He will be unwilling.  
 2. I believe that you wish.  
 3. I will show you what I wish.  
 4. He showed them what he wished.  
 5. They would rather go than stay (*wish more to go than to stay*).  
 6. He wished (continuously); he wished (momentarily).  
 7. You do not wish, do you?  
 8. Do not think, friends, that I intend to come.

## Roman Names

Every free-born Roman had three names: *praenōmen*, *nōmen*, *cognōmen*, as:—

Marcus Tullius Cicerō.

Cāius (Gāius) Jūlius Caesar.

The *praenōmen* distinguished one member of the *familia* ('household') from another, as Eng. John, James, etc. The *nōmen* distinguished one *gēns*, or clan, from another; the *cognōmen*, one *familia* from another.

The *praenōmen* was usually abbreviated thus:—A. = Aulus; L. = Lūcius; C. = Cāius; M. = Marcus; Q. = QuIntus; T. = Titus; P. = Pūblius.

## LESSON LXXXI

## FERŌ

*Ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, bear, carry*

*Ferō contracts by omitting a short e or i between*

(1) *r* and *r*, **ferre** = *ferēre*.

(2) *r* and *a*, **fers** = *feris*.

(3) *r* and *t*, **fert** = *ferit*.

## ACTIVE

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	ferō, fers, fert, etc.	feram, -ās, -at, etc.
<i>Imperf.</i>	ferēbam	ferrem
<i>Fut.</i>	feram, -ēs, -et, etc.	
<i>Perf.</i>	tuli	tulerim
<i>Plup.</i>	tuleram	tulissem
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	tulerō	

## PASSIVE

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	feror, ferimur, ferris (-re), ferimini, fertur, feruntur	ferar, -āris (-re), -ātur, etc.
<i>Imperf.</i>	ferēbar	
<i>Fut.</i>	ferar, -āris (-re), -ētur, etc.	ferrer
<i>Perf.</i>	lātus sum	lātus sim
<i>Plup.</i>	lātus eram	lātus essem
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	lātus erō	

## IMPERATIVE

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	fer ferte	ferre ferimini
<i>Fut.</i>	fertō fertōte fertō feruntō	fertor fertor feruntor

PARTICIPLES			INFINITIVES		
	ACTIVE	PASSIVE		ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	ferēns	—	<i>Pres.</i>	ferre	ferrī
<i>Perf.</i>	—	lātus	<i>Perf.</i>	tulisse	lātus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	lātūrus	—	<i>Fut.</i>	lātūrus esso	lātum irī

**Gerund**, ferendī.

**Gerundive**, ferendus, -a, -um.

**Ferō** is a mixed verb. Its conjugation is really a union of three different verbs, whose stems are **fer-**, **tul-**, **lāt-**.

Compare Eng. *am, was, been; go, went, gone.*

#### EXERCISE

- A.
1. Fers, ferēs, ut ferās; fert, ferat, feret.
  2. Ferris, ferēris, ut ferāris.
  3. Fer, ferre; ferrī; fertis, ferte.
  4. Ut ferrēs, ferēs; ferēris, ut ferrēris.
  5. Tulisti; cum nōn tuleris.
  6. Tulerant, tulerint, cum tulisset.
  7. Auxiliō lātō, domum revertī vult.
  8. Dixit sē frātrī auxilium ferre velle.
  9. Auxilium ab eīs sibi ferrī crēdidit.
  10. Caesarī auxilium ferentēs interfectī sunt.
  11. Haec nobīs ant fortiter ferenda.
  12. Auxiliū ferendī causā vēnērunt.
  13. Sē auxilium lātūrōs (esse) pollicitī sunt.
  14. Id graviter ferēbant.
- B.
1. He bears; since he bears; he will bear.
  2. He comes to bear (*Why not Inf.?*); he came to bear.
  3. In order that aid may be brought; might be brought.
  4. Aid is being brought us; will be brought you (*sing.*).
  5. By bringing aid.

5. When he had brought aid to them.

(a) *cum*; (b) *postquam*; (c) *Abl. Absolute*.

7. They thought they ought to bring aid.

8. Since they are annoyed at these things.

C. *Parse and translate*:—

*ferria, ferēria, ferāria, ferrēria, ferre, ferri, fer.*

## COMPOUNDS OF FERŌ

(For reference)

*adferō (afferō), adferre, adtuli (attuli), adlātum (allātum), bring to.*

*auferō (ab and ferō), auferre, abs-tuli, ablātum, bear away from.*

*cōuferō, cōnferre, contuli, conlātum (collātum), bring together, betake,*

*bestow, devote.*

*dēferō, dēferre, dētuli, dēlātum, offer, confer upon, lay before.*

*differō, differre, distuli, dilātum (carry apart), put off.*

*effērō, efferre, ex-tuli, ē-lātum, carry forth, raise.*

*inferō, inferre, intuli, inlātum (illātum), carry into.*

*bellum tibi inferō, I wage war upon you.*

*oferō (offerō), offerre, obtuli, oblātum, offer, present.*

*perferō, perferre, pertuli, perlātum, bear, endure, carry (news).*

*referō, referre, ret(t)uli, relātum, carry back, submit a question.*

The perfect tenses of **subferō** are used to complete the conjugation of **tollō**, thus:—

*tollō, tollere, sustuli, sublātum, raise, remove, destroy.*

## Spring

Solvitur æris hiems grātā vice v̄eris et Favōni

Trahuntque siccās m̄achinae carinās

Ac neque jam stabulis gaudet pecus ant arātor Igul;

Nec prāta cānis albicant pruīnis.

HORACE. *Odes* I, 4.

## LESSON LXXXII

## EŌ

EŌ, Ire, Ivi, itum, go

(Stem I-, changed to e- before any vowel except e)

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	eō, Is, it, Imus, Itis, eunt	eam, eās, eat, etc.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Ibam (compare audiēbam)	Irem
<i>Fut.</i>	Ibō (compare audiam)	
<i>Perf.</i>	Ivi (i-I)	Iverim (i-erim)
<i>Plup.</i>	Iveram (i-eram)	Ivissem (i-issem)
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	Iverō (i-erō)	

IMPERATIVE			
<i>Pres.</i>	I	Ite	
<i>Fut.</i>	Itō	Itōte	
	Itō	enutō	

	PARTICIPLES			INFINITIVES
<i>Pres.</i>	iēns	iēns	<i>Pres.</i>	Ire ( <i>Impersonal Passive</i> Iri)
	euntis	euntis	<i>Perf.</i>	Ivisse (i-isse)
	etc.	etc.		
<i>Fut.</i>	itūrus		<i>Fut.</i>	itūrus esse

(Impersonal Perf. Pass. itum est.)

**Gerund**, eundi.**Gerundive** (impersonal), eundum (est).

Compounds: —

trānseō, -Ire, -Ivi, (-ii), -itum, *cross*.  
redeō, -Ire, -Ivi (-ii), -itum, *return*.

Transitive compounds have the regular Passive: trānseor, -Iris, -Itur, etc.

## EXERCISE

- A. 1. Rōmam ad amīcōs redeunt.  
 2. Flūmen trānsitūrī erant.  
 3. Hōc eī dedī ut libenter īret.  
 4. Ibit, veniet.  
 5. Eō (*adv.*) cum īvissēt, omnia cognōvit.  
 6. Nōlīte īre.  
 7. Portam claudet nē quis exeat.  
 8. Hostēs jam flūmen trānsiisse neque redīre velle  
 audīvit.
- B. 1. They go, they were going.  
 2. They were coming, they come.  
 3. They will go, they will come.  
 4. We were going, we shall go, thou wilt go.  
 5. When they had gone.  
 6. Go thou, thou goest, go ye, ye go.  
 7. They crossed three rivers.  
 8. Nor will any one return.  
 9. For the purpose of crossing.  
 10. He made an attack upon them (as they were) cross-  
 ing.  
 11. They promised to return next day.  
 12. He will come; he will not go.  
 13. The river will be crossed; in order that it may be  
 crossed.

## Summer

Jam pāstor umbrās cum grege languidō  
 Rivūnque fessus quaerit et horridi  
 Dāmēta Silvāni, caretque  
 Ripa vagis tacitura ventis.

HORACE, *Odes* III, 29.

## LESSON LXXXIII

## FĪŌ

FĪŌ, fieri, factus sum

(1) to be made, (2) to be done, (3) to become, happen, take place

Passive of faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum, make, do

	INDICATIVE	
	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	faciō (like capiō)	fīō, fīs, fit, fīmus, fītis, fiunt
<i>Inperf.</i>	faciēbam	fīēbam
<i>Fut.</i>	faciam, -iēs, -iet, etc.	fīam, fīēs, fiet, etc.
<i>Perf.</i>	fēcī	factus sum
<i>Plup.</i>	fēceram	factus eram
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	fēcero	factus ero

	SUBJUNCTIVE	
	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	faciam, -iās, -iat, etc.	fīam, fīās, fiat, etc.
<i>Inperf.</i>	facerem, -erēs, -eret, etc.	fīerem, -erēs, -eret, etc.
<i>Perf.</i>	fēcirim	factus sim
<i>Plup.</i>	fēcissem	factus essem

	IMPERATIVE			
	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
<i>Pres.</i>	fac	facite	fī	fīte
<i>Fut.</i>	facitō	facitōte	fītō	fītōte
	facitō	faciuntō	fītō	fiuntō

## PARTICIPLES

## INFINITIVES

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE		ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	faciēns	—	<i>Pres.</i>	facere	fieri
<i>Perf.</i>	—	factus	<i>Perf.</i>	fēcisse	factus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	factūrus	—	<i>Fut.</i>	factūrus esse	factum iri



Gerund, faciendī.

Gerundive, faciendus, -a, -um.

Compounds of faciō are of two types: —

1. Prepositional, as: —

interficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum, *kill*.

cōficiō, etc., *finish*.

efficiō, etc., *effect, accomplish*.

perficiō, etc., *complete*.

adficiō (afficiō), *affect*.

These take the regular Passive, as: —

interficior, -fici, -fectus sum.

2. Compounds formed from a verb or adverb: —

patefaciō (*from pateō*), -facere, -fēci, -factum, *open*.

Passive, patefiō, -fieri, -factus sum.

satisfaciō, -facere, -fēci, -factum, *make amends*.

Rule of Syntax: Passive verbs of *making, calling, etc.*, take a Predicate Noun or Adjective agreeing with the Subject.

EXERCISE

- A. 1. Id nōn faciet.
2. Haec nōn fient.
3. Jūstitia fiat (*command*).
4. Lēgātī certiōrēs fiunt.
5. Caesarem certiōrem faciunt.
6. Caesar ab eīs certior factus est.
7. Cum hōc fierī animadvertisset.
8. Multī, flūmen trānseuntēs, interficiuntur.
9. Arma trādite, nisi interfici vultis.
10. Ille dux fiet.
11. Caesarne rēx fieri nōluit?



# MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



4.5

2.8

2.5

5.0

3.2

2.2

4.6

5.3

3.6

6.3

7.1

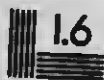
4.0

2.0

8.0

9.0

10.0



APPLIED IMAGE Inc

1653 East Main Street  
Rochester, New York 14609 USA  
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone  
(716) 288 - 5989 - Fax

- B. 1. What is being done?  
 2. Tell me what is happening.  
 3. He learnt what was taking place (say "what things were").  
 4. They believed that Caesar wished to be made king.  
 5. Caesar will not be made king.  
 6. In order that he may do; in order that it may be done.  
 7. Let us inform the people.  
 8. The Roman people will be informed of our victory (of = about).  
 9. When these things were being done.  
 10. Do thou; become thou; do ye; become ye.  
 11. Let Labienus be made lieutenant.  
 12. He shall be made; he will be made.  
 13. They will call (*appellō, -āre*) him king.  
 14. He will be called king.  
 15. They will bring the ship to shore (*appellō, -ere*).  
 16. The ship was brought to shore.

### Spring

Jam v̄ris comitēs quae mare temperant  
 Impellunt animae lintea Thrāciae;  
 Jam nec prāta rigent nec fluvii strepunt  
 Hibernā nive turgidi.

Dicunt in tenerō grāmine pinguium  
 Cūstōdēs ovium carmina fistulā,  
 Delectantque deum cui pecus et nigri  
 Collēs Arcadiae placent.

HORACE, *Odes* IV, 12.

## LESSON LXXXIV

## DŌ

DŌ, dāre, dedī, dātum, give

DŌ is irregular in having *ā* in certain forms. The perf. stem *ded-* is also peculiar, — an instance of reduplication.

	INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE		
<i>Pres.</i>	dō	dās	dat	dem	dēs	det
	dāmus	dātis	dant	dēmus	dētis	dent
<i>Imperf.</i>	dābam			dārem		
<i>Fut.</i>	dābō					
<i>Perf.</i>	dedī			dederim		
<i>Plup.</i>	dederam			dedissem		
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	dederō					

IMPERATIVE dā, dāte, etc.

PARTICIPLES dāns, dātūrus, dātus.

INFINITIVES dāre, dedisse, dātūrus esse, dārī, etc.

GERUND dandī.

GERUNDIVE dandus, -a, -um.

## COMPOUNDS OF DŌ

## I. Dissyllabic compounds are of the Third Conjugation: —

abdō, -ēre, ab-didī, ab-ditum, *hide*.

condō, -ēre, con-didī, con-ditum, *found (a city)*.

dēdō, -ēre, dēdidī, dē-ditum, *surrender*.

prōdō, *betray*; red-dō, *give back, return (distinguish from red-eō, -ire, -ivī, -itum, go back, return)*.

trādō, *hand over, surrender, hand down*.

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	abdō, -dis, -dit, etc.	abdā, -dās, -dat
<i>Imperf.</i>	abdēbam	abderem
<i>Fut.</i>	abdā	
<i>Perf.</i>	abdīdī	abdīderim
<i>Plup.</i>	abdīderam	abdīdissem
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	abdīderō	

IMPERATIVE	abdē, -dite.
PARTICIPLES	abdēns, abditūrus, abditus.
INFINITIVES	abdere, abdidisse, abdi, etc.
GERUND	abdendi.
GERUNDIVE	abdendus, -a, -um.

II. Those of more than two syllables are of the First Conjugation, like the simple verb: —

circumdō, -dāre, -dedi, -dātum, *surround*.

#### EXERCISE

- A. 1. Dant; ut dent; ut obsidēs reddant; ut redeant.  
 2. Dabit; reddet; redibit; reddidit; rediit.  
 3. Oppidum mūrō (*Abl.*) circumdedit.  
 4. Urbī (*Dat.*) mūrōs circumdabit.  
 5. Urbem dēdet. Arma militēs trādent.  
 6. Circumdant castra vāllō.  
 7. Cīvēs oppidum hostibus prōdunt.  
 8. Sē in silvās abdidērunt.  
 9. Rōma ā Rōmulō condita est.  
 10. Obsidēs dedērunt; urbem nōn dēdidērunt.
- B. 1. They wished Caesar to give back their hostages.  
 2. He gives; he surrenders; he will surround; he will betray.  
 3. To give; to give back; to return (*go back*).  
 4. To be given; to be handed down; to have surrendered.  
 5. Having given hostages, they were sent home.  
 6. In order that they might give; might give back; might go back.  
 7. Give (thou); give (thou) back; return (thou).  
 8. Thou givest; preparest; dost not obey.  
 9. Thou sparest; wilt spare; lest thou spare.  
 10. You (*pl.*) give, obey, spare.

## LESSON LXXXV

## DEFECTIVE VERBS

Defective verbs lack certain forms.

The following are used only in the perfect tenses: —

**Coepī**, *I began*; **meminī**, *I remember*; **ōdī**, *I hate*.

## INDICATIVE

<i>Perf.</i>	coepī	meminī	ōdī
<i>Plup.</i>	coeperam	memineram	ōderam
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	coeperō	meminerō	ōderō

## SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Perf.</i>	coeperim	meminerim	ōderim
<i>Plup.</i>	coepissem	meminissem	ōdissem

## IMPERATIVE

*Sing.* mementō; *Plur.* mementōte

## PARTICIPLES

<i>Fut. Act.</i>	coeptūrus	ōsūrus
<i>Perf. Pass.</i>	coeptus	ōsus

## INFINITIVES

<i>Perf.</i>	coepisse	meminisse	ōdisse
<i>Fut.</i>	coeptūrus esse	ōsūrus esse	

1. Note that **meminī** and **ōdī**, though Perfect in form, are Present in sense. Similarly, the Pluperfect and Fut. Perf. have the force of the Imperfect and Future: —

**memineram**, *I remembered*; **ōderō**, *I shall hate*.

2. When **coepī** takes the Passive Infin. it is Passive itself: —

**Lapidēs jaci coepti sunt**, *Stones begun to be thrown*.

**Inquit and Ait**

**Inquit, ait.** "says he," "he said," are the only common forms of **inquam** and **aiō**. Other forms also occur.

**Dicō** governs the Accus. and Infin.

**Inquit** is used parenthetically in Direct Quotation, as:—

**Dicit sē brevi ventūrum esse,** *He says he will soon come.*

**"Brevi," inquit, "veniam,"** *"I shall soon come," says he.*

**IMPERSONAL VERBS**

Impersonal verbs are used only in the Third Person Singular. They are translated into English with the Impersonal or the Representative Subject "it." In Latin they either have no subject expressed or have a clause, an Infinitive or a Nenter Pronoun as Subject.

Some of the most common impersonal verbs are the following:—

**licet,** *it is permitted.*

**libet,** *it pleases.*

**oportet,** *it is necessary, it behooves.*

**cōstat,** *it is agreed, is evident.*

**pudet,** *it shames.*

**paenitet,** *it repents.*

The following is a model for all those ending in **-et** (Second Conjugation):—

**licet, licēre, licuit**

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	licet	liceat
<i>Imperf.</i>	licēbat	licēret
<i>Fut.</i>	licēbit	
<i>Perf.</i>	licuit	licuerit
<i>Plup.</i>	licuerat	licuisset
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	licuerit	

**INFINITIVES**

<i>Pres.</i>	licēre	<i>Perf.</i>	licuisse
--------------	--------	--------------	----------



Intransitive verbs are often used in the Passive impersonally. This includes the Impersonal Gerundive.

**Ventum est**, *The act of coming was performed; they came.*

**Tibi favētur**, *Favor is shown to you.*

**Lēgibus ab omnibus<sup>1</sup> pārendum est**, *The laws must be obeyed by all.*

EXERCISE

- A. 1. Licet tibi ire si vis.      2. Cum non mihi liceat.  
 3. Dixit nobis hoc facere licere.  
 4. Nunc te pudet?      5. Paenitebit eos.  
 6. Oportuit eum ad me litteras mittere.  
 7. Facies quod tibi libebit.  
 8. Ad Britanniam perventum est.  
 9. Ab omnibus ad arma concurritur.  
 10. Coeperunt; oderunt; oderant; meminerint.  
 11. Tu laudaris; mihi invidetur.  
 12. Ei loquenti non credebatur.
- B. 1. He is permitted to speak.  
 2. You might have gone (*it was permitted you to go*).  
 3. You ought not to have done this (*it did not behoove you to do*). How would the Gerundive express this?  
 4. Since I was not permitted.  
 5. We shall repent.      6. I think he regrets (*repents*).  
 7. It is agreed that we ought to winter in Gaul (1. *oportet*; 2. Gerundive).  
 8. They fought long and fiercely (*it was fought*).  
 9. He said that he hated no one.  
 10. The women and children will be spared.  
 11. He remembers; since they hate.  
 12. Caesar must be obeyed by the soldiers.

<sup>1</sup> Note that where the Gerundive governs a Dative object, the Agent is expressed by **ab** with the Ablative to avoid ambiguity.

## READING LESSON

*(Indirect Questions)*

## GOSSIPING HABITS OF THE GAULS

Hīs dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et infirmitatem<sup>1</sup> Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōsiliīs capiendīs mōbilēs,<sup>2</sup> nihil hīs committendum<sup>3</sup> (esse) existimāvit.<sup>4</sup> Est enim hōc Gallicae cōsuētūdinis.<sup>5</sup> Viātōrēs<sup>6</sup> etiam invitōs cōsistere<sup>7</sup> cōgunt. Quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cognōverit quaerunt. Mercātōrēs vulgus in oppidīs circumsistit. Quibus ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque<sup>8</sup> ibi rēs cognōverint prōnūntiāre cōgunt. Ita incertīs rūmōribus serviunt<sup>9</sup> quod mercātōrēs plērumque<sup>10</sup> ficta<sup>11</sup> respondent.

*Translate : —*

1. What have you heard?
2. What things had they ascertained?
3. Whence do you come?
4. Whither are you going? Tell us where you are going.
5. They thought he was not slow (*tardus*) in forming his plan.
6. I must form a plan as quickly as possible, — more quickly.
7. Having formed this design, they decide (*cōstituō*) to resist Caesar (*resistō* with *Dat.*).

<sup>1</sup> *weakness, fickleness.*<sup>2</sup> (*moveō, move*) *changeable.*<sup>3</sup> *trust.*<sup>4</sup> = *arbitror.*<sup>5</sup> = *mōs.*<sup>6</sup> *via, a way.*<sup>7</sup> *stand still, stop.*<sup>8</sup> = *et quās* (not from *quisque, each*).<sup>9</sup> distinguish *serviō* from *servō*.<sup>10</sup> *usually.*<sup>11</sup> *fiŕgō, fabricate; compare "fiction."*

## LESSON LXXXVI

## SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN AN INDIRECT STATEMENT

The verb in a subordinate clause of an Indirect Statement is put in the Subjunctive Mood ; *e.g.* : —

Vidi dncem quī Gallōs vicit : **Direct Statement.**

Dixit sē ducem vīdisse quī Gallōs viciisset.

*He said that he had seen the leader who had conquered the Gauls: Indirect Statement.*

Note carefully that the principal clause of the Direct Statement is represented by the *that* clause of the Indirect Statement ; hence, **Acc. with Inf.** But **viciisset** is subjunctive because in the original subordinate clause.

Compare **vicit** and **viciisset** as regards **Tense**, and observe the **Sequence**.

## EXERCISE

1. I have the book you gave me.
2. He said he had the book you had given him (= himself).
3. I shall send all the soldiers I have.
4. He promised to send all the soldiers he had.
5. He perceived that they were not doing what they had promised (*what = that which*).
6. They were not doing what they had promised.
7. Our ancestors loved Britain because it was their native land.
8. Caesar knew that the Britons would fight, because they loved their native land.
9. There are no lands<sup>1</sup> that I can give you.
10. He said there were no lands that he could give them.

<sup>1</sup> agri, -orum.

## LESSON LXXXVII

## RESULT CLAUSES

Adverbial Clauses of Result are technically called **Consecutive Clauses**, because they denote the *consequence* (cōsequor, *I follow*).

They are usually introduced by: —

ut, (*so*) that.

ut nōn, (*so*) that not.

The verb of a Result Clause is in the Subjunctive Mood.

The Negative of 'Consecutive ut is ut nōn.

The Negative of Final ut is nē.

Distinguish carefully Purpose from Result: —

A purpose is a *previous intention*.

A result is the *consequence that follows*.

## PURPOSE

Militēs per dēnsās silvās dūxit nē hostēs eōs vidērent.

*He led his soldiers through thick woods in order that the enemy might not see them.*

Notice the Eng. Subjunctive: "might see."

## RESULT

Silvae tam dēnsae erant ut hostēs eōs nōn viderint.

*The woods were so thick that the enemy did not see them.*

Notice the Eng. Indicative: "did see."

## TENSE

In Purpose clauses, the Law of Sequence is very exact (see page 242): —

dūcit nē videant, *he leads that they may not see.*

dūxit nē vidērent, *he led that they might not see.*

In Result clauses, there is more freedom as regards tense. The meaning of the Result clause decides, without special reference to the principal clause.

Note specially the difference in the following: —

ut **nōn viderint** (Perfect), so that they did not (on that occasion) see (one specific act).

ut **nōn vidērent** (Imperfect), so that they would not (at any time) see (vague possibility of recurrence).

Observe the following contrasts: —

PURPOSE	RESULT
ut, (in order) that.	ut, (so) that.
nē, (in order) that not, lest.	ut <b>nōn</b> , (so) that not.
nē quis, lest any one, (in order) that no one.	ut <b>nēmō</b> , (so) that no one.
nē quid, lest anything, (in order) that nothing.	ut <b>nihil</b> , (so) that nothing.
nē umquam, lest ever, (in order) that never.	ut <b>numquam</b> , (so) that never.

### EXERCISE

(Distinguish Purpose from Result)

1. The valor of the soldiers was so great that no one withdrew (*discēdō*).
2. He ordered (*jubeō*) the gates to be closed that no one might withdraw.
3. The wall was so high that they saw nothing.
4. He built the walls high, that nothing might be seen.
5. The storm was so great that the soldiers could not land (*1. specific; 2. vague*).
6. The enemy kept hurling darts to prevent him from landing his (inen). (Say in order that he might not be able to land.)

What difference between *ēgredior* and *expōnō*?

7. They advanced so rapidly that they completed (*cōficiō*) the whole march in three days.
8. The wall is so high that I can see no one.
9. I shall build a wall so high that you can see no one; that you can hurt no one (*noceō*, what case?).
10. He has surrounded us with so many soldiers that we shall never escape (*evādō*, Periphrastic Future Subjunctive, see page 231).
11. He sent as many soldiers as possible, that the enemy might never escape.
12. They so (adv. *adeō*) feared the Germans that no one wished to wander from home.

#### Charon

Antiqui credebant animas hominum post mortem flumen Stygem transvehi a sene Charonte. Quae cum ad ripas fluminis, a deo Mercurio ductae, venerant,<sup>1</sup> obolum quem propinquum in os deposuerant Charonti pendebant. Hoc praemio inductus eas cymbam suam conscendere sinebat; deinde remigare incipiebat et mox manes mortuorum ad alteram ripam in fines Plutonis incolumes ducebat. Mercurius nonnumquam, cum major multitudo litrem conscenderat, remore prehensio senem remigando adjuvare consueverat.

<sup>1</sup>Cum, *whenever*, denoting repetition, takes the Pluperf. Indic. where cum, *when*, denoting one occurrence, would take the Pluperf. Subj.

ii)

re;

we

ab-

ny

ne

en

lū-

ro-

niō

de

um

us

at,

ere



CHARON  
271

## LESSON LXXXVIII

## PREPOSITIONS

1. The following prepositions govern the **Ablative** only : —

<b>ā, ab (abs)</b>	<b>ē, ex</b>	<b>sine</b>
<b>cōram</b>	<b>prae</b>	<b>tenus</b>
<b>cum</b>	<b>prō</b>	
<b>dē</b>		

**ā** before consonants except **h**; **ab** before vowels, **h**, and some other consonants.

(1) *from*; (2) *by*; (3) *on the side of, on*.

**cōram**, *in the presence of*.

**cum**, *with*.

**dē**, (1) *down from*; (2) *about, concerning*; (3) *from among*.

**ē** before consonants except **h**; **ex** before vowels, **h**, and some other consonants.

(1) *out of*; (2) *in accordance with*.

**prae**, (1) *in front of (rare)*; (2) *in comparison with*; (3) *for = on account of*.

**prō**, (1) *in front of*; (2) *in behalf (or defence) of*; (3) *instead of, as an equivalent of*; (4) *in accordance with*.

**sine**, *without*.

**tenus**, *as far as*; always follows its case, as *flūmine tenus*.

2. The following prepositions govern the **Accusative** or **Ablative** according to the meaning : —



PREPOSITIONS WITH TWO CASES

PREPOSITION	ABLATIVE (Implying Rest, Continuance)	ACCUSATIVE (Implying Motion)
<b>in</b> <b>sub (subter)</b>	<i>in</i> <i>beneath, under, as: —</i> <b>sub arbore sedet, he sits</b> <i>beneath a tree</i>	<i>into</i> <i>approaching under;</i> <i>close up under, as: —</i> <b>sub montem, at the foot</b> <i>of the mountain</i>
<b>super</b>	(1) <i>over, above</i> (2) <i>upon = de, concern-</i> <i>ing</i>	<b>sub noctem, at night-fall.</b> <i>above, beyond, added to</i> <b>vulnus super vulnus.</b> <i>wound upon wound</i> <b>super octingentōs annōs.</b> <i>more than 800 years</i>

3. The following prepositions govern the **Accusative** only: —

**ad**, to, towards; by (of time); for (purpose); up to (of time or number); near; according to.

**adversus**, against.

**ante**, before (of time more often than of place).

**apud**, near, among, at the house of, in the presence of (French *chez*).

**circum (circā)**, around, about.

**circiter**, about (of number), is an adverb.

**cis, citrā**, on this side of.

**contrā**, against.

**ergā**, towards (of conduct or attitude).

**extrā**, outside of, beyond.

**inter**, between, among.

**intrā**, within.

**ob**, against; on account of.

**penes**, in the power of.

**per**, through, along.

**post**, after, behind.

**praeter**, except, past, besides.

**propter**, on account of.

**trāns**, across, beyond.

**ūltrā**, on the other side of, beyond.

**versus**, towards.

## EXERCISE

1. To the wall of the city; into the city.
2. Away from the wall; out of the city.
3. Around the town; above the tree.
4. He was kindly towards me (*ergā* or *in*).
5. On account of the cold (*ob* or *propter*).
6. Within the walls; within three days.
7. On this side of the Rhine.
8. Among the Gauls; in the neighborhood of the river.
9. Before the sixth month; before the camp.
10. The hostages were brought by the (appointed) day.
11. He waited till the ninth hour.
12. Throughout all these years; as far as I am concerned (*per*).
13. Across the sea, the valley, the mountains.
14. He sent all but three cohorts.
15. After the third year.
16. In return for this kindness (*pro*).
17. For this reason (*ob* or *propter*).
18. Without fear.
19. There was a wall about the town; he waited about two hours; they heard about his approach.

**The Changing Seasons Remind Us of Death**

Diffūgēre nivēs, redeunt jam grāmina campīs  
 Arboribusque comae;  
 Mūtāt terra vicēs et dēcrēscentia rīpās  
 Flūmina praetereunt;  
 Immortālia nē spērēs monet annus et alium  
 Quae rapit hōra diem.  
 Frīgora mītēscent Zephyrīs, vēr prōterit aestās  
 Interitūra simul  
 Pōmifer auctumnus frūgēs effūderit, et mox  
 Brūma recurrit iners.

HORACE, *Odes* IV, 7,

## LIST OF VERBS

All the verbs in this list are of ordinary occurrence, and their principal parts should be memorized.

Verbs that have occurred frequently in the previous lessons are not necessarily included.

## FIRST CONJUGATION

## PERFECTS IN -ŪI

crepō	crepāre	crepui	crepitum	<i>rattle</i>
cubō	cubāre	cubuī	cubitum	<i>lie down</i>
domō	domāre	domuī	domitum	<i>tame</i>
fricō	fricāre	fricuī	frictum <i>and</i> } fricātum	<i>rub</i>
micō	micāre	micuī	—————	<i>dart, flash</i>

But *dīmicō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *fight*.

Compounds of *plicō*: —

<i>plicō</i>	<i>plicāre</i>	<i>plicāvī or</i> <i>plicuī</i>	<i>plicātum or</i> <i>plicitum</i> } <i>fold</i>
<i>secō</i>	<i>secāre</i>	<i>secuī</i>	<i>sectum</i> <i>cut</i>
<i>sonō</i>	<i>sonāre</i>	<i>sonuī</i>	<i>sonitum</i> ( <i>sonātūrus</i> ) <i>sound</i>
<i>tonō</i>	<i>tonāre</i>	<i>tonuī</i>	————— <i>thunder</i>
<i>vetō</i>	<i>vetāre</i>	<i>vetuī</i>	<i>vetitum</i> <i>forbid</i>

## PERFECT WITH Lengthened Vowel

<i>juvō</i>	<i>juvāre</i>	<i>jūvī</i>	<i>jūtum</i> ( <i>juvātūrus</i> ) <i>aid</i>
<i>lavō</i>	<i>lavāre</i>	<i>lāvī</i>	<i>lantum or</i> <i>lōtum</i> } <i>wash</i>

## SECOND CONJUGATION

## PERFECT IN -VĪ

<i>dēleō</i>	<i>dēlēre</i>	<i>dēlēvī</i>	<i>dēlētum</i>	<i>destroy</i>
<i>flēō</i>	<i>flēre</i>	<i>flēvī</i>	<i>flētum</i>	<i>weep</i>

Compounds of *pleō* :—

<i>pleō</i>	<i>plēre</i>	<i>plēvi</i>	<i>plētum</i>	<i>fill</i>
<i>aboleō</i>	<i>abolēre</i>	<i>abolēvi</i>	<i>abolitum</i>	<i>destroy.</i>

PERFECT IN *-ui*

<i>arceō</i>	<i>arcēre</i>	<i>arceui</i>	—	<i>keep off</i>
<i>coerceō</i>	<i>coercēre</i>	<i>coerceui</i>	<i>coercitum</i>	<i>hold in check</i>
<i>exerceō</i>	<i>exercēre</i>	<i>exerceui</i>	<i>exercitum</i>	<i>practise</i>
<i>calcō</i>	<i>calēre</i>	<i>calui</i>	( <i>calitūrus</i> )	<i>be warm</i>
<i>carcō</i>	<i>carēre</i>	<i>carui</i>	( <i>caritūrus</i> )	<i>be without</i>
<i>jaceō</i>	<i>jacēre</i>	<i>jacui</i>	<i>jacitum</i>	<i>lie</i>
<i>mereō</i>	<i>merēre</i>	<i>merui</i>	<i>meritum</i>	<i>deserve</i>

## Also deponent.

<i>cēnseō</i>	<i>cēnsēre</i>	<i>cēnsui</i>	<i>cēnsium</i>	<i>estimate</i>
<i>doceō</i>	<i>docēre</i>	<i>docui</i>	<i>doctum</i>	<i>teach</i>
<i>misceō</i>	<i>miscēre</i>	<i>miscui</i>	<i>mīxtum</i>	<i>mix</i>
<i>torreō</i>	<i>torrēre</i>	<i>torruī</i>	<i>tostum</i>	<i>roast</i>

PERFECT IN *-si*

<i>augeō</i>	<i>augēre</i>	<i>auxī</i>	<i>auctum</i>	<i>increase</i>
<i>torqueō</i>	<i>torquēre</i>	<i>torsi</i>	<i>tortum</i>	<i>twist</i>
<i>rideō</i>	<i>ridēre</i>	<i>risi</i>	<i>rīsum</i>	<i>laugh</i>
<i>suādeō</i>	<i>suādēre</i>	<i>suāsi</i>	<i>suāsum</i>	<i>urge, advise</i>
<i>ardeō</i>	<i>ardēre</i>	<i>arsī</i>	<i>arsum</i>	<i>burn</i>
<i>haereō</i>	<i>haerēre</i>	<i>haesi</i>	<i>haesum</i>	<i>stick</i>
<i>maneō</i>	<i>manēre</i>	<i>mānsi</i>	<i>mānsium</i>	<i>remain</i>

## Reduplicated PERFECT

<i>mordeō</i>	<i>mordēre</i>	<i>momordī</i>	<i>morsum</i>	<i>bite</i>
<i>spondeō</i>	<i>spondēre</i>	<i>spopondī</i>	<i>spōnsum</i>	<i>promise</i>
<i>toudeō</i>	<i>tondēre</i>	<i>totondī</i>	<i>tōnsum</i>	<i>shear, shave</i>
<i>pendeō</i>	<i>pendēre</i>	<i>pependī</i>	—	<i>hang</i>

THIRD CONJUGATION

277

PERFECT WITH Lengthened Vowel

caveō	cavēre	cāvī	cautum	<i>take care</i>
faveō	favēre	fāvī	fautum	<i>favor</i>
foveō	fovēre	fōvī	fōtum	<i>cherish</i>
moveō	movēre	mōvī	mōtum	<i>more</i>
sedeō	sedēre	sēdī	sessum	<i>sit</i>
videō	vidēre	vīdī	vīsum	<i>see</i>

DEPONENTS

mereor	merērī	meritus	<i>earn</i>
fateor	fatērī	fassus	<i>confess</i>
cōnfiteor	cōnfītērī	cōnfessus	<i>confess</i>
reor	rērī	ratus	<i>think</i>

THIRD CONJUGATION

PERFECT IN -sī; SUPINE IN -tum

carpō	carpere	carpsī	carptum	<i>pluck</i>
nūbō	nūbere	nūpsī	nūptum	<i>marry</i>
<small>(used of the woman only)</small>				
tegō	tegere	tēxī	tēctum	<i>cover</i>
adfligō	adfligere	adflixī	adflictum	<i>wreck</i>
<small>(affligō)</small>				
trahō	trahere	trāxī	trāctum	<i>draw</i>
vehō	vehere	vexī	vectum	<i>carry</i>
cingō	cingere	cīnxī	cīnctum	<i>g</i>
jungō	jungere	jūnxī	jūnctum	<i>join</i>
figō	figere	fīnxī	fictum	<i>form</i>
vivō	vivere	vīxī	victum	<i>live</i>
ūrō	ūrere	ussī	ūstum	<i>burn</i>

So scribō, regō, dicō, dūcō, gerō.

PERFECT IN -sī; SUPINE IN -sum

figō	figere	fīxī	fixum	<i>fasten</i>
mergō	mergere	mersī	mersum	<i>sink</i>
flectō	flectere	flexī	flexum	<i>bend</i>

nectō	nectere	nexuf	nexum	<i>weave</i>
vādō	vādere	-vāsī <sup>1</sup>	-vāsum <sup>1</sup>	<i>go, march</i>
claudō	claudere	clausī	clausum	<i>close</i>
lūdō	ludere	lūsī	lūsuum	<i>play</i>
cēdō	cēdere	cessī	cessum	<i>go, yield</i>
dīvidō	dīvidere	dīvisī	dīvisum	<i>divide</i>
premō	premere	pressī	pressum	<i>press</i>

**Reduplicated PERFECT**

Compounds of sistō: —

resistō	resistere	resīti	——	<i>resist</i>
cadō	cadere	cecidī	cāsum	<i>fall</i>
caedō	caedere	cecidī	caesum	<i>cut, kill</i>
pendō	pendere	pependī	pēnsuum	<i>weigh, pry</i>
tendō	tendere	tetendī	tentum (tēnsuum)	<i>stretch</i>
fallō	fallere	fefelli	falsum	<i>deceive</i>
pellō	pellere	pepulī	pulsuum	<i>drive</i>

Distinguish appellō (adpellō), appellere, appulī, appulsum, *bring to shore*, from appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *call, name*.

currō	currere	cucurrī	cursum	<i>run</i>
parcō	parcere	peperci	parsum	<i>spare</i>
canō	canere	cecini	cantum	<i>sing</i>
tangō	tangere	tetigī	tāctum	<i>touch</i>

**PERFECT Originally Reduplicated**

scindō	scindere	scidi	scissum	<i>tear apart</i>
tollō	tollere	sustulī	(sublātum)	<i>lift</i>

tulī *originally* tetulī; see ferō.

**PERFECT WITH Lengthened Vowel**

agō	agere	ēgī	āctum	<i>drive, do</i>
subigō	subigere	subēgī	subāctum	<i>subdue</i>

<sup>1</sup> In compounds invādō, cōvādō, etc.

THIRD CONJUGATION

279

eōgō	eōgere	eoēgi	eoāctum	<i>compel, collect</i>
frangō	frangero	frēgi	frāctum	<i>break</i>
perfringō	-fringere	-frēgi	-frāctum	<i>break through</i>
legō	legere	lēgi	lēctum	<i>gather, choose, read</i>

colligō	colligere	collēgi	collēctum	<i>collect</i>
dēligō	dēligere	dēlēgi	dēlēctum	<i>choose</i>

Distinguish from dēligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *bind*.

diligō	diligere	dilēxi	dilēctum	<i>love</i>
intellegō	intellegere	intellēxi	intellēctum	<i>understand</i>
emō	emere	ēmī	ēemptum	<i>buy</i>
sūmō	sūmere	sūmpsi	sūmptum	<i>take</i>
rumpō	rumpere	rūpi	ruptum	<i>break</i>
edō	edere	ēdi	ēsum	<i>eat</i>
fundō	fundere	fūdī	fūsum	<i>pour, scatter, rout</i>

So vincō, relinquō.

PERFECT STEM THE SAME AS THE PRESENT STEM

dēfendō	dēfendere	dēfendi	dēfēsum	<i>defend</i>
vertō	vertere	verti	versum	<i>turn</i>
icō	icere	iei	ictum	<i>strike</i>
solvō	solvere	solvi	solūtum	<i>loose</i>
volvō	volvere	volvi	volūtum	<i>roll</i>

PERFECT IN -uī

gignō	gignere	genuī	genitum	<i>beget, bring forth</i>
fremō	fremere	fremuī	—	<i>roar</i>
metō	metere	messuī	messum	<i>reap</i>
alō	alere	aluī	altum (alitur)	<i>nourish</i>
colō	colere	coluī	cultum	<i>cultivate</i>
eōnsulō	eōnsulere	eōnsuluī	eōnsultum	<i>consult</i>
dēserō	dēserere	dēseruī	dēsertum	<i>desert</i>

And other compounds of serō, serere, seruī, *join*.

texō	texere	texuī	textum	<i>weave</i>
pōnō	pōnere	posuī	positum	<i>place</i>

## PERFECT IN -VI

sinō	sinere	sivi	situm	<i>allow</i>
serō	serere	sēvi	satum	<i>sow, plant</i>

Distinguish from serō, *join*.

dēcernō	dēcernere	dēcrēvi	dēcrētum	<i>decide</i>
---------	-----------	---------	----------	---------------

From cernō, *separate*.

petō	petere	petivi	petitum	<i>seek</i>
sternō	sternere	strāvi	strātum	<i>spread</i>
quaerō	quaerere	quaesivi	quaesitum	<i>seek</i>
arcessō	arcessere	arcessivi	arcessitum	<i>summon</i>
laccessō	laccessere	laccessivi	laccessitum	<i>provoke</i>

## VERBS WITH PRESENT STEM ENDING IN -U

statuō	statuere	statui	statutum	<i>set up, resolve</i>
--------	----------	--------	----------	------------------------

Similarly cōstituō, *resolve*.

struō	struere	struxi	structum	<i>build</i>
-------	---------	--------	----------	--------------

Similarly Instruō, *draw up*.

## VERBS LIKE Capiō — PRESENT STEM ENDING IN -I

cupiō	cupere	cupivi	cupitum	<i>desire</i>
rapiō	rapere	rapui	raptum	<i>snatch</i>
quatiō	quaterere	————	quassum	<i>shake</i>

Compounds: —

concutiō	concutere	concuſsi	concuſsum	<i>shake vio- lently</i>
pariō	parere	peperi	partum	<i>bring forth</i>
fodiō	fodere	fōdi	fossam	<i>dig</i>

See also faciō, jaciō, fugiō, and compounds of speciō (cōspiciō), pages 48, 49.



## VERBS IN -scō

Usually with an **Inceptive** or **Inchoative** meaning (*i.e.* denoting the *beginning* of an action).

poscō	poscere	poposci	—	<i>demand</i>
discō	discere	didici	—	<i>learn</i>
erēscō	erēscere	erēvi	erētum	<i>grow</i>
cōnsuēscō	cōnsuēscere	cōnsuēvi	cōnsuētum	<i>grow accus- tomed</i>
adolēscō	adolēscere	adolēvi	(adultum)	<i>grow up</i>

So cognōscō, ignōscō.

## DEPONENTS

lābor	lābi	lāpsus	<i>slip, glide</i>
amplector	amplecti	amplexus	<i>embrace</i>
nitor	niti	nixus, nixus	<i>strive</i>
adipīscor	adipīsci	adeptus	<i>acquire</i>

*Many others have occurred in the Exercises.*

## FOURTH CONJUGATION

sepiō	sepelīre	sepelivī	sepultum	<i>bury</i>
aperiō	aperīre	aperuī	apertum	<i>open</i>
dēsiliō (from salū)	dēsilīre	dēsiluī	dēsultum	<i>leap down</i>
hauriō	haurīre	hausī	haustum	<i>draw (water)</i>
sentiō	sentīre	sēnsī	sēnsū	<i>feel</i>
reperiō	reperīre	repperī	repertum	<i>find</i>
experior	experīri	expertus	—	<i>try</i>

See also mētor, mentior, orior, page 176.

## SPECIAL VOCABULARIES

### LESSON I, PAGE 7

(FOR LIST OF VERBS, SEE PAGE 6)

**nōn**, *not*.

**Vēnus**, *Venus, goddess of love*.

**Mārs**, *Mars, god of war*.

**Jūpiter**, *Jupiter, chief god of the Romans*.

**quis**, *who?* (Interrog. pron.)

**Deus**, *a god, God*.

**et**, *and*.

**et . . . et**, *both . . . and*.

**neque**, *nor*.

**neque . . . neque**, *neither . . . nor*.

**sed**, *but*.

**Mercurius**, *Mercury*.

**Dīāna**, *Diana*.

**Mūsa**, *a Muse*.

**Minerva**, *Minerva*.

### LESSON III, PAGE 10

**est**, *is* (from verb **sum**).

**patria**, *native land, one's country*.

**nostra**, *our* (fem. form of **noster**).

**incola**, *inhabitant*.

**Britannia**, *Britain*.

**corōna**, *crown, wreath*.

**rēgīna**, *queen*.

**colōnia**, *colony*.

**habet**, *has* (from verb **habēō**).

**in** (prep.), *in or into* (see p. 12).

**quoque**, *also*.

**sunt**, *are* (from verb **sum**).

**prōvincia**, *province*.

**septem**, *seven*.

**Britannicus**, *British* (fem. form, **Britannica**).

**primus**, *first* (fem. form, **prima**).

**cūr**, *why?*

**agricola**, *farmer, husbandman*.

**Ītalia**, *Italy*.

**quod**, *because*.

**Rōma**, *Rome*.

**erat**, *was*.

**terra**, *a land, the earth*.

**Eurōpa**, *Europe*.

**arō**, *I plough*.

**nauta**, *sailor*.

**unda**, *wave*.

**vītō**, *shun, avoid*.

**procella**, *storm-blast*.

**rosa**, *rose*.

## LESSON IV, PAGE 12

**puella**, girl.  
**schola**, school.  
**magistra**, mistress, teacher.  
**filia**, daughter.  
**fābula**, story.  
**nārrō**, tell.  
**via**, way, road, street.  
**jactō**, throw, toss.

**nunc**, now.  
**aqua**, water.  
**dea**, goddess.  
**aedificō**, build.  
**āra**, altar.  
**insula**, island.  
**pecūnia**, money.  
**portō**, carry, bring.

## LESSON V, PAGE 14

**aquila**, eagle.  
**sagitta**, arrow.  
**hasta**, spear.  
**ōra**, coast.  
**umbra**, shade.  
**silva**, a wood, forest.  
**bestia**, beast.  
**ōrnō**, adorn, deck.  
**porta**, gate, door.  
**errō**, wander.  
**mēnsa**, table.  
**arēna**, arena.  
**nāvigō**, I sail.

## PREPOSITIONS

**a, ab**, away from; by (Abl.).  
**ad**, to, towards (Acc.).  
**ē, ex**, out of (Abl.).  
**in**, (1) in (Abl.) (2) into (Acc.).  
**cum**, with (Abl.).  
**prō**, in front of; in defence of;  
 in behalf of; instead of (Abl.).  
**inter**, among, between (Acc.).  
**per**, through (Acc.).  
**circum**, around (Acc.).  
**trāns**, across (Acc.).

## LESSON VI, PAGE 19

**quandō**, when? (Interrog.)  
**stella**, star.  
**lūna**, moon.  
**expectō**, wait for, await, watch  
 for.

**dēsiderō**, long for, miss, desire.  
**fuga**, flight.  
**stō**, stand.

NOTE. — **Expecto**, wait for; **dēsiderō**, long for, do not govern the Dative; they are transitive verbs governing the Accusative.

## LESSON VII, PAGE 21

<b>Gallia</b> , <i>Gaul</i> (ancient name of France).	<b>fāgus</b> , <i>beech-tree</i> .
<b>Gallus</b> , <i>a Gaul</i> .	<b>mārus</b> , <i>wall</i> .
<b>lēgātus</b> ( <i>deputy</i> ), (1) <i>lieutenant</i> ; (2) <i>ambassador, envoy, legate</i> .	<b>populus</b> , <i>a people, nation, populace</i> .
<b>ōrō</b> , <i>beg, entreat, pray</i> .	(Not used in the plural sense of people.)
<b>equus</b> , <i>horse</i> .	<b>laudō</b> , <i>praise</i> .
<b>dēlectō</b> , <i>please, delight</i> .	<b>culpō</b> , <i>blame, find fault with</i> .
<b>hortus</b> , <i>garden</i> .	<b>amicus</b> , <i>friend</i> .
<b>dominus</b> , <i>lord, master, owner</i> .	<b>inimicus</b> , <i>enemy</i> .
<b>servus</b> , <i>slave</i> .	<b>oculus</b> , <i>eye</i> .
<b>Ōceanus</b> , <i>the Ocean (Atlantic)</i> .	<b>tumulus</b> , <i>a mound, hill</i> .
<b>filius</b> , <i>son</i> .	<b>ventus</b> , <i>wind</i> .

## LESSON VIII, PAGE 23

(SEE NOUNS ON PAGE 22)

<b>lūdus</b> , <i>play, game</i> .	<b>fluvius</b> , <i>river, stream</i> .
<b>spectō</b> , <i>look at, watch</i> .	<b>Rhēnus</b> , <i>the Rhine</i> .
<b>signifer</b> = <b>aquilifer</b> .	<b>Rhodanus</b> , <i>the Rhone</i> .
<b>transportō</b> , <i>carry over</i> .	<b>Germānus</b> , <i>a German</i> .
<b>mālus</b> , <i>apple tree</i> .	<b>vāstō</b> , <i>lay waste</i> .
<b>discipulus</b> , <i>pupil</i> .	<b>vīcus</b> , <i>village</i> .
<b>in fugam dō</b> , <i>I put to flight</i> .	<b>ripa</b> , <i>bank</i> .

## LESSON X, PAGE 28

(SEE NOUNS ON PAGES 25, 27, 28)

<b>erat</b> , <i>was</i> (verb <i>sum</i> ).	<b>periculum</b> , <i>danger, peril</i> .
<b>erant</b> , <i>were</i> .	<b>gladius</b> , <i>a sword</i> .
<b>signum</b> , <i>standard, image</i> .	<b>tēlum</b> , <i>missile, dart</i> .
<b>proelium</b> , <i>battle</i> .	<b>funda</b> , <i>sling</i> .
<b>pīlum</b> , <i>javelin</i> .	<b>arma</b> , - <b>ōrum</b> (n.; i.), <i>arms, armor</i> .
<b>aurum</b> , <i>gold</i> .	<b>galea</b> , <i>helmet</i> .
<b>argentum</b> , <i>silver</i> .	<b>scūtum</b> , <i>shield</i> .
<b>terrum</b> , <i>iron, steel, the sword</i> .	<b>lōrica</b> , <i>cuirass, coat-of-mail</i> .

<b>saxum</b> , stone, rock.	<b>brachium</b> , an arm (of the body).
<b>tormentum</b> , war-engine.	<b>humerus</b> , shoulder.
<b>castra</b> , - <b>strum</b> (n. pl.), a camp.	<b>praemium</b> , reward.
<b>inter</b> , between (Acc.).	<b>caelum</b> , heaven, sky.
<b>carrus</b> , cart, wagon.	<b>vallum</b> , rampart.
<b>impedimenta</b> , - <b>strum</b> (n. pl.), baggage.	<b>fossa</b> , ditch, trench.
<b>fumentum</b> , beast-of-burden.	<b>circumdō</b> , surround.
<b>-que</b> , and (an enclitic, added to another word).	<b>occupō</b> , occupy, seize.
<b>sarcinae</b> , - <b>rum</b> (f. pl.), personal baggage.	<b>locus</b> , place.
	<b>oppidum</b> , town.
	<b>templum</b> , temple.
	<b>aedificium</b> , building.

## READING LESSON, PAGE 29

<b>decem</b> , ten.	<b>multus</b> (adj.), much; (pl.), many.
<b>annus</b> , year.	<b>horridus</b> (adj.), dreadful.
<b>apud</b> , at (Acc.).	<b>magnus</b> (adj.), great, large.
<b>Trōja</b> , Troy.	<b>splendidus</b> (adj.), splendid.
An ancient city on the west coast of Asia Minor.	<b>atque = et</b> , and, and also.
<b>Graecus</b> , Greek.	<b>lignum</b> , wood.
<b>Trōjānus</b> , Trojan.	<b>fabricō</b> , make, contrive.
<b>poeta</b> , poet.	<b>occultō</b> , hide, conceal.
<b>appellō</b> , I call, name.	<b>rota</b> , wheel.
<b>cansa</b> , cause.	<b>trahō</b> , draw, drag.
<b>Sparta</b> , Sparta.	<b>dēmittō</b> , let down.
A city in southern Greece.	<b>ita</b> , thus, so.
<b>vir</b> , man, husband.	<b>expugnō</b> , take by storm, capture.

## LESSON XI, PAGE 33

(FOR PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS, SEE GENERAL VOCABULARY)

<b>gerō</b> , carry, carry on, wage (war).	<b>parō</b> , prepare.
<b>stō</b> , stand.	<b>secō</b> , cut.
<b>videō</b> , see.	<b>audiō</b> , hear. <b>tandem</b> , at last.
<b>dūcō</b> , lead.	<b>capō</b> , take.
<b>cognōscō</b> , learn, ascertain.	<b>vinoō</b> , conquer.
<b>orō</b> , beg, pray.	<b>venia</b> , pardon, indulgence.
<b>moneō</b> , warn, advise.	<b>epistola</b> , letter = litterae.
<b>scribō</b> , write.	<b>forum</b> , market place, forum.

## LESSON XII, PAGE 37

<b>mālus</b> , f., <i>apple-tree, mast.</i>	<b>Hadria</b> , m., <i>the Adriatic.</i>
<b>mālus</b> , -a, -um, <i>bad, evil.</i>	<b>turbidus</b> , -a, -um, <i>stormy.</i>
<b>altus</b> , -a, -um (1) <i>high, tall;</i> (2) <i>deep.</i>	<b>māgnus</b> , -a, -um, <i>large, great.</i>
<b>bonus</b> , -a, -um, <i>good.</i>	<b>incola</b> , m. or f., <i>inhabitant.</i>
<b>cārus</b> , -a, -um, <i>dear.</i>	<b>ferus</b> , -a, -um, <i>fierce.</i>
<b>vīrus</b> , n., <i>poison, virus.</i>	<b>parvus</b> , -a, -um, <i>small.</i>
<b>vir</b> , m., <i>man.</i>	<b>plēnus</b> , -a, -um, <i>full.</i>
<b>vulgus</b> , n., <i>throng, common people.</i>	<b>clārus</b> , -a, -um, <i>bright, brilliant,</i> <i>renowned.</i>
<b>incertus</b> , -a, -um, <i>uncertain.</i>	

## LESSON XIII, PAGE 38

(SEE ADJECTIVES ON PAGES 37, 38)

<b>sacer</b> , <i>sacra, sacrum, sacred.</i>	<b>Bacchus = Līber</b> , <i>Bacchus.</i> The god of wine.
<b>multus</b> , -a, -um, <i>much; pl.,</i> <i>many.</i>	<b>gestō</b> , <i>carry, wear.</i>
<b>frūmentum</b> , n., <i>grain, corn.</i>	<b>grātus</b> , -a, -um, <i>pleasing.</i>
<b>Rōmānus</b> , -a, -um, <i>Roman.</i>	<b>castra locō</b> , <i>I pitch (place) camp.</i>
<b>idōnus</b> , -a, -um, <i>suitable.</i>	<b>longus</b> , -a, -um, <i>long.</i>
<b>vīnum</b> , n., <i>wine.</i>	<b>angustus</b> , -a, -um, <i>narrow, close.</i>
<b>vsl</b> , <i>or, or in other words.</i>	<b>lātus</b> , -a, -um, <i>wide, broad.</i>

## LESSON XIV, PAGE 41

(FOR PRINCIPAL PARTS, SEE GENERAL VOCABULARY)

<b>vidēsō</b> , <i>see.</i>	<b>pūniō</b> , <i>punish.</i>
<b>veniō</b> , <i>come.</i>	<b>mittō</b> , <i>send.</i>
<b>respondeō</b> , <i>answer.</i>	<b>teneō</b> , <i>hold.</i>

## LESSON XV, PAGE 43

<b>inquit</b> , <i>says, says he.</i>	<b>collocō</b> , <i>place, station,</i>
<b>iniquus</b> , -a, -um, <i>unequal, unfa-</i> <i>vorable.</i>	

SPECIAL VOCABULARIES

287

LESSON XVI, PAGE 46

(SEE VERBS ON PAGES 45, 46)

LESSON XVII, PAGE 49

(SEE VERBS ON PAGES 48, 49)

LESSON XVIII, PAGE 53

**animus**, m., *mind*.  
**moveō**, -ēre, *move, influence*.  
**tēctum**, *roof*.  
**verbum**, *word*.

**verba faciō** (*make words*), *speak, talk*.  
**apud**, *at, in the presence of, before, among (Acc.)*.  
**dōnum**, *gift*.

LESSON XIX, PAGE 55

**vinea**, *shed, shelter, mantlet, pent-house*.  
**prōmoveō**, *move forward*.

**praestō**, -āre, -stitī, *show (of qualities)*.  
**sevērus**, -a, -um, *severe, strict*.

LESSON XX, PAGE 57

(SEE PAGES 56, 57)

**contrā**, prep., *against (Acc.)*.  
**praemittō**, *send forward*.  
**decimus**, -a, -um, *tenth*.  
**dēnsus**, -a, -um, *thick, dense*.  
**perfringō**, -ere, -frēgī, *break through*. (See **frangō**.)

**cōgō**, -ere, **coēgī**, *collect; compel*.  
**Cicerō**, -ōnis, *Cicero, the great orator*.  
**clārus**, -a, -um, *renowned (bright)*.  
**auctumnus**, -ī, m., *autumn*.

LESSON XXI, PAGE 61

(SEE PAGES 59, 60)

**vīvō**, -ere, **vixī**, *live*.  
**sustineō**, -ēre, -uī, *sustain, endure*.

**semper**, *always*.  
**violō**, -āre, -āvī, *violate*.

## LESSON XXII, PAGE 63

(SEE PAGES 61, 62)

**vāstō, -āre, -āvī, lay waste.****classis, -is, f., fleet.****Apollō, -inis, Apol****nāvis longa, ship-of-war, galley.****nāvis onerāria, ship-of-burden, transport.****onerārius, -a, -um (onus), for burdens.****prēmittō, send forward.****lūx, lūcie, f., light.****rēmūs, -ī, m., oar.****movēō, -ēre, mōvī, move.**

## LESSON XXIII, PAGE 65

**firmus, -a, -um, strong.****ursus, -ī, m., bear.****dormiō, -ire, -ivi, sleep.****vallis, -is, f., valley.****volō, -āre, -āvī, fly.****bellum gerō, carry on (war) war.****gerō, -ere, gessī, carry.****hīberna, -ōrum, winter quarters (really a n. pl. adj. mod. castra understood).****dūcō, -ere, dūxī, lead.****prīmus, -a, -um, first, early.****nīdus, -ī, m., nest.****dūrus, -a, -um, hard.**

## LESSON XXIV, PAGE 67

**saevus, -a, -um, savage, cruel.****contendō, -ere, -tendī, strive.****ancora, -ae, f., anchor.****dēmittō, -ere, -misi, let down.****incola, -ae, m. or f., inhabitant.****Kerthāgō, -inis, f., Carthage.****pūblicānus, -ī, m., farmer (of taxes).****imperium, -ī, n., power, command.****cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, strengthen.****cōnetitūō, -uere, -uī, resolve.****eques, -itīe, m., horseman, knight.**

## READING LESSON, PAGE 67

**continēns, -ntis, f., continent.****celer, swift.****rōstrum, -ī, n., beak, bow (of a ship).****perterreō, -ēre, -uī, terrify.****autem, but, on the other hand.****humilis, low.****ac = atque, and.****enim, for. (Never placed first.)****mālus, -ī, f., (1) apple-tree; (2) mast.****vēlum, -ī, n., sail.****fūnis, -is, m., rope, cable.****reliquus, -a, -um, remaining.**



<b>armamentum</b> , -i, n., a fitting, tackle.	<b>sōlis occāsus</b> , setting of the sun, west.
<b>ōrnō</b> , (1) adorn; (2) equip.	<b>cōspiciō</b> , see, behold.
<b>tum</b> , then (at that time).	<b>prohibeō</b> , prevent.
<b>cōscendō</b> , embark.	<b>ēgrēdiōr</b> , inf. <b>ēgredi</b> , land (leave a ship), disembark (intransitive).
<b>dsinde</b> , then, afterwards.	<b>tamen</b> , nevertheless.
<b>ubi</b> , when, where.	<b>negōtium</b> , trouble.
<b>tampesās</b> , -ātis, f., (1) storm; (2) weather.	<b>expōnō</b> , -ere, <b>posui</b> (place out), land, disembark (transitive).
<b>solvō</b> , loosen, unmoor, cast off (a ship).	

## LESSON XXV, PAGE 69

<b>contorqueō</b> , -ēre, -torsī, hurl.	<b>contendō</b> , -ere, (1) strive; (2) hasten.
<b>iter māgnūm</b> , forced march.	<b>sacrificō</b> , -āre, -āvī, sacrifice; also, <b>immolō</b> , -āre, and <b>mactō</b> , -āre.
<b>finis</b> , -is, end, limit; pl. <b>finēs</b> , -ium, m., boundaries, territories.	

## READING LESSONS, PAGE 82

<b>1</b>	
<b>condō</b> , -ere, -didī, found (a city).	<b>crūdēlis</b> , -e, cruel.
<b>validus</b> , -a, -um, strong.	<b>superbus</b> , -a, -um, proud.
<b>saepe</b> , often.	<b>secundus</b> , -a, -um, second.
<b>vīcinus</b> , -ī, m., neighbor.	<b>post</b> , after (Acc.).
	<b>duo</b> , two.
<b>2</b>	
<b>antiquus</b> , -a, -um, ancient.	<b>Poenus</b> , -ī, Carthaginian (Phoenician).
<b>legō</b> , -ere, <b>lēgī</b> (gather, choose), read.	<b>mercātor</b> , -ōris, trader, merchant.
<b>dē</b> , (1) down from; (2) about, concerning (Abl.).	<b>praeclārus</b> , -a, -um, renowned, excellent, famous.
<b>mulier</b> , -aris, f., woman.	<b>etiam</b> , even, also.
<b>caedēs</b> , -is, f., killing, death.	<b>usque ad</b> , as far as.
<b>vērus</b> , -us, -um, true.	<b>Īberus</b> , -ī, m., Ebro.
<b>septem</b> , seven.	<b>volō</b> (irreg. verb), wish.
<b>conditor</b> , -ōris, founder.	<b>adulescēns</b> , -entis, m., youth.
<b>ultimus</b> , -a, -um, last.	<b>dēlegō</b> , -ere, -lēgī, choose.
	<b>3</b>

## 4

parō, *prepare, procure.*  
 benignus, -a, -um, *kind.*  
 ratis, -is, f., *raft.*  
 magnopere, *greatly.*  
 pertimēscō, *fear, dread.*  
 tandem, *at last.*  
 rūpēs, -is, f., *crag, rock.*  
 amittō, -ere -misi, *lose.*

## 5

sēdecim, *sixteen.*

scientia, -ae, f., *knowledge.*  
 arcessō, -ere, -ivi, *send for, summon.*  
 apud, *at, near (Acc.).*  
 propter, *on account of (Acc.).*  
 tantus, -a, -um, *so great.*  
 posteā, *afterwards.*  
 pauci, -ae, -a, *few.*  
 tertius, -a, -um, *third.*  
 Poenicus, *Punic, Carthaginian.*  
 rescindō, -ere, *tear down.*

## LESSON XXIX, PAGE 86

afflictō, -āre, <i>damage, wreck.</i>	alō, -ere, alui, <i>nourish.</i>
cōgō, -ere, cōgī, (1) <i>collect;</i> (2) <i>compel.</i>	tēctum, <i>roof.</i>
	porrigō, -ere, porrēxi, <i>stretch out.</i>

## LESSON XXX, PAGE 89

triplex, -icis, <i>triple.</i>	hōra, -ae, <i>hour.</i>
instruō, -ere, -struxi, <i>form.</i>	bene, <i>well.</i>
ante, <i>before (Acc.).</i>	accipiō, <i>receive.</i>
ēducō, <i>lead out.</i>	gerō, <i>carry on, do.</i>
inūsitātus, -a, -um, <i>strange, novel.</i>	dēpōnō, <i>deposit, place for safe keeping; lay aside.</i>
barbarus, -i, m., <i>foreigner, barbarian, native.</i>	mōtus, -ūs, m., <i>movement.</i>
	postulō, <i>demand.</i>

or,  
.  
at.  
fe

PART II

READING LESSONS

AND

PASSAGES SUITABLE FOR SIGHT  
TRANSLATION





## FABLES

### THE FOX AND THE GRAPES

*(No Subjunctive)*

Multae fābulae dē vulpe nārrantur; inter aliās Phaedrus hanc: Vulpēs ōlim famē ecācta ad collem aprīcum vēnit ubi vitis sata erat. Ad ūvam dēpendentem saliēbat, sūmere cōnāus. Frūstrā diū cōnāta, tandem Irāta est et salire dēsiit. Dum sē inde recipit exaudīta est ita exclāmāus: “Ūva illa acerba est; acerbam sūmere nōlō.”

*Nōn jūstae mentis est id quod cōsequi nōn potes verbis curpere.*

## THE ASS IN THE LION'S SKIN

*(No Subjunctive)*

Asinus olim leōnis pelle indūsus per agrōs currēbat. Quae res et bestiās silvārum perturbat et hominēs terret; mulierēs puerique diffugiunt; pavore perculsi agricolae eum filiis, arātris relictis, domum quam celerrimē discēdunt.

Subitō auris ingēns, quam adhūc nōn animadverterant, appāret et fraudem ostendit, falsum leōnem dēnūtiāns. Tum omnēs rīdent et lapidibus fūstibusque armāti, impetum in asinum faciunt. Sine morā eum pelle<sup>1</sup> spoliant et in stabulum redūcunt.

*Stultus et ignārus, spēcīem fortitūdinis simulandō, nōn diū aliōs terrēre potest.*

**pavor = timor**; **percellō, -ere, -culi, -culsum, strike with terror**; **fūstis, m., club.**

1. **Abl. of Separation with verbs of depriving.**

## THE FOX AND THE RAVEN

*(No Subjunctive)*

1. In arbore altā olim corvus sedēbat cāseum<sup>1</sup> ire tenēns. Quam praedam dē fenestrā pauperis agricolae rapuerat; edere iam parābat. Deinde vulpēs callida, quae forte eā<sup>2</sup> praeteribat,<sup>3</sup> corvum vīdit et cāseum sūmere cōstituit. Corvum igitur sic adlocūta est: “Avē,<sup>4</sup> domine,” inquit. Nīl respondet corvus. “Egria<sup>5</sup> est tempestās.<sup>6</sup>” Adhūc corvus tacēbat. “Quī ventus hodiē flat<sup>7</sup>?” Nīl respōsum. “Splendida messis<sup>8</sup> hōc annō erit.” Rūsus corvus nūllam vōcem ēdidit.

1. **cāseus, cheese.** 2. **eā, adv. (viā understood).** 3. **praetereō, pass.** 4. **Hail! Good day!** 5. **fine, excellent.** 6. **weather.** 7. **flō, flāre, blow.** 8. **harvest.**

2. Tum vulpēs, omnī spē iam paene dēpositā, aliō modō id quod cupiēbat cōsequi cōstituit. “Corve mī cārissime, quantus est pinnārum tuārum nitor! Quantum decoris in

corpore vultūque geris! Est tibi,<sup>1</sup> ut aiunt, vōx splendidissima. Nōme mihi ex carminibus tuis ūnum modo<sup>2</sup> cantābis?" Tum stultus corvus, dum vōcem ostendere vult, ōs aperuit et cāsem emisit; quem celeriter dolōsa vulpēs avidis dentibus rapuit nec diūtius ad vōcem corvi audiendam morāta in aliās partēs quam celerrimē discessit.

*Sērō enim dat poenās quī verbis dolōsis laudārī gaudet.*

*pīnna, feather; nitor, -ōris, m., brightness, lustre, splendor; decus, -oris, n., beauty.*

1. **Dat. of Possession.** 2. Distinguish **modō** (Abl. of **modus, manner**) from **modō** (Adv. = *only*).

### THE TORTOISE AND THE HARE

(No Subjunctive)

1. Lepus quondam testūdinem irridēbat quod tam tardē per agrōs sē movēbat. "Ego vērō," inquit testūdō, "priusquam tū ad vicīnum oppidum perveniam." "Quōmodo tū illud facere, praesertim domum tuam suprā tergum gestāns, poteris?" respondit ille. "Sī mē nōu posse crēdis," ait altera, "ego certāmen tēcum inīre nōn dubitābō." Tum lepus, vīribus suis atque cursū frētus, sē testūdinem mille passibus ab initio<sup>1</sup> sibi antecēdere velle dīxit. Decem autem millia passuum ab oppidō aberant.

1. *at the outset.* Translate the whole sentence idiomatically.

2. Testūdō nihil recūsāns profecta est, sed mox lepus cum irrīsū eam est cōsecūtus et māgnō intervāllō antecurrēbat. Post breve tempus lepus, sē haud dubiē victūrum esse cōfīsus, in viā quietem parvam capere cōstituit. Multis post hōris testūdō, tarda quidem seil tamen certissima, leporem adhūc dormientem praeteriit; neque ille glōriōsus prius ex somnō experrēctus est<sup>1</sup> quam testūdō incolumis in oppidum victrix pervēnit.

*Certiōrem quam celeriōrem esse melius est.*

1. **expergiscor, -ī, -perrēctus, awake.**

## THE FROG THAT BURST

*(Dependent Question)*

In prātō quondam rāna bovem cōspexit et, invidiā tantae māgnitūdinis permōta, rūgōsam pellem inflāvit. Tum nātos<sup>1</sup> suōs interrogāvit num<sup>2</sup> bove esset lātior. Illi negāvērunt.<sup>3</sup> Rānsus intendit eum mājore nīsū et simili modō quaesivit quis māior esset. Illi dīxērunt bovem.<sup>3</sup> Novissimē,<sup>4</sup> graviter ferēns<sup>5</sup> quod aliquis māior esset,<sup>6</sup> summis vīribus<sup>5</sup> sēsē inflāvit et corpore ruptō jecuit.

*Inops, potentem dum vult imitārī, perit.*

1. = **filios**. 2. = *whether* in a single dependent question, without a negative suggestion as in a direct question. 3. Supply the *ellipses* in Latin. 4. = **tandem** = **ad extrēmum**. 5. Give idiomatic rendering. 6. **Quod** (*because*) usually takes the Indicative, **cum** (*since*) the Subjunctive. But quoting the reason as the *thought or statement of another*, **quod** takes the **Subjunctive** (practically the rule for subordinate clauses of Indirect Discourse).

**prātum**, meadow; **rāna**, frog; **rūgōsus**, wrinkled; **cutis** = **pellis**, skin; **nīsus**, -ūs (nitor), effort.

Translate: 1. *Is the ox greater than I?* 2. *Am I not greater than the ox?* 3. *Who is greater?* 4. *I ask whether there is another greater.*

## THE FOX IN THE WELL

*Homō callidus<sup>1</sup> simul atque in periculum vēnit, effugium alterius malō<sup>2</sup> reperire quaerit.*

Vulpēs olim in puteum inscia<sup>3</sup> dēcidit. Hic puteus<sup>4</sup> autem altior erat neque ēscendere potuit vulpēs. Dum quid sit faciendum mirātur, hircus<sup>5</sup> quīdam forte<sup>6</sup> in eundem locum sitiēns<sup>7</sup> vēnit. Quī vulpem amīcis verbis compellāns<sup>8</sup> "Dulcisne est aqua?" inquit. Illa statim fraudem mō-

1. *cunning, shrewd*. 2. **malō**, adj. used as noun. 3. *not knowing, unawares*. 4. *pit, well*. 5. *goat*. 6. *by chance; say happened to*. 7. **sitiō**, from **sitis**, *thirst*. 8. **compellō**, -āre, *accost, address*.



liēns<sup>9</sup> "Dēscende, amīce"; respondit, "tanta enim est bonitās aquae ut voluptās mea satiārī nōn possit?" Sine uorā sē inuisit stultus hīrens. Deinde altera celsis cornibus rixa puteō ēvāsit hīrcumque in clausā aquā<sup>10</sup> haerentem reliquit.

9. mōllior, *contrite, mild, plian*. 10. From nitor, -I, nīsus or nīxus, *strive, support oneself*.

### THE WOLF AND THE CRANE

(Verbs of asking, persuading, etc.)

Os dēvorātum in faucibus lupī haerēbat neque id extrahere ille poterat. Māgnō dolōre affectus, praetereuntēs pretiō illicere coepit ut<sup>1</sup> ōs ōre extraherent. Tandem grūi persuāsit ut<sup>1</sup> sibi subveniret, jūrejūrandō datō nūllam injūriam factum iri. Gulae erēdēns collum longum, auxiliū perentlōsum lupō tulit. Ā quō eum pactum flāgitāret praemium: "Ingrāta es," inquit, "quae<sup>2</sup> ōre ē nostrō caput incolūne abstuleris<sup>2</sup> et mercēdem postulēs?"

*Quī pretium ab improbīs accipere vult, bis peccat: primum quoniam<sup>3</sup> indignōs adjuvat; deinde quia<sup>3</sup> impūnē abire jam nōn potest.*

Distinguish ōs, ossis and ōs, ōris. What gender? faucēs, jaws, throat; gula, compare Eng. gullet; illiciō, -ere, entice; grūs, gruis, crane.

Paciācor, -I, pactus sum, bargain, stipulate. Note that the Perf. Part. of this verb, though from a deponent, may be passive.

1. Verbs of persuading, asking, and some others take a purpose clause as object corresponding to the Eng. Infinitive. 2. quae here = cum tū, the Causal Relative followed by the Subjunctive abstuleris (from auferō). 3. = quod.

Pick out the verbs in this passage that govern the Dat. Give two verbs for aid and distinguish their constructions.



THE SABINE WOMEN

## STORIES OF EARLY ROME

## ROMULUS AND REMUS

Annis circiter trecentis postquam Aenēas ad Italiam vēnit, Rōmulus et Remus gemini ex Rheā Silvīā nāti sunt. Ea autem sacerlōs erat deae Vestae. Pater puerōrum deus Mārs esse dīcēbātur. Quī ubi nāti sunt, avunculus Amūlius, quī Numitōrem patrem Silvīae rēgnū Albæ Longae pepulerat, eōs necāre volēbat, nē ipsum rēgnū expellerent veritus. Puerōs igitur in Tiberium flūmen abici jussit. Flāmen autem relābēns eōs in aridō relīquit. Lupa eōs iuvēnit et eum catulis suis aluit. Postea pāstor nōmine Faustulus eōs domum dūxit et ad virilem aetātem educāvit.

## DEATH OF REMUS

Post paucōs annōs frātrēs, quī jam adolēverant, Numitōrem avum suum in rēgnū restituērunt. Ipsī vērō novam urbem in montis collibus ubi puerī habitāverant condere cōstituērunt. Inter eos contrōversia orta est uter locum dēligeret et nōmen urbi daret. Anguriō Rōmulus lēctus, urbem in Palātīnō monte condidit Rōmamque eam appellāvit. Dum Rōmulus vāllum facit, frāter Remus, mūrū tam humilem irrīdēns, saltū eum trājēcit. Deinde Rōmulus irātus frāterem occidit, exclāmāns: "Ita pereant<sup>1</sup> omnēs quī trāns hunc mūrū salīre cōnābuntur."

1. Subjunctive of a **wish**.

## ROMULUS KING

Frātre interfectō, Rōmulus urbem cōnfēcit, deinde in eā sōlus rēgnābat. Imāginem tamen urbis maiōrem quam urbem fēcerat; incolae enim dēerant. Ut urbem compleret, asyllum in proximō lūcō aperuit et eō omnēs undique lātrōnēs

**dēsūm**, *am lacking*; **lūcus**, *grove*; **perditus**, *ruined, abandoned*.

perditōsque hominēs invitāvit. Ita māgnū virōrum numerum comparāvit sed mulierēs paucās in urbe habēbat. Ut uxōrēs civibus suis parāret hōc cōsiliū iniit. Sabīnōs, quī haud procul incolēbant, cum conjugibus liberisque ad lūdōs spectandōs invitāvit. Quī cum vēnissent, signō datō, juvenēs Rōmānī discerunt, virginēs rapiunt.<sup>1</sup>

1. *Seize.*

### TARPEIA

Virginibus Sabīnis raptīs, parentēs id graviter ferentēs domum rediērunt. Rēgī suō, Titō Tatiō, persuāsērunt ut bellum populō Rōmānō prō tam gravī injuriā inferret.<sup>1</sup> Cum hōc fieri cognōvissent, Rōmānī sē ad obsidiōnem parāvērunt. Arcem, quae in colle Capitōlinō erat, Tarpēiō dēfendendam trādunt. Hūjus filia, Tarpēia, duci Sabīnōrum sē eōs in arcem ductūram esse pollicita est sī sibi quae<sup>2</sup> brachiīs sinistrīs gererent dedissent; anulōs<sup>3</sup> enim eōrum aureōs et armillās<sup>4</sup> cupiēbat. Quod sē facturōs polliciti et in arcem perducti, virginem scūtīs obruebant.<sup>5</sup> Nam ea in laevīs<sup>6</sup> habuerant. Sic impia prōditiō celerī poenā vindicāta<sup>7</sup> est.

1. Distinguish **bellum gerō** and **bellum inferō**. 2. **quae**, n. pl.  
3. **anulus**, ring. 4. **armilla**, bracelet. 5. **obruō**, overwhelm.  
6. **laevus** = sinister. 7. **vindicō**, -āre, punish.

### THE SABINE WOMEN MAKE PEACE

Arce tāli virginis perfidiā captā, Rōmānī proelium cum Sabīnis in eō locō, ubi nunc Forum est, committere cōstituerunt. Primō impetū quīdam ex Rōmānis fortissimē dīmicans cecidit; quā rē perterriti Rōmānī fugere coepērunt. Jam Sabīni clāmitant: "Perfidōs hostēs vicimus. Nunc sciunt longē aliud esse virginēs rapere, pugnāre cum viris aliud." Tunc Rōmulus, armīs ad caelum sublātis, Jovī aedem vōvit. Ita proelium redintegrātur; sed raptae mulierēs, haud

minus maritis quam patribus fratribusque veritae, se inter  
 sua voluntia inferre et utrosque ut armis contendere desine-  
 rent orare ausae sunt.

### MIRACULOUS DISAPPEARANCE OF ROMULUS

Pace ita inter Romanos et Sabinos composita, uterque  
 populus Romae,<sup>1</sup> Romulo et Tatiano regibus, habitare consti-  
 tuit. Paulo post, Tatiano occiso, ad Romulum omnis potestas  
 rediit. Centum deinde ex senioribus elegit, quorum<sup>2</sup> consilio  
 omnia ageret. Hos, propter senectutem, senatum nominavit.

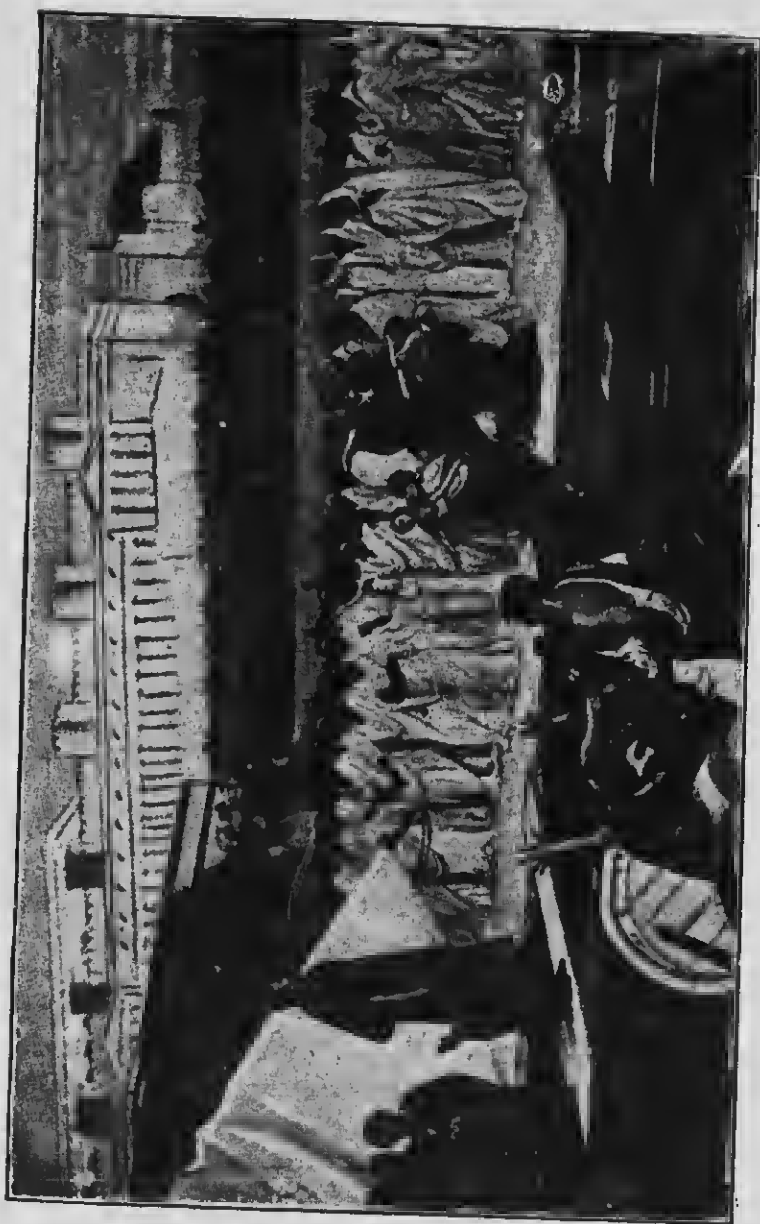
Cum jam annum tricésimum septimum regnaret, mirro  
 modo e conspectu sublatus est. Dum enim exercitum in  
 Campo Martio recenseret, subito sole obscurato maxima tem-  
 pestas cum magno fragore caeli coorta est. Cum rursus  
 illuxisset,<sup>3</sup> Romulus nusquam visus est, ut<sup>4</sup> inter plerosque  
 constabat,<sup>5</sup> a patre Marte in currum igneo ablatus.

1. Locative case. 2. **quorum** = **ut eorum**, Relative of Purpose  
 with the Subjunctive. 3. **illucescō, -ere, -luxi**, become light.  
 4. **ut** with the Indicative may mean *as* or *when*. 5. **constat**, im-  
 personal; see page 264.

### THE GRACCHI

Tiberius et Caius Gracchus ex Cornelia Scipionis Africani  
 filia nati sunt. Horum adulescentia bonis artibus exacta<sup>1</sup>  
 est. Erant enim diligenter a<sup>2</sup> pueris docti et Graecis lit-  
 teris eruditi. Maximum matronis ornamentum esse liberis  
 bene institutos merito<sup>3</sup> putabat mater illa sapientissima.  
 Cum Campana matrona, apud illam hospita,<sup>4</sup> ornamenta sua  
 ei muliebriter ostendaret, Cornelia pueros suos a schola rever-  
 sos hospitae ostendens, "Haec," inquit, "mea ornamenta  
 sunt."

1. **exigō, pass, spend (time)**. 2. **from**. 3. Adv. *deservedly*,  
*properly*. 4. *quest*.



DEPARTURE OF REGULUS

## REGULUS

Tria bella Rōmānī cum Poenīs gessērunt. Prīmō Rēgulus cōsul Rōmānus uāximā cum laude terrā marīque pugnābat. Poenī perterritī dē pāce agere volēbant. Ille tamen, nisi dūris condiōnibus, pācem dare nōluit. Poenī tandem, commūtātiōne rerum factā, Rōmānōs māgnā clāde vicērunt et Rēgulum cēpērunt. Utrīque jam captīvōs inter sē reddere cupiunt. Rēgulus igitur ā Poenīs Rōmam missus est pollicitus nisi cīvibus suis ut captīvōs redderent persuāderet sēsē ad supplicium perferendum reditūrum esse.

Ubi ad urbem pervēnit, captīvōrum permūtātiōnem incommodō rei pūblicae<sup>1</sup> arbitrātus, uxōris precibus liberōrumque immōtus, Carthāginem rediit. Paucīs post diēbus omnibus suppliciīs necātus est.

1. **Double Dative** ; **incommodō**, Result or Tendency ; **rei pūblicae**, Interest.

## THE WANDERINGS OF ULYSSES

## THE GREEK HEROES RETURN HOME FROM TROY

Bellō Trōjānō cōfectō, ducēs Graecōrum domōs snās omnēs discessērunt. Agamemnōn qui summam imperī obtinuerat Mycēnās rediit. Eō cum vēnisset, ab uxōre Clytaemnestrā et Aegisthō occisus est.

Orestēs filius ējus, ā sorōre Electrā educātus, postquam adolēvit eōs qui patrem interfecerant occidit. Ipsum vērō reliquam partem vitae Fūriae mātris per omnēs Graeciae terrās cōsectābantur.

Menelaus, qui Graecōs ad bellum propter Helenam incitāverat, Lacedaemona<sup>1</sup> cum Helenā revertitur.

1. Greek Acc. = **Spartam**.

## ULYSSES

Ulixēs autem, vir callidissimus et labōrum patientissimus, Ithacae rēx fuit. Ad bellum discēdēns uxōrem Pēnelopēn, mulierem fōrmōsissimam, domī reliquit. Bellō jam cōfectō, domum cum sociis uxōrem filiumque Tēlemachum et cīvēs suōs omnēs vīsum<sup>1</sup> redire voluit. Eō absente multī juvenēs, undique ex Graeciā congressī, ad domicilium ējus convēnerant et Pēnelopēn urgēbant ut alicui ex numerō suō nūberet.<sup>2</sup> Illa tamen per omnes hōs annōs id facere nōluerat et conjugī absentī fidissima remāserat.

Domum tamen statim redire Ulixī nōn licuit. Dīs enim aliter vīsum est. Annōs decem circum ōrās Maris Internī vagābātur priusquam domum pervenire posset.

1. Supine. 2. What difference between *in mātrimonium dūcō* and *nūbō*?

## THE LOTUS-EATERS

Dum pervenire domum cōnātur, multōs cāsūs Ulixēs per tulit. E plūrimis periculis et sē et sociōs cōsiliō suō eripuit. Ad terram Lōtophagōrum nāvem appulit.<sup>1</sup> Hī autem prō cibō utuntur fructū cūjusdam arboris quae lōtus appellātur.<sup>1</sup> Quen. cum homō ēdit,<sup>2</sup> omnium hūjus vitae dolōrum oblīvīscitur neque in ūllō labōre difficiliōris generis versārī vult. Eō cum vēnisset, Ulixēs sociōs suōs ē nāvi ēgredi et cēnam parāre jussit. Postquam sē cibō pōtioneque satiāvērunt, aliquōs ex suis misit quī quālēs essent īī quī hanc regiōnem incolerent<sup>3</sup> cognōscerent.<sup>4</sup> Hōs, ubi ad incolās vēnērunt, illi benignē accēpērunt neque ūllam injūriam inferendam in animō habēbant. Aliquid lōti etiam eis dedērunt, cūjus dulcēdine permulsi domōrum suārum atque reditūs omnīnō

1. Note the two verbs *appellō, -ēre*, etc., and *appellō, -āre*, etc. See vocabulary. 2. Perf. of *ēdō, eat*; distinguish from *ēdō, give forth*. 3. Subjunctive by attraction. Why *essent* Subjunctive? 4. *quī cognōscerent* Relative of Purpose; *quī = ut ei*.



obliti sunt. Cum ad litus non redirent, Ulixēs aliōs qui eōs reperirent<sup>5</sup> misit et repertōs redūcerent. Flentēs et manū resistantēs vī retrahī et vinctōs in nāvem conici jussit. Deinde ut omnēs quam celerrimē cōscenderent et rēmīs nāvem prōpellerent imperāvit.<sup>6</sup>

5. Why Subjunctive? 6. Note the difference between **jubeō**, with the *Acc.* and *Inf.*, and **imperō**, with **ut** and the Subjunctive.

### POLYPHEMUS

Deinde Ulixēs ad insulam Cyclōpum vēnit. Hī autem ingentī corporum māgnitūdine pāstōrēs erant et finum solum oculum quisque in mediā fronte habēbat. Ex eīs ūnus Polyphēmus in antrō cum gregibus ovium et caprōrum noctū dormiēbat. Cūjus ad antrum cāscō et lacte plēnum cum Ulixēs vēnisset, reditum ipsius exspectāre cōstituit. Sub noctem māgnō clāmōre gregēs domum ille pepulit et intrā portam māximō saxō inclūsit. Ubi Ulixem et duodecim sociōs, quōs sēcnm ex nāvī addūxerat, cōspexit, māgnā vōce "Quī estis," inquit, "et unde vēnistis?" "Nōs Graecī sumus," respondit Ulixēs, "Trōjā domum, bellō cōfectō, redemptēs. Misericordiam tuam dīs testibus ōrāmus." "Stultī estis quī<sup>1</sup> mē deōs timēre existimētis.<sup>1</sup> Ubi est nāvis vestra?" ait ille. "Nāvis ā Neptūnō frāctā, vix ad terram effūgimus," falsis verbīs Ulixēs.

1. Causal Relative with the Subjunctive; **quī** = **cum vōs**.

Tum sine morā Polyphēmus duōs ex sociīs Ulixis comprehendit et ad terram capita summīs vīribus illisit.<sup>1</sup> Sanguine perfūsus<sup>2</sup> omnia eōrum membra dēvorābat neque ossa reliquit. Māgnam vim<sup>3</sup> deinde lactis exhaustit<sup>4</sup> et in solum<sup>5</sup> ad dormiendum sē dējēcit. Jamque Ulixēs eum ita dormientem

1. **illidō**. 2. **perfundō**. 3. = **cōpiam**. 4. **exhauriō**. 5. Compare Eng. *soil*; distinguish from **sōlus**.

occidere volēbat, sed ut<sup>6</sup> saxum ā portā submovēre posset verēbātur. Māne Cyclōps ē somnō excitātus, duōbus ex reliquis comitibus dēvorātis, portā māximā cum cūrā clansā, gregēs ad pāstum pellēbat.

6. **vereor nē**, *I fear lest (that)*; **vereor ut** (= **nē nōn**), *I fear lest not (that not)*. The **ut** or **nē** expresses the *desire* about which the fear is entertained; the Eng. *that* clause expresses *the thing feared*.

### POLYPHEMUS' EYE BORED OUT

Dum Polyphēmus abest, Ulixēs sēcum cōsuluit quid optimum factū esset. Hōc cōsiliū cēpit. In antrō erat ā Polyphēmō relicta magna clāva, quā innixus interdum ambulābat. Hanc ad extrēmum acuere comitēs jussit. Ad vesperum rursus ille revertitur et duōs ex reliquis dēvorat. Tum Ulixēs adstāns, "Sūme hōc vīnum," inquit, "quod ego ex nāvi servāvī. Dulce est. Bibe." Ille, haud invitus, pōculum exhansit. "Plūs mihi dā," exclāmāvit. "Nōmen tuum mihi dīe ut tibi dōnum deū. Numquam enim antēā vīnum tam bonum gustāvī." Tum Ulixēs, vir callidissimus, "Nēmīnem mē hominēs appellant; Nēmō meum nōmen est." "Nēmō," respondit ille, "tē ūltimum edam, cēterōs priōrēs. Hōc tibi praemiō<sup>1</sup> dabō." Postēā dum vīnolentus dormit, Ulixēs, quattuor ex suis sortītus, oculum sūde praeūstā cōnfossit. Dolōre Polyphēmus gemit et frātrēs undique ēvocāvit. Illī clāmōribus audītis antrum circumstant et quis cī noceat<sup>2</sup> quaerunt. "Nēmō mihi, fraude nec vīribus, nocet," respondit. Illī "Sī nēmō tibi nocet, dī videant. Nōs tē adjuvāre nōn possumus." Hōc dictō, domōs suās, eum insānīre arbitrātī, discesserunt.

1. **praemiō**, Dat. of Purpose. 2. Why Subjunctive?

### ULYSSES ESCAPES

Postrīdiē māne Polyphēmus jam caecus saxō dētrāctō ad portam manibus porrēctis cōnsidēbat. Ita enim sē Ulixem

et sociōs, sī effugere cōnārentur, prehēnsūrum cōnfidēbat. Haec quoque spēs eum fefellit. Ulixēs enim aliud cōsiliū jam iniit. Sociōs singulōs sub ternīs ovibus lānigerīs ligātōs autē sē ēmīsīt. Ipse ūltimus sub ariete, quī Polyphēmō cārissimus erat, manibus in lānā adhaerēns ēvāsīt.

Ad lītus Polyphēmus fugientēs et irridentēs sequitur. Dum nāvem celerrimē in altum rēuīs iucitant, saxum ē monte arreptum in eōs injēcit, neque multum aberat quān eōs eum nāvī obrueret. Parvō tamen intervāllō effugiunt. Sed postcā Neptūnus propter injūriam filiī suī infestō semper animō in Ulixem erat.

#### AEOLUS, GOD OF THE WINDS

Postquam Ulixēs ā terrā Lōtophagōrum profectus est, ad insulam Aeolī ventōrum deī pervēnit. Hic dens benignē eum accēpit et ūtrem<sup>1</sup> ei dedit ventōrum secundōrum<sup>2</sup> plēnum. Cum jam in cōspectū patriae suae essent, comitēs ejus, virī stultissimī, ūtre apertō omnēs ventōs ēmīsērunt. Tum rūsus ad insulam Aeolī rējectī sunt sed ubi ventōs iterum deum sunt precātī, irātus eōs ē finibus suis expulit neque jam auxilium ūllum eis dare volēbat.

1. ūter, -tris, a bag made of skin. 2. favorable.

#### CIRCE

Mox ad insulam Aeaean pervēnit. Ibi Circē, dea vitrea,<sup>1</sup> in regiā<sup>2</sup> splendidissimā silvīs dēusissimīs cīnetā<sup>3</sup> habitābat. Illa autem filia Sōlis fuit. Vīgintī duōs ex sociīs, quibus Eurylochus praerat, Ulixēs praenīsīt quī quālis esset nātūra insulae et eōrum, quī eam incolerent, reperirent. Hōs omnēs praeter Eurylochum, quī finis domum ejus inire nōluerat, in suēs venēnō<sup>4</sup> quōdam Circē mūtāvit. Ūsūs<sup>5</sup>

1. vitreus. -a, -um, glassy, sea-green. 2. regiā (domus), royal palace. 3. cīngō. 4. poison, drug. 5. Adjectives of knowledge and skill govern the Genitive.

enim venēnōrum magicōrum perītissima erat. Quā dē calamitāte cum Ulixēs ab Eurylochō certior esset factus, gladiō accinctō<sup>6</sup> domum Circēs<sup>7</sup> ad sociōs liberandōs profectus est. Eunti obviam<sup>8</sup> eī Mercurius factus, quōmodo Circēn vīscere<sup>9</sup> neque in suem ab eā mūtārī posset, dēmōstrāvit. Aliud enim venēnum eī dedit, quod sī prius sūmeret, fore<sup>10</sup> ut Circē eum mūtāre nōn posset. Eum jussit, cum deo dolōs versāret, gladiō strictō et impetū factō, eam perterrere. Ita enim mīstissimam et benevolentissimam ex crūdēlissimā eam factūrum esse. Omnibus rēbus factis sicut deus praecēperat, Circē amīcissimā ūsus est<sup>11</sup> atque, sociīs in hominēs rursus mūtātis, ex insulā est dīmissus.

6. **accingō**. 7. Greek Gen. = **Circae**. 8. **obviam fiō**, *I meet*.  
 9. **vīsō**, *visit*. 10. = **futūrum esse**, governed by **dixit** understood.  
 11. **tē amīcō ūtor**, *I enjoy your friendship*.

#### ULYSSES RETURNS HOME

Post multōs annōs, multīs ac gravissimīs cāsibus perlātis, Ulixēs, nāvī et omnibus sociīs āmissis, domum dormiēns ā Phaeācibus<sup>1</sup> vectus est et in litus expositus. Cum in rēgiam suam, mendīcī<sup>2</sup> habitū indūtus, venisset, amātōrēs uxōris sumptū<sup>3</sup> ipsiūs epulābantur neque eum aguōvērunt. Insolenter eum accēpērunt et ūnus ex eīs sellulam ad ējus caput injecit. Posteā Pēnelopē certāmen eīs posuit, pollicita sē eī quī arcum conjugis absentis intenderet et sagittam per duo-decim secūrēs ex ordine<sup>4</sup> positās mitteret nūptūram esse. Ubi omnēs frūstrā cōnātī sunt, Ulixēs petiit ut sibi arcum intendere cōnārī licēret. Tum potestāte factā, omnibus portīs ējus jussū jam clausīs, arcum nōn solum intendere potuit sed sagittam sine ūllō negōtiō per secūrēs unō cōnātū mīsit. Deinde, signō datō, rēx jam ab omnibus agnitus, amātōrēs omnēs sagittīs interfecit.

1. The Phaeacians, the mythical inhabitants of the island of Scheria (Corcyra). 2. **mendīcus**, *beggar*. 3. *expense*. 4. *in a row*.

## THE CAPTURE OF QUEBEC

*(Military Narrative)*

1. Galli quondam in Americā cum Britannis ferē continentia bella gerēbant. Illi sēdē, ad utramque rīpam Laurentiī flūminis habēbant eōrumque finēs ūsque ad lacūs māgnōs, qui in interiōrem partem continentis<sup>1</sup> pertinent, patēbant. III colōniās tredecim in ōrā maritimā incolēbant. Gallis autem erat arx ad rīpam flūminis loc<sup>2</sup> et nātūrā et manū<sup>3</sup> egregiā mūnitō posita. Quam arcem capere, quod māgnō Gallis ad bellum gerendum ūsul<sup>4</sup> erat, Britannū māgnopere cupiēbant. Itaque, māgnis cōpiis comparātis, classi māximā aedificātā atque omnibus rēbus ōrnatā, ad eam arcem expugnandam veniunt.

1. **continēns**, Adj., *continuous*; Noun, *continent*. 2. Phrases with **locus** usually omit prep. **in** before the Abl. 3. Translate idiomatically: **manū** = *arte*. 4. **Double Dative**; **Gallis**, of *Interest*; **ūsul**, of *Purpose*.

## GENERAL WOLFE

2. Dux Britannōrum, vir summae rei militāris scientiae virtūtisque māximae, tenui valētūdine tum erat. Haud tamen infirmiter rem gerēbat et māximam laudem sibi fore, si locum expugnāre posset, existimāvit. Multōs mēnsēs autem Gallōs obsidēbat neque eōs sē dēdere, quamquam famē paene cōfecti erant, cōgere posse vidēbātur. Tandem adulescēns quīdam viam eī ostendit, quā viā montem ascendere posset<sup>1</sup> et locō idōneō aciem instruere. Proximā nocte cōnātum facere cōstituit. Posterō diē militēs quōsdam, per speciem impetūs in aliam partem faciendī, in litus exposuit. Mājōrēs cōpiās noctū ad eum locum, qui sibi dēmōstrātus erat, linteribus dēportārī iussit. Ipse, dum linter quā vehēbātur rēmis secundō

1. **quā posset**: **quā** = *ut eā*, Relative of Result or Characteristic.

flūmine,<sup>2</sup> aestus enim jam sē ineitābat, prōpellitur, multa cum anicīs dē morte et glōriā colloquēbātur.

2. Abl. Absolute, translate "down the stream" (lit. "the current following"): **adversō flūmine** = "up stream."

#### THE PLAINS OF ABRAHAM

3. Cum ad ēgressum ventum esset, paucōs ex mīlitibus fortissimīs dēlectōs, adulēscēte duce, praemisit; reliquōs ēgredi et quam cautissimē subsequi iussit. Cūstōdibus qui in summō colle erant occīsīs, omnibus suis jam subsecūtīs, Britannū ante lūcem in plānitiem, quae prō mūrīs oppidi porrēcta est, ēmersērunt. Primā lūce, cum Galli dē<sup>1</sup> mūrīs dēspicientēs Britannōs in aciē ad proelium parātōs stantēs vidērent, māximō terrōre percussī sunt.

1. Give two common meanings of **dē**. **Porrigō, -ēre, -rēxi, -rēctum, stretch.**

#### DEATH OF WOLFE

4. Illōrum tamen dux, vir fortissimus, salūte etiam tum handquāquam dēspērātā, cōpiīs ē portīs ēduētīs, potestātem hostibus pugnandi facere cōstituit. Acriter diū ab utrisque pugnātum est et uterque<sup>1</sup> dux, mortiferō vulnere acceptō, ē proeliō ā suis auferēbātur. Tum vērō aliquis ex Britannīs exclāmāvit "Fugiunt." "Quī fugiunt?" dux Britannicus interrogāvit. "Galli," respondēt. "Aequō igitur animō," inquit, "moriar," et paulō post exanimātus est.

1. When is **uterque** used in the plural, when in the singular?

#### DEATH OF MONTCALM

5. Alter<sup>1</sup> dux mortem aequē praeclāram, elādem patriae suae lūgēns, cōnsecūtus est. Cum ad eum rem in angustō<sup>2</sup> esse nūntiātum esset, exclāmāvisse dicitur, "Sī ego mīlitum illōrum rōbnstōrum neque famē maeiēque extemātōrum dux essem, et ille hōrum miserrimōrum, aliter atque hodiē rēs ēvāsūra erat."

1. Distinguish **alter** from **alius**. 2. **angustus, narrow**; as we say, "in a tight place."

PART III

A SHORT COURSE IN SYNTAX

SUITABLE FOR THIRD-YEAR STUDENTS



MILES LEGIONARIUS



# SYNTAX

## 1

### REVIEW

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. — DEPONENT PARTICIPLES. —  
ACCUSATIVE WITH THE INFINITIVE. —  
DEPENDENT QUESTIONS

### EXERCISE

#### A

(Look up the meanings of *cōstituō*, *impetrō*, *rescindō*)

1. As none defended the walls, he made an attack.
2. Having settled these things, he returned to the army.
3. Having exhorted the legion, the lieutenants will join battle.
4. After the assembly was dismissed, the chieftains returned home.
5. Having promised to send hostages, they obtained peace.
6. He broke down the walls of the city captured by his (men).
7. The soldiers sent by Caesar destroyed the bridge.

#### B

1. They heard that he was coming.
2. They reported that three towns had been stormed.
3. He learned that they were being (hard) pressed by (their) enemies.
4. They ask what he wishes to be done.
5. He says that he wishes them to do this.
6. He told them where

(= *whither*) he was going. 7. They thought he was not going there (= *thither*). 8. They inquired whence he had come and where he wished camp to be pitched. 9. He informed them that he had come thence; that he wished them to pitch camp there. 10. He hoped the legions would come on the following day.

## 2

## EQUIVALENTS OF THE ENGLISH INFINITIVE

## INFINITIVE AS COMPLEMENT OF A MODAL VERB

The following (called Modal Verbs) take an Infinitive as complement in Latin, as in English: —

(a) *possum*, *volō* (*nōlō*, *mālō*), *cupiō*, *videor* (*seem*), *oñnor*, *audeō*, *dēbeō* (*owe*, *ought*), *cōnsuēvī* (*am accustomed*, perf. of *cōnsuēsoō*), *soleō*, *contendō*, *incipiō*, *coepi*, *parō*, *dēsīnō* (*cease*), *dubitō* (*hesitate*), *cōstituō* (*resolve* about one's self).

(b) *patior* (*tē*), *ainō* (*tē*), *oōgō* (*tē*), *jubeō* (*tē*), *prohibeō* (*tē*), *vetō* (*tē*).

Note: —

(1) The verbs in (b) take an Accusative as subject of the infinitive. *Volō* also may be used thus: *volō tē saluum esse* (but *volō saluum esse ipse*).

(2) With the passive complementary infinitive, the passive *coeptus sum* is used, not *coepi*.

(3) *Videor* and *dīcor* are used personally, not impersonally:

*It seems that they came* = *They seem to have come*:

*Vēnisse videntur* (not *Eōs vēnisse vidētur*, *It seems*, etc.).

*It is said that he wished* = *He is said to have wished*:

*Voluisse dīcitur* (not *Eum voluisse dīcitur*).

(4) *I could have gone* = *I was able to go*:

*Potui ire* (not *ivisse*).

*I ought to have sent* = *I owed (it as a duty) to send*:

*Dēbul mittere* (not *Dēbeō mīsisse*).

EXERCISE

1. They began to throw stones.
2. Stones began to be thrown.
3. We are accustomed to receive, not to give, hostages.
4. It seems that she was not sent.
5. They could have reached shore.
6. These things you ought to have done.
7. He began to raise (collect) forces.
8. He hastened to pitch camp.
9. They never ceased to complain.
10. He resolved to attack the camp.
11. I shall not allow them to set out.
12. Since they did not dare to cross.
13. He permitted the gates to be opened.
14. We wish you to be safe (Acc.); we wish to be safe (Nom.).
15. He compelled them to surrender (themselves).
16. They were compelled to seek peace.
17. It is said they never wished.
18. It was said that they (then) wished.
19. He did not hesitate to go.
20. We can forbid you to speak, but we never could have prevented you from coming.

3

EQUIVALENTS OF THE ENGLISH INFINITIVE

(Continued)

1. Adverbial Final Clause —

= English Infinitive of Purpose.

2. Substantive Final Clause —

= English Complementary Infinitive.

With verbs of *asking*, etc.

1. Adverbial Final Clauses have been dealt with on page 241. Other equivalents of the English Infinitive of Purpose, namely, the Supine and the Gerund or Gerundive with *ad* or *causā*, were mentioned in this connection.

2. With verbs signifying *ask*, *persuade*, *command* (*imperō*, *mandō*, not *jubeō*), *exhort*, *warn* or *advise*, *strive* (*nitor*, not

*cōnor*; sometimes *contendō*), the English Complementary Infinitive is represented by a **Final Clause** (*ut, nē, etc.*) weakened into a **Substantive Clause** used as **Subject** or **Object**, thus:—

*I ask you to go,* { **Rogō tē ut eās**, primarily, *I ask you (and my purpose is) that you may go*: **Adverbial**; secondarily, *I ask you a certain thing, i.e. that you go*: **Object**.

*They were persuaded not to go,* { **Eis persuāsum est nē irent**, (*It was persuaded them that they should not go*): **Subject** of Impersonal Verb.

3. Note the case governed by each of these verbs:—

ACCUSATIVE	DATIVE
<i>rogō (tē)</i> , ask.	<i>persuādeō (tibi)</i> , persuade,
<i>orō, obsecrō</i> , beg.	<i>urge</i> .
(But <i>petō ā tē</i> , seek.)	<i>imperō</i> , command.
<i>hortor</i> , exhort.	<i>praecipio</i> , warn, instruct.
<i>moneō</i> , warn, advise.	<i>mandō</i> , commission, instruct.

Those that govern the Dative are used impersonally in the passive.

Distinguish the use of *jubeō* from that of *imperō*:—

(a) *Jubeō* takes an infinitive phrase with subject in the Accusative. *Imperō* takes a substantive *ut* or *nē* clause. It may also govern an Indirect Object in the Dative, used of the person *who receives the order*. *Imperō*, demand, often takes, instead of an *ut* clause, a noun in the Accusative (Direct Object), denoting the *thing demanded*.

(b) When the English infinitive is passive, *imperō* may be used like *jubeō* (Acc. with Infin.).

4. Note that Sequence of Tenses must be observed in these Final Clauses.

EXAMPLES

Rogō tē ut eās. Persuādeō tibi nē hōc fās.  
 Eum hortātus sum ut mitteret. Imperāvit militibus ut impe-  
tum facerent.

*He ordered ships to be built,*

Jussit nāvēs fieri. Imperāvit } ut nāvēs fierent.  
nāvēs fieri.

*He demanded cavalry from the Gauls (levied cavalry upon).*

Imperāvit Gallis (Dat.) } equitēs (Acc.).  
ut equitēs darent.

5. Cōstituō, expressing a resolve about another, takes ut, as: Cōstituērunt ut cōsulēs proficiscerentur, but Cōsulēs cōstituērunt proficisci.

6. Distinguish (1) persuādeō tibi ut eās, I persuade you to go (Verbum efficiendī); (2) persuādeō tibi mē nōn posse ire, I persuade (convince) you that I cannot go (Verbum dēclārāndī).

EXERCISE

A

1. Ambassadors came to seek peace, (a) ut, (b) sē, (c) causā, (d) Supine.
2. They will prepare to build ships.
3. He compelled them to surrender.
4. He persuades them to come.
5. They will advise us not to set out.
6. I have asked (rogō) you to believe me.
7. They begged (orō) him to spare the women and children.
8. They requested him (petō ab) not to advance farther.
9. They were ordered to return, (a) jubeō, (b) imperō.
10. He ordered ambassadors to be sent.
11. He ordered them to send. (a) jubeō, (b) imperō.
12. He demanded hostages from them.
13. I demand books from you.
14. He exhorted the soldiers not to forget their valor.
15. I warn you (pl.) not to hurt any one.
16. Let us strive (nitor) to conquer.
17. We

shall try (**cōnor**) to cross. 18. He hastened (**contendō**) to reach camp. 19. He persuaded them that the enemy were coming. 20. They could not persuade him to order the gates to be closed.

## B (REVIEW)

1. He said that they could. 2. He hoped that they would go. 3. He gave orders that ships should be sent. 4. He built a bridge to frighten (**terreō**) the Germans. 5. He compelled them to remain at home. 6. He persuaded them not to fear (**timeō**). 7. They thought (that) he would grant peace. 8. They requested that he would send aid. 9. Fighting is not conquering. 10. I ask you to come; I wish you to come.

## 4

## SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF RESULT

Adverbial Clauses of Result have been discussed on page 268.

1. Adverbial Clauses of Result are sometimes weakened into Substantive Clauses acting as Subject or Object of such verbs or phrases as: —

<b>accidit,</b>	} <i>it happens.</i>	<b>accēdit,</b> <i>it is added.</i>
<b>ēvenit,</b>		<b>efficiō,</b> <i>effect, make possible.</i>
<b>contingit,</b>		<b>impetrō,</b> <i>obtain (a request or desire).</i>
<b>fit,</b>		<b>feri potest,</b> <i>it is possible.</i>
<b>sequitur,</b> <i>it follows.</i>		
<b>restat,</b>	} <i>it remains.</i>	
<b>reliquum est,</b>		

The phrase **id agō ut**, *I make it my aim to*, though it expresses Purpose, may be mentioned here.

**Efficiō** and **impetrō** are partly *final* and partly *consecutive*; the negative with these may be **nē** or **ut nōn**.

**Accedit** often takes a Substantive Clause introduced by **quod**, the fact that.

2. **Tantum abest**, it is so far from, takes two Clauses of Result: (1) A Substantive Clause as Subject, stating *what is so far*; (2) an Adverbial Clause, stating the *consequence of its being so far*; as:—

**Tantum abest ut ego tibi invidiam ut tē miserimum esse existimem**, So far am I from envying you (my envying is so far from being the case) that I think you most wretched.

### EXERCISE

1. That night it happened that there was a full moon.
2. How happens it (**Quid fit**) that you cannot tell me?
3. We happened to be present (impersonal).
4. It remains for me now to speak about the choice of a commander (that I speak about choosing, etc., Gerundive).
5. To this (**hūc**) was added the fact that he could not go (**ut**); that he had said this (**quod** with Indic.).
6. He made it possible for the river to be crossed (effected that it could).
7. He could not obtain permission to stay in Gaul (that it should be permitted him to, **licet**).
8. It is impossible that he is telling an untruth (**mentior**).
9. So far are we from wishing him to conquer, that we are even helping his enemies.
10. I shall enable you to understand.

## 5

### CASES

#### PREDICATE NOMINATIVE. — APPPOSITION

1. A Noun, Adjective, or Pronoun may be a Subjective Predicate in the Nominative Case, completing any of the following verbs:—

- (1) *be, become, seem*;
- (2) the Passive of *make, choose* (or *appoint*), *call, deem* (*think, regard*).

These verbs in the Active take two Accusatives; see page 333.

2. This applies to the complement of the infinitives, *esse*, *feri*, *vidēri*, with such Modal verbs as *possum*, *volō*, *incipiō*, etc., as *Caesar rēx feri nōlēbat*.

3. With the Accusative and Infinitive construction, the Predicate Nominative becomes, of course, the Predicate Accusative, as:—

*Vir sapiēns est.*

*Dicit virum sapientem esse.*

4. An Appositive agrees with its antecedent in **Case**; where possible, also in **Gender**, e.g. in such nouns as *magister*, *magistra*; *victor*, *victrix*; *dominus*, *domina*.

#### VOCABULARY

<i>dēligō</i> , choose.	<i>putō</i> , <i>dūō</i> ,	} <i>think, deem,</i> <i>regard.</i>
<i>appellō</i> , <i>vocō</i> , call, name.	<i>habeō</i> , <i>existimō</i> ,	
<i>ēligō</i> , <i>creō</i> , elect, appoint.	<i>jūdiō</i> ,	

#### EXERCISE

1. He will be chosen leader.
2. They wished to be informed.
3. Cicero was called father of his country.
4. Let us try to *be*, rather (*potius*) than to *seem*, wise.
5. His father had been styled a friend by the Senate.
6. It seems that he was created consul.
7. It is said that they became rich.
8. He denied that he wished to become king.
9. How great is the island?
10. He was aware how large the waves were.
11. He found out what the island was like.
12. Of the river Rhine.
13. By Cicero the consul.
14. Rome was mistress of Italy.
15. We owe much to Greece, the conqueror of the Persians.
16. With the soldiers (as)<sup>1</sup> victors.
17. I know that he wishes to be thought happy.
18. (As) a boy I did many things which, (as) an old man, I shall not do.

<sup>1</sup> The English *as* is often to be taken as the sign of Apposition.



## THE GENITIVE CASE

The Genitive is used chiefly with nouns, and is, therefore, essentially the *Adjective* case. It may be used also with certain adjectives and verbs.

## 6

## THE GENITIVE WITH NOUNS

**RULE.** — A noun, not an Appositive, used to limit or define the application of another noun, is put in the Genitive.

The noun in the Genitive is really an Adjectival Modifier of the limited noun.

The primitive notion of the Genitive was *Source* or *Origin*. From this developed the ideas of *Family Ownership (Possession)*, *Authorship*, *Material*, *Quality*. Note that the history of the Eng. *of* (= *off*, *from*) shows an exact parallel to the Latin and Greek Genitive; e.g. *of a child* = *from childhood*; *buy of* = *buy from*.

The following varieties of the Genitive with Nouns may be specified:—

1. Genitive of **Possession** (also **Authorship**).
2. **Descriptive** Genitive (**Material, Quality, Measure**).  
Under this head belongs the Genitive of Value or Price.
3. **Partitive** Genitive (more accurately Genitive **of the Whole**).
4. **Subjective** Genitive (denoting the *doer* or the *one who has a feeling*).
5. **Objective** Genitive (denoting the *object of an action or feeling*).

**Notes**

1. The Genitive with *causā* is a Possessive: *hominum causā* = *for man's sake*.

2. The Possessive Genitive is often used Predicatively, especially with *eum* and *fiō*, as *domus eet rēgie*, *the house is the king's* = *belongs to the king*; *stulti est in errore manēre*, *it is (the part or characteristic) of a fool to remain in error*. Note. — *P:ri*, *duty*, *characteristic*, etc., are not expressed in Latin.

3. Instead of the Partitive Genitive, *dē* or *ex* with the Ablative may be used, as *fidēlisimus dē servie*; *ūnue ex militibus*. This is regular with **Cardinal numerals** and *quidam*.

4. (a) Many Neuter Pronouns and Adjectives, as well as the Adverbs *satis* and *parum*, take a Partitive Genitive, where English does not use *of*, as *neō quicquam vestitūs*; *plūs sapientīae*; *satis pecūniāe*.

(b) On the contrary, in such expressions as *all of us*, *three of us* (unless *us* represents a number larger than *three*), English uses the Partitive where there is no justification for it; Latin *nōs omnēs*, *we all*, etc.

(c) Notice that *top of*, *middle of*, *bottom of*, *end of*, are not expressed in Latin by a Noun governing a Partitive, but by an Attributive Adjective — *summus*, *medius*, *imus*, *extrēmus*.

#### 5. Genitive of Quality, Measure, Characteristic, or Description.

**RULE.** — The Descriptive Genitive is usually modified by some adjective of extent, such as *māgnus*, *parvus*, *summus*; or a numeral, as *vir summae virtūtis*, *a man of the utmost valor*; *tridui iter* = *iter diērum trium*, *a three days' march*.

*A man of valor* is not *vir virtūtis*; but *vir fortis* (*a brave man*).

For the difference between the Descriptive Genitive and the Descriptive Ablative, see page 339.

#### 6. Genitive of Value or Price.

— The Genitive of Value or Price is a variety of the Descriptive Genitive. It is restricted to such expressions as *tantī*, *quantī*, *māgnī*, *parvī*, *māximī*, *minimī*, *plūris*, *minōris*, with *pretī* (Gen. of *pretium*, *price*) omitted. It denotes *indefinite value*. See **Ablative of Price**, page 339.

The Gen. of Value is used predicatively with the verbs *sum*, *vēndō* (*sell*), *emō* (*buy*), *aestimō* (*value*); as, *tantū est*, *it is worth while*; *quantū domum vēdidisti?* *What did you sell your house for?*

#### 7. An Appositional Genitive

is used occasionally, as *virtūs continentīae*, *the virtue (of) self-control*; *Insula Siciliāe*, *the island (of) Sicily*; *nōmen rēgis*, *the name (of) king*; *vōx voluptātis*, *the word pleasure*. It is strictly **Possessive**.

### EXERCISE

#### A

Translate the following, and identify the use of each Genitive: —

1. Hominis amor Dei.
2. Ōrātiōnēs Cicerōnis.
3. Domus Cicerōnis.
4. Māgnae auctōritātis hīc est.
5. Dextra ripa flūminis.
6. Māgna cōpia frūmenti.
7. Talentum auri.
8. Flūmina lactis.
9. Quantum pecūniae.
10. Helvetiōrum injūriāe populī Rōmāni.
11. Fossa decem pedum.
12. Strepitus rotārum.
13. Terrōre equōrum.
14. Reliquam partem aestātis.
15. Scientia belli.
16. Militēs decimae legiōnis.

## B

1. A two years' exile.
2. At the middle of the night.
3. I value your friendship very highly.
4. What did you pay for your house?
5. More time.
6. More soldiers.
7. As much trouble (*negōtium*).
8. I speak to all of you.
9. Ten of us survive (*supersum*).
10. Throughout the whole of the winter.
11. Who of you?
12. Three of us died.
13. How many of you are there? (How many are you?)
14. Three hundred soldiers.
15. Three thousand years.
16. One thousand cavalry.
17. A man of wisdom.
18. A very wise man (two translations).
19. It belongs to a king to rule.
20. It is the privilege of a citizen to obey the laws.
21. A parent's love for his children.

## 7

## THE GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

1. An Objective Genitive is used with the following Adjectives:—

(a) Those signifying *fulness, desire, knowledge or skill, participation, control*, and their opposites, as:—

**peritus bellī**, *skilled in war.*

**impotēns sui**, *without self-control.*

**nōn compos mentis**, *weak-minded; not having control of one's mind.*

(b) Certain verbal adjectives in **-ns** and **-āx**, as:—

**amāns patriae**, devoted to one's country.  
**tenācem prōpositi**, steadfast in purpose.

NOTE.—Such words as **amāns**, **patiēns**, **appetēns**, used as participles, govern the same case as the verb they are derived from, as **patiēns labōrem**, while enduring toil; but **patiēns labōris**, patient under toil.

## VOCABULARY

<b>plēnus</b> , full.	<b>peritus</b> , skilled.
<b>dives</b> , rich.	<b>imperitus</b> , inexperienced.
<b>egēnus</b> , destitute.	<b>insuētus</b> , unaccustomed.
<b>inops</b> , lacking.	<b>memor</b> , mindful.
<b>studiōsus</b> , desirous, fond.	<b>immemor</b> , heedless.
<b>cupidus</b> , eager, covetous.	<b>particeps</b> , sharing.
<b>avidus</b> , greedy.	<b>ignārus</b> , ignorant.
<b>appetēns</b> , desirous.	<b>expers</b> , having no share in.

2. With **proprius**, characteristic of; **commūnis**, common to; **similis**, like, sometimes the Genitive, sometimes the Dative is used.

**Similis**: Gen. more commonly of living objects, especially persons represented by pronouns, as **similis tui**; Dat. or Gen. of inanimate things.

3. With certain adjectives the poets use a *Genitive of Specification*, as **integer vitæ**, upright in life; **aeger animi**, sick at heart.

## EXERCISE

- Life is full of dangers.
- Rich in resources.
- Fond of waging war.
- Eager for glory and greedy of praise.
- Skilled in the military art.
- Mindful of us.
- Forgetful of self (**oblītus**).
- Unmindful of you (pl.).
- Free from blame.
- Sharing in public counsel.
- Unused to sailing.
- Versed in literature.
- Lacking refinement.
- Void of all shame.
- Destitute of hope and friends.
- Very like his father.
- Common to mankind.
- Like a dream.

## 8

## THE GENITIVE WITH VERBS

The Genitive is used with the following:—

1. **Memini, Reminiscor, Recordor, Obliviscor, Misereor,** *Remember, Forget, Pity.* See page 212.

2. **Admoneō, Commoneō, Commonefaciō,** *Remind, Admonish.*

These take an Accusative of the Person, and sometimes a Genitive of the Thing. In Cicero, however, they invariably take **dē** with the Ablative of the Thing. A neuter pronoun or adjective, used substantively, is put in the Accusative, as **hōc tē admoneō.**

3. **Verbs of Judicial Action,** signifying *Accuse, Convict, Acquit, Condemn.*

These take an Accusative of the Person and Genitive of the Charge. Verbs of *Condemning* also take an Ablative of the Penalty, as:—

(1) **Eum capitīs (prōditōnis) condemnāvērunt,** *They convicted him of a capital offence (of treason).*

(2) **Eum capite (pecūniā) damnāvērunt,** *They condemned him to death (to pay a fine).*

**accūsō,** *I accuse; absolvō,* *I acquit.*

4. **Certain Impersonal Verbs of Feeling:—**

**pudet, paenitet, miseret, taedet, piget,** signifying *shame, repentance, pity, weariness, disgust.*

These take the Accusative of the Person and the Genitive of the Cause, as:—

**Mē pudet tuae stultitiæ,** *I am ashamed of your folly.*

**pudet mē,** *I am ashamed.*

**paenitēbit tē,** *you will repent.*

**taedōbat eum,** *he was wearied.*

**cum nōs ējus misereat,** *since we pity him.*

**vōs piget,** *you are disgusted.*

**miserōmur ējus = nōs ējus miseret,** *we pity him.*

NOTE.—(a) **Misereor** (Personal Passive) and **Miserēscō** take a Genitive of the Cause. (b) A Neuter or an Infinitive may act as Subject, as **hōc tē pudet; mē paenitet hōc fēcisse.**

5. **Interest** and **Rēfert**, *It concerns, it is important.*

With these verbs the following points are to be observed:—

(a) *The person concerned*: usually the Genitive.

(b) *The matter of concern*: may be (1) a Neuter Pronoun; (2) an Infinitive or Infinitive Phrase; (3) a Clause (Dependent Question or *ut* Clause of Purpose).

(c) *The degree of concern*: (1) Genitive of Value (**māgnī, parvī**, etc.); (2) an Adverb (**māgnopere, magis**, etc.); (3) a Neuter Accusative of Extent (**multum, plūs**, etc.).

NOTE.—Instead of the Genitive of a Personal Pronoun, **meī, tuī**, etc., the **Ablative Sing. Fem. of the Possessive Adjective** (**meā, tuā, nostrā, vestrā, suā**) is used, as:—

**Hōc civium interest**, *This concerns the citizens*; but, **Hōc nostrā rēfert**, *This concerns us*. (However, **omnium nostrum interest**, *it concerns us all*.)

**Rēfert** seldom takes the Genitive.

### TYPES

**Meā (ējus, eōrum) māgnī (māgnopere, multum)**

**interest hōc**

**tē hōc facere.**

**ut hōc faciās.**

**quandō id factūrus sīs.**

6. **The Predicate Genitive** of Possession, Characteristic, Quality, or Value has been treated under the Genitive with Nouns.

### EXERCISE

1. He warned them not to forget their valor.
2. I shall remind you of these things.
3. They were admonished of the danger.
4. They will sentence him to death.
5. He was convicted of extortion (**rēs repetundae**).
6. Let him be acquitted of (the charge of) treason.
7. I ask who is ashamed to defend his country.
8. Let us pity the poor.
9. Let us not weary in well doing.
10. Are you

sorry for having said such things (to have said)? 11. It concerns the state, not me. 12. What mattered it to them what others thought? 13. He said that it concerned him more than others. 14. It is exceedingly important to him that the enemy should cross, — to Caesar, to us, to the soldiers, to the commonwealth, to you, to me, to them, to all.

## 9

## THE DATIVE CASE

## THE DATIVE WITH VERBS

## 1. Indirect Object

1. The Dative may be used as the Indirect Object (*a*) of a Transitive Verb, along with an Accusative as Direct Object, (*b*) of an Intransitive Verb.

The Dative is used with many compounds of the following prepositions: —

**ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super.**

## EXAMPLES

(*a*) Transitive compounds: —

**Pecūniae pudōrem antepōnō,** } *I put honor before money,*

**Pecūniam pudōri posthabeō,** } *I prefer honor to money.*

**Bellum tibi indicō (inferō),** *I declare (wage) war upon you.*

**Lēgātōs exercitūi praeficit,** *He puts lieutenants over (at the head of, in command of) the army.*

(*b*) Intransitive compounds: —

Compounds of the verb **sum**, as: —

**adsum,** *am present.*

**obaum,** *am hurtful.*

**dēaum,** *am lacking.*

**prōaum,** *am serviceable.*

**intersum,** *take part in.*

**praeaum,** *am at the head of.*

Also many other compounds, as: **occurō,** *meet, encounter;*

**subveniō, succurrō, come to the aid of, succor; appropinquō, approach.**

**Dōnō** and **circumdō** admit of two constructions: —

(1) Acc. of the *Thing* given or put, and Dat. of the *Person* or *Thing* affected: —

**Librum tibi dōnō, I present a book to you.**

**Mūrum urbi circumdat, He puts a wall around the city.**

(2) Abl. of the *Thing* given or put, and Acc. of the *Person* or *Thing* affected: —

**Librō tē dōnō, I present you with a book.**

**Mūrō urbem circumdat, He surrounds the city with a wall.**

2. Many verbs that are Transitive in English are Intransitive in Latin, and govern a Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage. They are such as the following: —

(1) *Envy, spare, persuade, pardon, believe, favor, aid, indulge, threaten.*

(2) *Command or obey; serve or resist; benefit or injure; please or displease.*

(For Vocabulary, see page 212.)

**Irāscor, I am angry at, and studeō, am fond of, devoted to, take the Dative.**

*I threaten you with death = mortem tibi minor (I threaten death to you).*

*I supply you with money = pecūniam tibi suppeditō (I supply money to you).*

NOTE. — The Passive of intransitive verbs can be used only impersonally. See page 265.

3. Some verbs govern a Dative or an Accusative, with a difference of meaning, as: —

**Cōnsulō tē, I consult you; cōnsulō tibi, I consult your interest.** Similarly **vereor, timeō, metuō, Acc. fear; Dat. fear for; caveō tē, I guard against you; caveō tibi, I safeguard you; prospiciō, prōvideō, Acc. foresee; Dat. provide for; temperō, Acc. govern, direct; Dat., of things, restrain; of persons, spare.**



## 2. Dative of Interest or Reference

Including Dative of Possession and Dative of the Agent

1. The Dative of Interest or Reference denotes the *person or thing concerned or indirectly affected*. It modifies the verb less closely than does the Indirect Object, rather qualifying the general force of the sentence, as : **Spem militibus minuit**, *It lessened hope for the soldiers*.

This includes the **Ethical Dative**, a very vague Dative of Interest, as : **Cūr mihi hōc fēcistī?** *Why, tell me, did you do this?* **Quid sibi vult?** *What does he mean?*

2. The Dative of Possession with the verb **sum** is a Dative of Interest, as : **Mihi nōmen est Cāiō**, *My name is Caius*.

NOTE. — **Cāiō** is attracted into the Dative.

Distinguish : —

**Liber mihi (eī) est**, *I have (he has) a book*.

**Liber meus (ējus) est**, *The book is mine (his)*.

3. The Dative of the **Agent** with the Gerundive has been explained on page 221 as a Dative of Interest.

4. One species of the Dative of Interest is used with verbs of *taking away*, instead of an Ablative of Separation, as : —

**Gladium tibi ēripiō**, *I snatch the sword from you* (literally *for you*; colloquial “*on you*”).

## 3. Double Dative

(1) Purpose or Tendency, (2) Interest

The Double Dative is illustrated in the following examples : —

**Hōo māgnō ūsui Gallis est**, *This is of great service to the Gauls*.

**Quinque cohortēs praesidiō nāvibus reliquit**, *He left five cohorts (to act) as a guard to the ships*.

In the foregoing examples, *ūsuf* and *praesidiō* are the Dative of **Tendency or Purpose** and *Gallis* and *nāvibus* are the Dative of **Interest**.

The Dative of Purpose may be used alone, as:—

*Locum castris dēlēgerunt*, *They chose a place for a camp.*

#### 4. Poetical Dative of Motion

In poetry the Dative is freely used instead of *ad* with the Accusative to denote the *limit* or *object of motion*, as:—

*Multōs dēmīttimus Orcō*, *We send many to Hades.*

*It clāmor caelō*, *The clamor rises to heaven.*

### THE DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

A Dative of Interest is used with adjectives signifying *friendly, unfriendly; like, unlike; equal, near, fit, suitable, useful.*

*Similis, like, and proprius, characteristic of,* may also take the Genitive, see page 324.

*Proxior, proximus, nearer, next,* like the prepositional adverb *prope*, may take the Accusative.

*Aptus* and *idōneus* more commonly take *ad* and the Accusative.

*Ūtilis* (Dat.), *useful to (a person)*; (*ad* and Acc.), *useful for (a purpose).*

### EXERCISE

#### A

(Indirect Object)

1. He appointed Brutus in command of the fleet.
2. Brutus commanded (*praesum*) the ships.
3. He had put Labienus in charge of the work of building ships.
4. The senate declared war upon Caesar.
5. Caesar waged war upon the senate (*bellum inferō*).
6. The Britons had aided the Gauls (1. *adjuvō*; 2. *subveniō*).
7. He came upon (*occurrō*) the soldiers already fighting.
8. He surrounded the camp with a rampart and ditch.
9. They wished to

present Caesar with a crown. 10. He ordered each one to look out for himself (**cōnsulō**). 11. The Belgae are next the Germans. 12. The boy is very like his father. 13. He did not wish to encounter (**occurrō**) a more serious war.

*B**(Impersonal Passive)*

1. I am envied; you are avoided. 2. They were persuaded to go. 3. They are ordered to set out (1. **jubeō**; 2. **imperō**). 4. The poor will be spared. 5. Caesar will be obeyed. 6. Caesar will be feared. 7. He feared the sea. 8. They feared for the state. 9. Your interests will be consulted. 10. He gave orders that no one should be injured.

*C**(Double Dative)*

1. This is a great disgrace to the citizens. 2. The fleet was a means of safety to the city. 3. He came to the aid of his brother. 4. I present this to you as a gift. 5. He was an object of hatred to the Romans. 6. They will act (*be*) as a guard to the camp. 7. All these things were of great service (**ūsus**) to Caesar for building ships. 8. I impute (**vertō**) this to you as a fault.

*D**(Special Verbs)*

1. Caesar snatched a shield from one soldier. 2. He provided for winter. 3. He foresaw a great lack of food. 4. He provided (**comparō**) a corn supply (**rēs frūmentāria**). 5. Beware of rashness. 6. I will safeguard you. 7. He could not restrain (**temperō**) his tears. 8. Neptune governs the tempests. 9. Caesar has (**sum**) an army. 10. The army is Caesar's.

## 10

## THE ACCUSATIVE

## 1. Direct Object

1. Verbs that govern a Direct Object are Transitive. The Direct Object may denote (a) the Person or Thing Affected or (b) the Result, as:—

(a) *Hostēs vicit.*  
*Epistolam misit.*

(b) *Epistolam scripsit.*  
*Pontem aedificāvit.*

2. Many verbs of *Feeling, Taste, Smell*, which are intransitive in English, are Transitive in Latin, as:—

*lugeō, doleō, grieve for; rideō, laugh at; horreo, shudder at; dēspērō, despair of; miror, wonder at; sapiō, taste of; oleō, redoleō, smell of.*

*Salūtem dēspērō, I despair of safety.*

3. Many intransitive verbs make transitive Compounds, as:—

*trānseō, cross; advenio, adeō, reach, go to (but perveniō ad); percurrō, traverse; circumstō, surround; conveniō, meet, call upon, interview.*

4. Compounds of certain prepositions (especially *trāns*), if from transitive verbs, may take two Accusatives, one governed by the simple verb, the other by the preposition, as:—

*Exercitum flūmen trānsdūxit = Exercitum trāns flūmen dūxit.*

5. The **Cognate Accusative** is a Direct Object of Result, conveying a meaning *akin to that of the verb*. The verb is one that is otherwise intransitive, as:—

*Vitam beātam vivō, I live a happy life; illud glōrior, I make this boast; eadem peccat, he makes the same mistakes.*

The Adverbial Accusative (as *multum valet*) and the Accusative of Extent are varieties of this Accusative of Result. It is sometimes called the Accusative of the Inner Object, as opposed to the Accusative denoting that which is affected or the Accusative of the Outer Object.

## 2. Two Accusatives—Primary and Secondary Object

## PERSON AND THING

1. Verbs signifying *ask, teach, conceal*, usually take two Objects in the Accusative: the Person (Primary Object) and the Thing (Secondary Object), as:—

**Rogō tē sententiam tuam**, *I ask you (for) your opinion.*

**rogō**, *ask, ask for*; **interrogō**, *inquire*; **poscō**, *demand*; **ōrō**, **implōrō**, **obsecrō**, *beg, entreat*; **doceō**, *teach*; **cēlō**, *conceal, keep in the dark*. Also **moneō**, *warn*; **admoneō**, *admonish*, when the Thing is expressed by a Neuter Pronoun, as **hōc tē moneō** (see page 316).

2. Some verbs of this class admit of other constructions, as:—

**Interrogō, cēlō, doceō dē** (of the Thing); **poscō, flāgitō ab** (of the Person).

Always **quaerō ab** or **ex** (of the Person); **petō ā tē**, *I seek from you*; **postulō ā tē**, *I demand of you*.

3. With the Passive of these verbs various constructions occur. Usually with the Passive of **rogō** and verbs of *teaching*, the Accusative of the Person becomes the Subject Nominative, and the Accusative of the Thing is *retained*, as, (**tū**) **rogāris sententiam**.

Those that may take **ab, dē, or ex** in the Active commonly do so in the Passive.

## 3. Two Accusatives—Object and Predicate

## SAME PERSON OR SAME THING

1. Active verbs signifying *make, choose, appoint; name, call; think, deem, regard*, take two Accusatives of the Same Person or the Same Thing, one an Object and the other an Objective Predicate, as:—

**Eum rēgem dēlēgērunt**, *They chose him king.*

2. With the Passive of these verbs the Object becomes

the Subject Nominative; the Predicate Accusative becomes the Predicate Nominative, as: —

(**Is**) **rēx dēlēotus est**, *He was chosen king.*

**faciō** (passive **fiō**), *make*; **creō**, **dēligō**, **legō**, *appoint, choose*; **appellō**, **vocō**, **nōminō**, *call, name*; **existimō**, **putō**, **arbitror** **dūcō**, **habēō**, **jūdicō**, *think, deem, regard.*

#### 4. Accusative of Extent

Extent of space and duration of time are expressed by the Accusative, as: —

**Tria millia passuum aberant**, *They were three miles distant.*

**Tōtam noctem dormiēbat**, *He slept all night.*

Per with the Accusative is sometimes used instead of the Accusative of Extent.

#### 5. Accusative of Respect or Specification

Often in poetry, rarely in prose, an Accusative of the *part affected* or *referred to* is used adverbially to modify a verb or adjective, as: —

**Manūs revinctus**, *bound as to his hands*; **ōs deō similis**, *like a god in countenance.*

This is a development of the Accusative of Extent. Similarly, **Māximam partem lacte et pecore vivunt**, *For the most part they live on milk and meat.* Its free use in poetry is an imitation of the Greek. The Adverbial Accusatives **multum**, **id aetātis** (*of that age*), **id temporis** (*at that time*), etc., are of the same class.

#### 6. Accusative of Limit of Motion

The Accusative may denote the point *aimed at* or *reached*: —

(1) with the preposition **ad** or **in**;

(2) without a preposition, in names of towns, small islands, **domus**, **rūs**, as: —

**Ad urbem vēnit**; **Rōmam profectus est**; **domum rediit.**

The Supine of Purpose exhibits the same use of the Accusative.

## 7. Accusative in Exclamations

The Accusative, usually modified by an Adjective, is found in exclamations, as:—

*Mē miserum! Ah, wretched me!*

## 8. Accusative as Subject of the Infinitive

The Subject of the Infinitive is put in the Accusative case.

## 9. Accusative with Prepositions

Many prepositions, such as *ad, ante, inter, ob, per, circum, propter*, etc., govern the Accusative. See page 273.

## EXERCISE

## A

1. The fish tastes of the sea. 2. The air smells of flowers. 3. They had already despaired of victory. 4. They laughed at his folly. 5. Let us not shudder at death. 6. He instructs him to visit the island (*adeō*). 7. He reached the town (1. *adveniō*, 2. *pervenio*). 8. The army was led across (*transdūo*) the river. 9. He inquired of the old woman the price of the books. 10. They asked Caesar for peace (1. *rogō*, 2. *petō*). 11. He concealed his opinion from his friends. 12. Caesar was asked for peace (1. *rogō*, 2. *petō*).

## B

1. He was taught literature. 2. He will go to the country to live (*habitō*). 3. They were not regarded (as) happy. 4. Let us not regard such a man (as) wise. 5. They informed Caesar. 6. Caesar was informed. 7. He kept the Gauls in the dark as to his plans. 8. The Gauls were kept in the dark as to his plans. 9. He waited for the cavalry. 10. They will look at the stars. 11. They make this boast. 12. We grieve over the calamities of our friends. 13. He set out for Athens, for Greece, for home, to his army, for Rome, for Italy.

## 11

## THE ABLATIVE

The uses of the Ablative unite those of three cases originally distinct. These uses shade into one another, and subdivide as follows:—

I. ABLATIVE PROPER, the *Whence* case.1. Separation or motion *from*,

(a) *of place*; with a preposition, **ab**, **dē**, **ex**; without a preposition, names of towns, etc.

(b) with verbs of *depriving*, etc.

## 2. Source or Origin

with participles denoting *birth*, as **nātus deō**; usually without a preposition; but **ex** is used with pronouns, and **ab** to denote *remote ancestry*.

3. Agent. Note.—**Ab**, translated *by*, really means *from*.4. Comparison, instead of **quam** with Nominative or Accusative.

Note that **plūs**, **minus**, **amplius**, may omit **quam** without affecting the construction.

## 5. Cause.

**Multa cupiditate fecit**, *He did many things through greed.*

II. INSTRUMENTAL, the *How* case.

## 1. Means, Instrument;

## 2. Manner, Accompaniment, Attendant Circumstance;

## 3. Degree of Difference (with comparatives);

## 4. Description (always modified by an Adjective or Genitive);

5. Price (the definite *means* of barter or exchange; with **emō**, **vēndō**, **suēdō**, **parō**, **mūtō**);6. Specification, denoting that *in respect to which* something is or is done, as **māior nātū**; **virtūte praestant**.III. LOCATIVE, denoting place, situation; the *Where* case.1. Place *in*, *at*, or *on* which:

(a) commonly with **in**.

(b) without **in**, in names of towns; **domus**, **rūs**; and phrases containing **locus** and **tōtus**.



2. **Time** when or within which (without a preposition).

**Intrā**, with Acc., may also express *time within which*.

3. **Ablative Absolute**.

### Special Constructions

1. The Ablative of Separation without a preposition is used with: —

- (a) Verbs signifying *free* (**liberō**, **solvō**); *deprive, strip* (**spoliō**, **nūdō**, **exuō**); *need, lack* (**egeō**, **careō**).
- (b) Adjectives signifying *free, empty, bare*, as **liber**, **vacuus**, **nūdus**.

**Pellō**, *bantsh*, and **prohibeō**, *prevent*, often omit the preposition **ab** or **ex**. Compounds of **ab** or **ex** more frequently omit the preposition before the noun.

2. **Ūtor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **potior**, **vesoor**, are modified by an Ablative of Means or Instrument, as: —

**Pāce fruimur**, *We enjoy (ourselves by means of) peace*.

**Potior** sometimes takes the Genitive, as **tōtius Galliae potiri**, *gain control of all Gaul*.

**Fidō** and its compounds take (a) an Ablative of the Thing, (b) a Dative of the Person, as: **tibi cōfidō**; **virtūte oñfidēbant**.

3. The following adjectives are modified by an Ablative of Cause or Means: **dignus**, *worthy*; **indignus**, *unworthy*; **contentus**, *contented*; **frētus**, *supported by, relying on*.

With **dignus** and **indignus** the Ablative may be regarded as one of Specification.

**Liber**, *free*; **vacuus**, *empty*; **nūdus**, *bare*, take an Ablative of Separation.

4. **Opus est** and **ūsus est**, *there is need, necessity*, have the following construction: —

- 1. Ablative of Means for the *Thing* needed;
- 2. Dative of Interest for the *Person* concerned; as:

**Exercitū mihi opus est**, *I need an army*.

A neuter pronoun as Subject may denote the Thing needed, as :  
**Hōc opus est ; ea quae opus sunt.**

The Thing needed is sometimes expressed by the Ablative of a Perfect Passive Participle used as a noun, as : **Opus est properātō, oñsultō, factō,** *There is need of haste, deliberation, action.*

5. The Ablative of Manner without a preposition is used when the Ablative is modified by an adjective or Genitive ; when the noun is not so modified, **cum** and the Ablative of Accompaniment are used, as : —

**Māgnā gravitatē loquitur,** *He speaks with great dignity.*

**Cum gravitatē loquitur,** *He speaks with dignity.*

**Māgnō cum periculō** is an exceptional phrase.

Note the following phrases : —

**Meā sententiā,** *in my opinion ; mōre suō,* *according to their own custom ; suā sponte,* *of their own accord.*

6. The Ablative of Attendant Circumstance can scarcely be distinguished from that of Manner. The following are clear examples : —

**Bonīs auspiciis vēnit,** *He came under good auspices.*

**Māximō imbri vēnit,** *He came amid a heavy shower.*

7. The Ablative of Accompaniment takes **cum**, as : —

**Cum exercitū profectus est,** *He set out with an army.*

Certain military expressions omit **cum** when the Ablative is modified by some adjective other than a numeral, as : —

**Omnibus cōpiis,** *with all his forces ; māgnā manū,* *with a large band ;* but always **cum duābus legiōnibus.**

8. The Ablative of Description or Quality must be modified by an adjective or Genitive, as : —

**Bonō animō sunt,** *They are of good courage.*

*A man of courage* must be expressed by an adjective, *a courageous man.*

No fixed rule can be given for the use of the Descriptive Ablative as compared with the Descriptive Genitive. Still it may be said that *transient* and *physical* characteristics are apt to be expressed by the Ablative; *permanent* and *moral* qualities by the Genitive.

Expressions of *number* and *measure* have the Genitive.

Study the following list of phrases:—

DESCRIPTIVE GENITIVE  
vir eummae virtūte,  
lōrē mille colōrum,  
tridui via,  
foesa quindecim pedum,  
māgni labōris sunt,  
ējus modi vir.

DESCRIPTIVE ABLATIVE  
hominē ingenti corporum  
māgnitudine,  
vireummāreimilitārisecientia,  
vir eummō ingeniō,  
capillō eunt prōmissō,  
vir māgnā prudentiā,  
tenui valētudine fuit.

9. The Ablative of Price or Definite Means of Exchange is used with verbs of *buying*, *selling*, and *exchanging*, as: *vēndō*, *sell*; *vēneō*, *am sold*; *emō*, *buy*; *parō*, *procure*; *mūtō*, *exchange*.

The Genitive of Price or Value is used to denote the Indefinite Value; and only in the following expressions:—

Māgni, parvi, tanti, quanti, māximi, minimi, plūris, minōris.

With verbs of *exchanging*, the *thing received* is usually treated as the price or means of exchange, as: *pācem bellō mūtāmus*, *We exchange peace for war*.

But in poetry and in late Latin the reverse is sometimes the case.

10. The Ablative of the Way by which is an Ablative of Means, as: *Hic regiōnibus iter fēcērunt*, *They marched through these regions*.

11. The Ablative of Specification is used without a preposition, as: *Cēterōs virtūte praestant*, *They surpass the rest in valor*.

12. The Ablative Absolute and Ablative of Difference have been discussed elsewhere. See pages 190 and 99. The former is an Ablative of Situation (Locative), shading into an Ablative of Manner or Circumstance (Instrumental); the latter an Ablative of Means.

## EXERCISES ON THE ABLATIVE

## A

*Translate the following, distinguishing Cause, Source, Means, Instrument, Manner, or Circumstance. Indicate also where any of these seem to shade into each other:—*

1. Cum silentiō auditi sunt (why **cum**?).
2. Quae res et eibi genere et libertate vitae vires alit.
3. Aeger vulneribus.
4. Jussu Caesaris venerunt.
5. Arte, non vi, hostes superavit.
6. Summis viribus contendere.
7. Vir summo loco natus.
8. Bonam tuam veniam hoc faciam.
9. Ea conditione mittitur.
10. Ferro et igni agris vastavit.
11. Gladio occisus est.
12. Sese castris tenebat.
13. Pedibus pugnant.

## B

*(Separation, Cause, Means)*

1. He came from the wall, out of the town, down from the hill, from Rome.
2. He was banished from the state.
3. They were expelled from their territories.
4. He left (**excēdō**) the city.
5. He set out from the city.
6. They stripped (**nūdō**) the wall of defenders.
7. He was robbed of his money and stripped (**excēdō**) of his clothing.
8. He did this through fear.
9. He will gain possession of the camp.
10. They relied upon the multitude of ships.
11. They feed on flesh and milk, not on corn.
12. He lacks prudence.
13. They were hindered from agriculture.
14. They were three miles from town.

## C

(*Opus est, usus est; Manner, Accompaniment, Description*)

1. Caesar will need more forces.
2. They use horses whenever there is occasion for speed.
3. They needed ships rather than men.
4. There is need of deliberation, of haste, of being (something).
5. He set out with an army; with care; with great watchfulness (*diligentiā*).
6. They hastened in full force (*summae cōpiae*).
7. He was a man of valor and courage.
8. He was a man of little wisdom and less courage.
9. They were people (*not populus*) of huge bodily size and great strength.

## D

(*Description, Specification, Manner*)

1. He was (a person) of great influence among his (people).
2. A man of low stature.
3. They spoke in a loud voice.
4. They crossed in a few hours.
5. They fought on sea and land.
6. He came in great haste.
7. He was easily superior in cavalry.
8. In this manner he conquered.
9. A ten days' march.
10. In a more suitable place.
11. In all Gaul.
12. Skilled in war.
13. Lame (*claudus*) in one foot.
14. Relying upon their speed and strength.
15. They sought peace with hands outstretched (*passus*).

## E

(*Price*)

1. He sold his country for gold.
2. At what price will you sell your house?
3. Why do you wish to exchange (life in) the city for (that in) the country?
4. The house sold high (*was sold*).
5. They procure beasts of burden at an enormous (*impēnsus, unweighed*) figure.
6. They exchanged cattle for lands.
7. I value your friendship very highly.
8. Your house is not worth as much as mine.
9. He has sold; the house sold high; will be sold cheap.
10. I bought it for more; for two talents.

## 12

## PLACE

1. The relations of Place, Where, Whither, Whence, are usually expressed in Latin by *the appropriate case assisted by a preposition*, as: —

- (1) *in, at, on* (Where); *in* and the Locative Ablative;  
 (2) *to, into* (Whither); *ad, in*, and the Accusative of Motion;  
 (3) *from, out of* (Whence); *ab, ex*, and the Ablative of Separation.

*in summō monte*; *ad imum collem*; *ab oppidō*.

2. With Names of Towns, Cities, and many Small Islands, also with *domus* and *rūs*, the following should be noted: —

- (1) No preposition is used; (2) Place Where is expressed by the Locative (Genitive or Ablative).

**Locative Genitive** in Nouns of the First or Second Declension Singular; **Locative Ablative** in all other Nouns.

*Domī, rūri, humī* (*on the ground*), *vesperi* (*in the evening*), *heri* (*yesterday*), *militiæ* (*in military service*), are Locatives.

*Rōmam, domum, rūs, to Rome*, etc.; *Rōmā, domō, rūre, from Rome*, etc.; *Rōmæ, domi, rūri, Karthāgine, Corinthi, Athēnis, in Rome, at home*, etc.

## Apposition

3. (a) The Name of a Town may stand in apposition to a preceding *urbs* or *oppidum*, as *in urbe Rōmā = Rōmæ* (Loc.).

(b) If the Name precedes in the Locative, *urbs* or *oppidum* takes the preposition, as: —

*Rōmæ in urbe Italiæ, in Rome, a city of Italy.*

*Curibus ex oppidō Sabīnōrum, from Cures, a town of the Sabines.*

4. *Ad, ab, or apud* is used with the proper case to express *vicinity*, as: —

*apud Rōmam, near Rome*; *ad Athēnās, to the vicinity of Athens.*

5. *He came to Caesar at Rome = He came to Rome to Caesar. Rōmam ad Caesarem vēnit.*

## TIME

1. Time *when* is expressed by the Ablative.
2. Time *how long* is expressed by the Accusative.
3. Time *within which* is expressed by (a) the Ablative, (b) *intrā* with the Accusative, as:—

*hīs decem diēbus = intrā hōs decem diēs.*

4. Time *by which* is expressed by *ad* and the Accusative.
5. Time *for which an appointment is made* is expressed by *in* and the Accusative.
6. *Ago* is expressed by *abhinc* preceding, not following, (a) the Ablative of Difference or (b) the Accusative of Extent, as:—

*ten years ago,* { *abhinc decem annis.*  
                          {    "        "   *annōs.*

7. *After* and *before* are expressed by *post* and *ante*, used as (a) Prepositions with the Accusative or (b) Adverbs modified by the Ablative of Difference.

Very commonly the Ordinal (Accusative or Ablative) is used with *post* or *ante*, as:—

*tribus diēbus post* } = { *diē tertiō post.*  
*post trēs diēs*     }    { *post tertium diē .*

## EXERCISE

1. In Italy, in Corinth in Athens, in Carthage, in these territories. in two days, in the summer.
2. He died five years ago.
3. He convened the Senate for the eighth day.
4. They will arrive by the ninth hour of the day.
5. In Syracuse, the largest city of Sicily; in the city of Syracuse.
6. They set out for their homes.
7. At your home.
8. In an old house (abl.).
9. They came to him in the camp.
10. I have not seen him these ten years.
11. He crossed in a few hours.
12. His brother was slain ten years afterwards (four translations).
13. Not many years ago.
14. Six months before.
15. At Naples, to Naples, at Brundisium.
16. He lived in Carthage; he came from Carthage.

## 13

## THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

## INDEPENDENT USES

The Subjunctive may be used : —

- I. In a Principal Clause or Independent Sentence.
- II. In a Subordinate Clause.

The Independent Uses of the Subjunctive are as follows : —

I. Volitive (**volō**, *I will*); expressing *determination* (Negative **nō**): —

- (a) Hortative; of an Exhortation: **Nō dēspērēmus**, *Let us not despair.*
- (b) Jussive; of a Command: **Jūstītia fiat**, *Let justice be done.*

The Subjunctive of Purpose is of the Volitive variety.

II. Optative (**optō**, *I wish, pray*); expressing a *wish* or *desire* (Negative **nō**): **Veniat**, *May he come*; **Utīnam nō vēnīssēt**, *Would that he had not come.*

III. Conditional or Potential, a statement of something regarded by the speaker as *possible under certain circumstances* (Negative **nōn**): —

- (a) In the principal Clause of a Conditional Sentence, accompanied by an *if* clause.
- (b) With the condition suppressed and only vaguely hinted at.

This is sometimes called the Subjunctive of Ideal Certainty.

1. The **Optative Subjunctive** is often introduced by **Utīnam**, *Would that*; regularly so in the Imperfect or Pluperfect. There are three forms and values : —

- (a) **Utīnam veniat**, Present, *Would that he may (yet) come*: Future Possibility.



- (b) **Utīnam veniret**, Imperfect, *Would that he were (now) coming*. Contrary to Fact in the Present.
- (c) **Utīnam vēnisset**, Pluperfect, *Would that he had come*: Contrary to Fact in the Past.

NOTE. — The Imperfect is used also to denote a continuous past: **Utīnam adesset**, *Would that he had been present (during a certain time)*.

2. The **Hortative Subjunctive** in Direct Discourse is used only in the Present Tense, first person plural: *Let us*, etc.

3. The **Jussive Subjunctive** in Direct Discourse is used only in the Present Tense; most commonly in the third person; rarely in the second person: —

**Dicat**, *Let him tell*. **Modestē vivās**, *Live temperately*.

The **Prohibitive Subjunctive**, or **Negative Jussive**, is used occasionally in the second person, Present or Perfect, when the prohibition is accompanied by *excitement* or *emotion*, as: —

**Nē repugnētis**, *Do not resist (I earnestly entreat or warn you)!*

**Nē id āixeris**, *Don't you say that!*

**Nē** with the Imperative is restricted to poetry and older Latin.

The common form of a prohibition in the second person is **nōll** or **nōllite** with the Infinitive (see page 131), or **cavē nē** with the Present Subjunctive.

In the third person, **nē** with the Present Subjunctive is used.

4. For the **Conditional Subjunctive** in a principal clause, see page 355.

The **Potential Subjunctive** is really a conditional statement or an inquiry as to something conditional, the condition being only hinted at, as: —

**Hōc paene dicam**, *This I should almost say (if I were to say anything)*.

Here belong: —

**Velim (ut) scribās**, *I should like you to write*; **nōllim**, *I should be unwilling*; **māllim**, *I should prefer*; **crēdās**, *you (any one) would*

*believe; crēderēs, you would have believed (in the past); aliquis dicat (dixerit), some one may say; quis crēdat, who would believe?*

5. The **Deliberative Subjunctive** is a variety of the **Hortative**, or possibly of the **Potential**:—

*Quid faciam, What am I to do?*

*Quid facerem, What was I to do?*

#### EXERCISE

1. Let us go hence.
2. Would that he were present!
3. Would that they had not set out!
4. O, that he may return!
5. Let us not persuade him.
6. Whither am I to turn (myself)?
7. Am I to speak or (an) keep silence?
8. Granted that this is an important (*māgnus*) matter (*let it be*).
9. No one would believe such things.
10. Let no one (*quis*) believe.
11. Who would have believed?
12. This I should affirm and that deny (perf.).
13. I should like you to go (*that you go*).
14. I should have preferred to go with you.

#### 14

#### THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

The subordinate uses of the Subjunctive may be stated as follows:—

##### 1. Oblique:—

The Subjunctive of Indirect Discourse (*a*) in clauses originally subordinate; (*b*) in Indirect Questions; (*c*) in Indirect Commands.

2. Final (Purpose).
3. Consecutive (Result).
4. Causal:—  
*Cum, since; quod, oblique.*

##### 5. Temporal:—

*Cum, when; dum, until; priusquam, before.*

##### 6. Conditional:—

*Si, if; nisi, unless.*

##### 7. Concessive:—

*Quamvis, licet, cum, although.*

ŌRĀTIŌ OBLĪQUA

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Examine the following:—

DIRECT DISCOURSE

1. Cōnsuētūdō nostra est  
lis qui bellum nōbis inferunt  
resistere.

*It is our custom to resist  
those who wage war upon us.*

2. Sī grātiām nostram vul-  
tis, cūr nōs ūtilēs esse amicōs  
nōn patimini?

*If you wish our good will,  
why do you not allow us to be  
useful friends?*

3. Agrōs nōbis attribuite.  
*Grant us lauds.*

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

1. (Dixērunt) oōnsuētūdi-  
nem suam esse lis qui bellum  
sibi inferrent resistere.

*(They said) that it was their  
custom to resist those who  
waged war upon them.*

2. Sī grātiām suam vellent,  
cūr sē ūtilēs esse amicōs nōn  
paterentur?

*If they wished their good  
will, why did they not allow  
them to be useful friends?*

3. Agrōs sibi attribuerent.  
*Let them grant them lauds.*

(a) In the foregoing examples note the following changes of Mood:—

1. The main statement oōnsuētūdō est becomes, in Indirect Discourse, the Accusative with the Infinitive, oōnsuētūdinem esse.
2. The subordinate verbs in qui inferunt, si vultis, become Subjunctive, qui inferrent, si vellent.
3. The question cūr nōn patimini changes its verb to the Subjunctive: cūr nōn paterentur.
4. The Imperative attribuite changes to the Subjunctive of an Indirect Command, attribuerent.

(b) Notice the changes of Person: nostra to suam; nōbis to sibi; vultis to vellent; patimini to paterentur. Note that sibi and sē (reflexive) represent the speaker or speakers.

(c) Notice the **Sequence of Tenses**: *inferunt* changed to *inferrent*; *vultis* to *vellent*; *attribuite* to *attribuerent*.

#### SUMMARY OF RULES FOR INDIRECT DISCOURSE

1. **Mood**: (a) Principal Assertions (appearing as "that" clauses) take the Accusative with the Infinitive; (b) Questions take the Subjunctive; (c) Commands change the Imperative to the Subjunctive; (d) Subordinate Clauses take the Subjunctive.

2. **Tense**: Sequence is observed.

3. **Person**: The changes are the same as in English.

*Sui, tibi, se*, represent the speaker.

Rhetorical questions are treated as assertions (Acc. with inf.), as: *Quem hōc ferre posse? Who could bear this? = Nēmīnem . . . posse.*

#### EXERCISE

A. Rewrite the following in English Indirect Discourse (a) depending upon *He says*; (b) depending upon *He said*:—

"There can be no friendship between you and me (*to me with you*) if you wish to remain in Gaul. I will not allow those who have not been able to guard their own territories to seize other people's. Why did you leave home? Who can give lands to so great a multitude? If you wish homes, cross the Rhine and settle in the territories of your German friends. I w'll obtain this (favor) from them."

B. Translate into Latin, (a) Direct Discourse, (b) Indirect Discourse, in Primary and Historical Sequence.

### 15

#### FINAL AND CONSECUTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

##### RELATIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC

Ordinary clauses of Purpose and Result have been explained on pages 241 and 268.

1. In the following examples, a Relative Pronoun or Adverb is used with the Subjunctive in a clause denoting Characteristic, where a Final or Consecutive *ut* might be a fair substitute: —

FINAL RELATIVE

**Mittunt lēgātōs quī pācem** *They send envoys to seek peace.*  
*(who would (or are to) seek)*  
 petant,  
 (quī = ut il)

**Nōn habed quō fugiam,** *I have no place to flee to.*  
*(whither I may flee)*  
 (quō = ut eō)

**Nōn habēbant unde pecūniam** *They had no source from which*  
*to get money.*  
 parārent,  
 (unde = ut inde)

CONSECUTIVE RELATIVE

**Nōn ego is sum quī hōc faciam,** *I am not the man to do this.*  
 (is quī = tālis ut ego)

**Sunt quī crēdant,** *There are persons who believe.*  
*(such as to believe)*  
 This is found after indefinite antecedents.

**Dignus est quī laudētur,** *He is worthy of being praised.*  
*(so worthy as to be)*  
 Used also after idoneus and aptus.

2. A Purpose clause containing a comparative is generally introduced by *quō* (= *ut eō*), *by which* (*Abl. of Difference*); seldom by *ut*.

The old rule: —

Let *ut* translated be by *quō*  
 When with comparatives it does go.

**Hōc fēcit quō facilius vinceret,** *He did this that he might*  
*the more easily conquer.*

EXERCISE

1. They sent (men) to promise.
2. We shall send (persons) to say what we wish.
3. Ships were sent to defend the coast.
4. He left cohorts to act as a guard to the ships.
5. They had no place to betake themselves to.

6. We have no means of ascertaining these things (*we have not how, quōmodo*). 7. You are not the man to speak falsely (*mentior*). 8. They were not the men to be frightened. 9. Roman knights were found to promise to slay Cicero. 10. There are (those) who wish the commonwealth to be overthrown. 11. He came that way in order to see better. 12. He waited in order that he might raise larger forces. 13. I have no ships in which (*with which*) to carry you over. 14. He is a suitable (person) for me to send (*whom I may*). 15. Your achievements are worthy of being praised. 16. I have nothing to give you. 17. There are no lands that can be given you (*such that they can*). 18. There is no one who does not fear him (*of such a kind as not to*). 19. There is nothing that he does not think about (*cōgitō dē*).

## 16

## VERBS OF FEARING

Compare the Latin rendering of the "that" clauses in the following:—

(1) *I think that he will come, Arbitror eum ventūrum esse.*

(2) *I fear that he will come, Vereor nē veniat.*

In (1) the "that" clause is treated as a noun clause and rendered by the Accusative with the Infinitive, as after *say, know, etc.*

In (2) the "that" clause is treated in Latin as an adverbial clause of Purpose, denoting the Desire opposed to the Thing Feared: *I fear lest he may come, against his coming, my desire being "that he may not."*

(3) *I fear that he will not come, Vereor ut (= nē nōn) veniat.*

*I fear against his not coming, lest he may not, but wishing "that he may"; I am anxious about my desire that he may.*

Hence the rule:—

**Vereor nē**, *I fear he will* (wishing that he may not).

**Vereor ut**, *I fear he will not* (wishing that he may).

In Latin after verbs of Fearing, *that = lest = nē*; *that not = lest not = nē nōn = ut*. **Nē nōn** is sometimes used.

### EXERCISE

**vereor, timeō, metuō**, *I fear*

(Observe Sequence)

1. They feared the ships would not arrive.
2. We fear you will stay in Gaul.
3. He feared they would wage war upon him (*himself*).
4. He said he feared they would not send hostages.
5. There is danger that he will not hear them.
6. It is to be feared that these things will injure some one.
7. The soldiers were afraid they would not be able to land.
8. The Britons were greatly alarmed lest he might dislodge (**submoveō**) them from the heights.

## 17

### QUŌMINUS AND QUĪN

#### *Quōminus*

1. **Quōminus** (*by which the less*) is used instead of **nē** or **ut nōn** after verbs of *hindering*, and takes the Subjunctive of Purpose or Result.

**quōminus = ut eō minus**

**Per tē stetit quōminus vincerem**, *It was owing to you that I did not conquer.*

**Multa obstābant quōminus venirem**, *Many things stood in the way of my coming, hindered me from coming.*

**Prohibeō**, *prevent*, usually takes the Accusative and the Infinitive, as: **Eōs trānsire prohibēbant**.

Other verbs of *hindering* are **obstō**, **impediō**, **dēterreō**, **recūsō** (*object*).

*Quin*

2. **Quin** (*but that*) in a subordinate clause<sup>1</sup> takes the Subjunctive. Its uses are as follows:—

- (1) As an alternative for **quōminus** after *negative* or *virtually negative* expressions of *hindering*;
- (2) After certain other *negative* or *virtually negative* expressions, chiefly those of *doubting* and *denying*;
- (3) Instead of the Consecutive Relative (= **quī nōn, quod nōn**, etc.) after negatives.

NOTE.—**Quōminus** is used only after verbs of *hindering*, positive or negative; **quin** is used after *negative* verbs of *hindering*, *doubting*, *denying*, etc.

Expressions that take *quin*.

**Nōn dubium est**, *It is not doubtful.*

**Nōn dubitō**, *I do not doubt.*

**Nēmō dubitat**, *No one doubts.*

**Quis dubitat**, *Who doubts?*

*(Surely no one doubts.)*

**Dubitāri nōn potest**, *It cannot be doubted.*

**Negāri nōn potest**, *It cannot be denied.*

**Facere nōn possum**, *I cannot help.*

**Fieri nōn potest**, *It cannot be but that (quin = ut nōn).*

**Nēmō est quin**, *There is no one but (quin = quī nōn).*

**Quis est quin**, *Who is there but (quin = quī nōn).*

**Nōn recūsō quōminus** (or *quin*).

**Nihil obstat quōminus** (or *quin*).

Sequence of Tenses must be observed with **quōminus** and *quin*.

<sup>1</sup> *Quin* in a principal clause with the Indicative or Imperative = *why not? nay rather; indeed.*



## EXERCISE

*In the following, note where quia and quominus may be interchanged; where only the one or the other may be used.*

1. Nothing stood in the way of your sending. 2. It cannot be denied that he is wise. 3. I deny that he is.
4. There will be many obstacles to our setting out. 5. I never saw him without crying out (*but that I, etc.*).
6. What hindered your informing me (1. *prohibeō*; 2. *obstō*)? 7. There was nothing to hinder you from informing me. 8. We cannot but praise you. 9. You cannot help envying him. 10. It cannot be that he has not seen them. 11. There is no one but thinks him happy.
12. There was no one but laughed. 13. There is no doubt that he has conquered. 14. No one doubted that he had conquered. 15. Who can doubt that he will conquer (*is about to*)? 16. Who could doubt that he would conquer (*was about to*)? 17. We do not object to contending in arms. 18. There is no one but fears him.

## 18

## THE CAUSAL SUBJUNCTIVE

1. *Cum* causal (*since*) takes the Subjunctive (see page 231).
2. *Quod*, *quia*, *quoniam* (*because*), have the following constructions:—

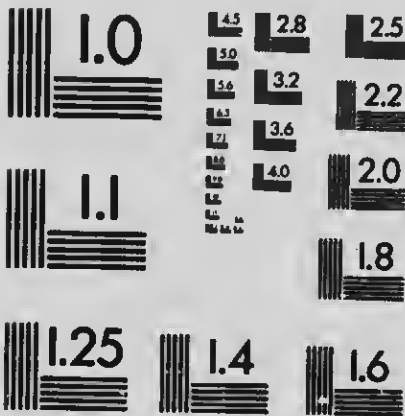
- (1) Expressing a reason as a *fact* on the authority of the speaker, they take the Indicative.
- (2) Reporting or quoting a reason as the *thought* or *statement of another*, they take the Subjunctive. This is virtually Indirect Discourse.

- (1) *In Gallā remanēre volēbat quod novis rēbus studēbat*, *He wished to remain in Gaul because he was bent upon revolution.*



# MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



**APPLIED IMAGE Inc**

1653 East Main Street  
Rochester, New York 14609 USA  
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone  
(716) 288 - 5969 - Fax

- (2) **Ut relinqueretur petit quod mare timēret, He**  
*asked to be left behind, on the ground that he*  
*feared the sea (his alleged reason).*

A rejected reason is expressed by **nōn quōd, nōn quod** with the Subjunctive.

3. The Causal Relative **quī** (= **cum ego, cum tū, cum is,** etc.) takes the Subjunctive.

**Stultus es quī haec faciās, You are foolish for doing this**  
**(quī = cum tu, since you, etc.).**

This is especially common in exclamations.

#### EXERCISE

1. He did not wish to leave Dumnorix because he feared an uprising (**mōtus**) of the Gauls. 2. Since these things (introductory rel.) are so, what is to be feared? 3. Socrates was put to death because (as it was alleged) he was corrupting the youth. 4. They put him to death because they feared him. 5. He complained on the ground that they were not bringing (**comportō**) corn. 6. He was angry (**irāscor**) because they were not bringing corn. 7. O the power of truth, in that it can defend itself (*which can*)! 8. O fortunate youth, inasmuch as you found Homer as a herald of your valor! 9. We are foolish to do such things. 10. I am foolish to believe him a friend. 11. They allow merchants to come to them, not because they wish anything to be imported, but because they wish to sell what they have captured in war.

19

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

1. Conditional Sentences are complex, containing a principal clause stating the *consequence* of the fulfilment of a condition and a subordinate adverbial clause expressing the *condition*.

The "if" clause (conditional clause) is called the **Protasis**.  
The principal clause is called the **Apodosis**.

2. Conditional Sentences are of the following types:—

I. **Si habeo, do,**

*If I have, I give.*

**Si habebam (habui), dabam (dedi),**

*If I had, I gave.*

SIMPLE PRESENT OF  
PAST SUPPOSITIONS.  
Pres. or Past indicative.

Nothing is implied as to reality; something is merely *supposed* or *assumed to be a fact for argument's sake*.

II. **Si habebō, dabō,**

*If I have (= shall have), I shall give.*

**Si eum viderō, tibi dicam,**

*If I see (= shall have seen), I shall tell you.*

VIVID FUTURE.  
Fut. or Fut. Perf. Indicative.

III. **Si habeam, dem,**

*If I should (were to) have, I should give.*

VAGUE (OR IDEAL)  
FUTURE.  
Pres. Subjunctive.

IV. (a) **Si habērem, darem,**

*If I had (now), I should give.*

*(but I have not, therefore I cannot)*

(b) **Si habuissem, dedissem,**

*If I had had, I should have given.*

*(but I had not, therefore I could not)*

CONTRARY TO FACT.  
(a) In the Present.  
Imperf. Subjunctive.  
(b) In the Past.  
Pluperf. Subjunctive.

The Potential Present Subjunctive is a Vague (or Ideal) Future with the Protasis suppressed.

## EXERCISE

## A

*Translate and classify the following: —*

1. Si Rōmae nātus est, Rōmānus est.
2. Hōc sī fēcit, poenās dabit.
3. Si hōc faciās, poenās dēs.
4. Illud sī scripsissem, mentītus essem.
5. Si ille vīveret, nōs dēfenderet.
6. Rōmān sī vēneris, fac apud mē commorēris.
7. Si hōc est vērū, falsum est illud.
8. Si mātūrius vēnisset, hostēs nōn vīcissent.
9. Si servī mei mē ita metuerent ut civēs tuī tē, ego domum meam relinquendam putārem.

## B

1. If you wish, you may.
2. If they wished, they were always permitted.
3. If you are in Rome, you must (*oportet*) do as (*what*) the Romans do.
4. If he were to come, he would see.
5. Had he not come (*unless, etc.*), he would not have seen, nor would he have conquered.
6. I shall go if I can (*shall be able*).
7. I should go, if I were to receive the money.
8. I should be happy, could I help you.
9. I should have helped you, had I been able.
10. I should like to go (*volō*).
11. I should say so.
12. If you were wise, you would not say such things.
13. If your country were to plead (*loquor*) with you thus, ought she not to obtain her request (*impetrō*)?

## 20

## TEMPORAL CLAUSES

*Postquam, ubi, ut, simul ac*

1. *Postquam*, after; *ubi, ut*, when; *cum primum, simul ac (atque)*, as soon as, take the Perfect Indicative to denote a single occurrence in the past; *ubi, ut, simul ac*, take a Pluperfect Indicative to denote a repeated occurrence in the past, as: —

**Eum vidī ubi vēnit**, *I saw him when he came.*

**Eum vidēbam ubi vēnerat**, *I used to see him whenever he came.*

Notice that for *repetition* the principal clause takes the Imperfect.

### Cum

2. **Cum**, *when*, denoting *pure time*, takes the Indicative in any tense. In actual practice, however, **cum**, *when*, with the Imperfect or Pluperfect Indicative, is rare. In these tenses some accessory notion of *cause* or *concession*, requiring the Subjunctive, seems to have been present in most cases.

Note the following equivalents denoting *one occurrence*: **ubi vēnit**; **postquam vēnit**; **cum vēnisset**, *when he came.*

3. **Cum**, *whenever*, denoting *repetition*, takes the Perfect Indicative when the reference is to the *present*, and the Pluperfect Indicative when the reference is to the *past*.

**Eum vidēo cum vēnit**, *I see him whenever (as often as) he comes.*

**Eum vidēbam cum vēnerat**, *I used to (would always) see him whenever he came.*

4. **Cum**, *when* (= **et tum**), used in a *coördinating* or *independent* sense, takes the Perfect Indicative. In such cases the principal clause and the *when* clause can always be interchanged, as:—

**Ad summum collem pervēnit, cum (= et tum) subitō hostēe vidit**, *He arrived at the top of the hill, when (= and then) suddenly he saw the enemy*; = **Cum ad summum collem pervēnisset subitō hostēe vidit**, *When he arrived, etc., he suddenly saw.*

### Prīusquam, Antequam

5. **Prīusquam** and **antequam**, *before* (after a negative, *until*), have two constructions:—

(1) To denote *Fact* and mere priority of time, they take the Indicative.

(2) To denote Anticipated Possibility, they take the Subjunctive, as. —

(1) **Nōn eum vidī priusquam** (or **Nōn eum prius vidī quam**) **mortuus est**, *I did not see him before he died.*

(2) **Proficisci nōlēbant antequam adveniret**, *They refused to set out until he arrived (should arrive).*

His arrival was an *expected possibility* reported as their thought, — practically Indirect Discourse.

### *Dum, Dōnec, Quoad*

6. **Dum**, *provided that* (Negative **nē**), takes the Present Subjunctive, as: —

**Ego ibō dum nē ille eat**, *I shall go provided he does not go.*

The Subjunctive here is really Jussive.

7. **Dum**, *while*, takes the Indicative, regularly the Vivid or Historical Present instead of the Imperfect, as: —

**Dum morātur (= morābātur)**, **hostēs effūgerunt**, *While he was delaying, the enemy escaped.*

8. **Dum**, **dōnec**, **quoad**, *as long as*, take the Indicative in whatever tense the exact meaning requires, as: —

**Dum anima erit, spēs erit**, *While there is life, there will be hope.*

9. **Dum**, **dōnec**, **quoad**, *until*, take: —

(1) the Indicative for Fact.

(2) the Subjunctive for Anticipated Possibility.

(1) **Dum nāvēs convēnerunt expectāvit**, *He waited until the ships (actually) assembled;*

(2) **Dum nāvēs convenirent expectāvit**, *He waited for them to assemble (a possibility he expected).*



EXERCISE

1. Whenever I saw him, I cried out. 2. On arriving there, he learnt all these things. 3. After learning these things, he decided to attack the enemy. 4. He wrote to me as soon as he reached home. 5. As often as the cavalry made an attack, the enemy would flee. 6. He attacked the camp before they could realize (*intelligō*) what was happening. 7. I shall not go until I see him. 8. I shall wait until he comes ((1) *shall come*, (2) *shall have come*, (3) *may come*). 9. He waited until they set out; for them to set out; he will wait for them to set out. 10. While these things were going on (*gerō*), he arrived in their territories. 11. He never waged war upon them as long as they remained at home. 12. He will not attack them, provided they do not leave home (*discēdō*). 13. He will not attack them as long as they remain at home.

21

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES

(Although, etc.)

1. The term Concessive may be used to include all clauses introduced by *etsi*, *etiāmsi*, *even if*, *although*; *licet*, *granted that*, *although*; *quamvis*, *quamquam*, *cum*, *although*.

They either *concede* something as *possible*; or *admit* something as *true*, in opposition to something else.

2. *Etsi*, *etiāmsi*, *even if*, are strictly Conditional and follow the rules for Conditional Clauses of the Vivid Future, Vague Future, and Contrary to Fact types, as:—

- (1) *Nōn dabō, etiā si habēbō*, *I shall not give, even if (though) I have.* Vivid Future.
- (2) *Nōn dem, etsi habeam*, *I should not give, though I should (were to) have.* Vague Future.

(3) **Nōn dedissem, etsi habuissem**, *I should not have given, even though I had had.* Contrary to Fact in the Past.

3. **Etsi, tametsi, quamquam**, *although*, admit something as a fact, and therefore take the Indicative, as: **Nōn dedit, etsi (quamquam) habēbst**, *He did not give, though he had.* In this sense, **etsi** is really the same as in a Simple Present or Past Condition.

4. **Quamvis**, *although, as much as you like*, and **licet**, *granted that* (really the impersonal verb, *it is allowed*), concede the possibility of something. They take the Subjunctive, which is strictly Jussive:—

**Quamvis sit fortis**, *Brave as he may be = Let him be as brave as you like.*

**Licet sit fortis = Licet, sit fortis**, *It is granted, let him be brave.*

In poetry, **quamvis** occasionally takes the Indicative.

5. **Cum**, *although*, regularly takes the Subjunctive.

#### CONDITIONAL CLAUSES OF COMPARISON

Clauses of Comparison, introduced by **quasi, quam si, tanquam si, velut si**, *as if, as though*, are really Conditional. They commonly take the Present Subjunctive in Primary Sequence, and the Imperfect Subjunctive in Historical Sequence.

**Loquitur quasi sapiēns sit**, *He talks as (he would talk) if he were wise.*

**Loquēbātur quasi sapiēns esset**, *He talked as if he were wise.*

## EXERCISE

1. He would not have conquered, even if he had had larger forces.
2. I should not go, though it might be permitted.
3. I shall not go, though it shall be permitted.
4. Granted that this be true, he cannot conquer.
5. Talk as long as you like, you cannot convince me.
6. I did not see him, although he was present.
7. I should not be willing to give, though I had the money.
8. He would not persuade you, even if he were present.
9. They attack as quickly as if Caesar were leading them.
10. They shouted as if they were glad (*gaudeō*).

## 22

## USES OF THE INFINITIVE

The Latin Infinitive has the following uses : —

1. As a Noun, Subject, Object, Predicate Nominative or Appositive.
2. As the Complement of a Modal Verb, such as *wish, begin, seem, am able*, or of a passive verb of *thinking, saying* (see page 314).
3. As a Predicate with Subject in the Accusative Case, forming a Noun Phrase equivalent to a "that" clause (Acc. with Inf.).
4. The Historical Infinitive is used in lively narrative in place of an Indicative, usually the Imperfect.

The subject of the Historical Infinitive is in the Nominative : *Caesar frumentum flāgitāre* (= *flāgitābat*), *Caesar kept demanding corn.*

5. The Infinitive is used in Exclamations to indicate *surprise or indignation* : *hōc nōn vidēre!* *the idea of not seeing this!*

## EXERCISE

1. Dulce et decōrum est prō patriā mori.
2. Vidēre est crēdere.
3. Habeō dicere.
4. Beātē vivere vōs in voluptāte pōnitis.
5. Vivere est cōgitāre.
6. Māgni interest cōpiās hostium distīnēri.
7. Hostēs dēcurrere (= *dēcurrēbant*).
8. Nōn aequum est Rōmānōs Rhēnum trānsire.
9. Gaudeō tē vēnisse.
10. Certiōrem quam celeriōrem esse melius est.



ALEXANDER THE GREAT

SUMMARY OF TYPICAL FORMS  
FOR RAPID REVIEW OR A SHORT PREPARATORY  
COURSE

NOUNS

FIRST DECLENSION

FEMININE

<i>Nom.</i>	terr a	terr ae
<i>Gen.</i>	terr ae	terr ārum
<i>Dat.</i>	terr ae	terr īs
<i>Acc.</i>	terr am	terr ās
<i>Voc.</i>	terr a	terr ae
<i>Abl.</i>	terr ā	terr īs

SECOND DECLENSION

MASCULINE

serv us	serv ī
serv ī	serv ōrum
serv ō	serv īs
serv um	serv ōs
serv ō	serv ī
serv ō	serv īs

SECOND DECLENSION

MASCULINE

<i>Nom.</i>	puer	puer ī	ager	agr ī
<i>Gen.</i>	puer ī	puer ōrum	agr ī	agr ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	puer ō	puer īs	agr ō	agr īs
<i>Acc.</i>	puer um	puer ōs	agr um	agr ōs
<i>Voc.</i>	puer	puer ī	ager	agr ī
<i>Abl.</i>	puer ō	puer īs	agr ō	agr īs

SECOND DECLENSION

NEUTER

<i>Nom.</i>	bell um	bell a
<i>Gen.</i>	bell ī	bell ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bell ō	bell īs
<i>Acc.</i>	bell um	bell a
<i>Voc.</i>	bell um	bell a
<i>Abl.</i>	bell ō	bell īs

*For principal uses of the cases, see page 8.*

## THIRD DECLENSION

	Mas. or Fem. CONSONANT STEM		Mas. or Fem. I-STEM	
<i>Nom.</i>	princep s	prīncip ēs	aed ēs	aed ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	prīncip is	prīncip um	aed is	aed ium
<i>Dat.</i>	prīncip i	prīncip ibus	aed i	aed ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	prīncip em	prīncip ēs	aed em	aed ēs or -is
<i>Voc.</i>	princep s	prīncip ēs	aed ēs	aed ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	prīncip e	prīncip ibus	aed e	aed ibus

	NEUTER CONSONANT STEM		NEUTER I-STEM	
<i>Nom.</i>	caput	capit a	mar e	mar ia
<i>Gen.</i>	capit is	capit um	mar is	mar ium
<i>Dat.</i>	capit i	capit ibus	mar i	mar ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	caput	capit a	mar e	mar ia
<i>Voc.</i>	caput	capit a	mar e	mar ia
<i>Abl.</i>	capit e	capit ibus	mar i	mar ibus

Learn stems of such typical nouns as *pēs*, *pāx*, *lēs*, *flōs*, *cōsul*, *pater*, *agger*, *victor*, *leō*, *virgō*, *corpus*, *opus*, *nōmen*, *nox*, *urbs*, *animal*, pages 54, 56, 57, 60, 61, 64, 66. Learn also *vis*, page 68.

## FOURTH DECLENSION

	MASCULINE		NEUTER	
<i>Nom.</i>	frūct us	frūct ūs	corn ū	corn ua
<i>Gen.</i>	frūct ūs	frūctu um	corn ūs	corn uum
<i>Dat.</i>	frūct uī	frūct ibus	corn ū	corn ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	frūct um	frūct ūs	corn ū	corn ua
<i>Voc.</i>	frūct us	frūct ūs	corn ū	corn ua
<i>Abl.</i>	frūct ū	frūct ibus	corn ū	corn ibus

## FIFTH DECLENSION

	MASCULINE <sup>1</sup>		FEMININE	
<i>Nom.</i>	diē s	diē s	rē s	rē s
<i>Gen.</i>	diē i	diē rum	rē i	rē rum
<i>Dat.</i>	diē i	diē bus	rē i	rē bus
<i>Acc.</i>	diē m	diē s	rē m	rē s
<i>Voc.</i>	diē s	diē s	rē s	rē s
<i>Abl.</i>	diē	diē bus	rē	rē bus

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes Feminine in the Singular.

## ADJECTIVES

## ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

		SINGULAR		
		MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i>	bon us		bon a	bon um
<i>Gen.</i>	bon i		bon ae	bon i
<i>Dat.</i>	bon o		bon ae	bon o
<i>Acc.</i>	bon um		bon am	bon um
<i>Voc.</i>	bon e		bon a	bon um
<i>Abl.</i>	bon o		bon a	bon um
			bon a	bon o

		PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	bon i	bon ae		bon a
<i>Gen.</i>	bon orum	bon arum		bon orum
<i>Dat.</i>	bon is	bon is		bon is
<i>Acc.</i>	bon os	bon as		bon a
<i>Voc.</i>	bon i	bon ae		bon a
<i>Abl.</i>	bon is	bon is		bon is

See also *liber*, page 37; *nostrer*, page 38; *unus*, *alius*, *alter*, etc., page 108.

## ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

		SINGULAR		PLURAL	
		M. OR F.	N.	M. OR F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	fort is	fort e		fort es	fort ia
<i>Gen.</i>	fort is	fort is		fort ium	fort ium
<i>Dat.</i>	fort i	fert i		fort ibus	fort ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	fort em	fort e		fort es or -ia	fort ia
<i>Voc.</i>	fort is	fort e		fort es	fort ia
<i>Abl.</i>	fort i	fort i		fort ibus	fort ibus

See also *acer*, page 74; *felix*, *prudens*, page 76.

## COMPARATIVES

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. OR F.	N.	M. OR F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	fort ior	fort ius	fort iōrēs	fort iōra
<i>Gen.</i>	fort iōris	fort iōris	fort iōrum	fort iōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	fort iōri	fort iōri	fort iōribus	fort iōribus
<i>Acc.</i>	fort iōrem	fort ius	fort iōrēs or -is	fort iōra
<i>Voc.</i>	fort ior	fort ius	fort iōrēs	fort iōra
<i>Abl.</i>	fort iōre	fort iōre	fort iōribus	fort iōribus

## RULES OF GENDER

## FIRST DECLENSION

-a, Fem.

Except *nauta, agricola, Hadria*, Mas.

## SECOND DECLENSION

(1) -us, -er, -ir, Mas.

Except *virus, vulgus, pelagus*, Neut.; *humus*, and names of trees, Fem.

(2) -um, Neut.

No exceptions.

## THIRD DECLENSION

(1) -er, -or, -os or -ōs; -es or -ēs increasing; -ō (not -dō, -gō, -iō), Mas.

Except *vēr, iter*, Neut.; *arbor, uxor, soror; quēs, carō*, Fem.

(2) -dō, -gō, -iō, -ās, -is, -aus, -x, -ēs not increasing, -s after a consonant, -ūs except in monosyllables, Fem.

Except *ōrdō, cardō, ignis, lapis, pulvis, fūnis, finis, collis, sanguis; mōns, pōns, fōns, dēns; grex, iūdex, rēx*, Mas.(3) Monosyllables in -ūs (*rūs, jūs*); nouns of the *opus* and *corpus* type; *lac, caput*; nouns in -e, -al, -ar, -ur, -men, Neut.Except *lepus, mūs*, Mas.



## FOURTH DECLENSION

-us, Mas. ; -ū, Neut.

Except *domus, manue, īdiē, Fem.*

## FIFTH DECLENSION

All Fem.

Except *diē* (usually Mas.; sometimes Fem. in the Singular),  
and *meridiē, Mas.*

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

See pages 96, 100, 101, 102, 103, 104.

Compare *altus, brevis, prūdēns, ācer, celer, aeger, miser, pulcher, facilis, similis, ūtilis, bonus, malus, māgnus, parvus, multus, superus, prior, idōneus, antiquus.*

## FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

See pages 111, 112, 113.

Adverbs in -ē from *longus, altus, aeger, miser, etc.*Adverbs in -ter from *ācer, celer, fortis, prūdēns, audāx, etc.*Adverbs in -ē or -ter from *dūrus, firmus.*Adverbs from Acc. Sing. Neut. : *multum, facile, and comparatives, facilius, etc.*Superlative adverbs in -ē, as *fortissimē.*

## PRONOUNS

Personal, *ego, tū, is*, page 134.Reflexive, *mei, tui, sui*, page 135.Possessive, *meus, tuus, eius* (ēius, eōrum), page 135.Demonstrative, *hic, ille*, pages 138, 139.Intensive, *ipse, Idem*, page 140.Relative, *qui, quae, quod*, page 142.Interrogative, *quis (qui), quae, quid (quod)*, page 144.Indefinite, *aliquis, quīe, quīequam, quīdam, quisque, uterque, quīvis*, page 146.

## SUMMARY OF FORMS

## INDICATIVE ACTIVE

## REGULAR VERBS

	I CONJ.	II CONJ.	III CONJ.	IV CONJ.
<b>PRESENT</b>	vocō vocās vocat vocāmus vocātis vocant	moneō monēs monet monēmus monētis monent	regō regis regit regimus regitis regunt	audiō. audis audit audimus auditis audiunt
<b>IMPERFECT</b>	vocābam vocābās vocābat vocābāmus vocābātis vocābant	monēbam monēbās monēbat monēbāmus monēbātis monēbant	regēbam regēbās regēbat regēbāmus regēbātis regēbant	audiēbam audiēbāmus audiēbat audiēbāmus audiēbātis audiēbant
<b>FUTURE</b>	vocābō vocābis vocābit vocābimus vocābitis vocābunt	monēbō monēbis monēbit monēbimus monēbitis monēbunt	regam regēs reget regēmus regētis regent	audiam audiēs audiet audiēmus audiētis audient
<b>PERFECT</b>	vocāvī vocāvistī vocāvīt vocāvimus vocāvistis vocāvērunt (re)	monuī, etc. — vidī jussī dēlēvī respondī	rēxī, etc. — misi vici cognōvī pepuli	audivī, etc. — dēsilui vēnī sēnī repperī
<b>PLUPERFECT</b>	vocāveram vocāverās vocāverat vocāverāmus vocāverātis vocāverant	monueram, etc. — videram jusseram dēlēveram responderam	rēxeram, etc. — miseram viceram cognōveram pepuleram	audiveram, etc. — dēsilueram vēneram sēnseram reppereram
<b>FUTURE PERFECT</b>	vocāverō vocāveris vocāverit vocāverimus vocāveritis vocāverint	monuerō, etc. — viderō jusserō dēlēverō responderō	rēxerō, etc. — miserō vicerō cognōverō pepulerō	audiverō, etc. — dēsiluerō vēnerō sēnserō reppererō

For capiō, see page 48; for sum, page 123.

## INDICATIVE PASSIVE

## REGULAR VERBS

	I CONJ.	II CONJ.	III CONJ.	IV CONJ.
PRESENT	vocor vocāris (re) vocātur vocāmur vocāminī vocantur	moneor monēris (re) monētur monēmur monēminī monentur	regor regeris (re) regitur regimur regiminī reguntur	audiō audīris (re) audītur audīmur audīminī audiuntur
IMPER- FECT	vocābar vocābāris (re) vocābātur vocābāmur vocābāminī vocābantur	monēbar monēbāris (re) monēbātur monēbāmur monēbāminī monēbantur	regēbar regēbāris (re) regēbātur regēbāmur regēbāminī regēbantur	audiēbar audiēbāris (re) audiēbātur audiēbāmur audiēbāminī audiēbantur
FUTURE	vocābor vocāberis (re) vocābitur vocābimur vocābiminī vocābuntur	monēbor monēberis (re) monēbitur monēbimur monēbiminī monēbuntur	regar regēris (re) regētur regēmur regēminī regentur	audiar audiēris (re) audiētur audiēmur audiēminī audientur
PERFECT	vocātus sum es est vocātī sumus estis sunt	monitus sum, <i>etc.</i> visus sum jussus sum dēlētus sum respōnsū est	rēctus sum, <i>etc.</i> missus sum victus sum cognitus sum pulsus sum	auditus sum, <i>etc.</i> sepultus sum sēnsus sum vinctus sum reperitus sum
PLUPER- FECT	vocātus eram erās erat vocātī erāmus erātis erant	monitus eram, <i>etc.</i> visus eram jussus eram dēlētus eram respōnsū erat	rēctus eram, <i>etc.</i> missus eram victus eram cognitus eram pulsus eram	auditus eram, <i>etc.</i> sepultus eram sēnsus eram vinctus eram reperitus eram
FUTURE PERFECT	vocātus erō eris erit vocātī erimus eritis erunt	monitus erō, <i>etc.</i> visus erō jussus erō dēlētus erō respōnsū erit	rēctus erō, <i>etc.</i> missus erō victus erō cognitus erō pulsus erō	auditus erō, <i>etc.</i> sepultus erō sēnsus erō vinctus erō reperitus erō

*For Passive of capiō, see page 171.*

## SUMMARY OF FORMS

## IMPERATIVE ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

*See page 169.*

## PARTICIPLES

*See pages 180, 184, 185.*

## INFINITIVES

*See pages 198, 199.*

## GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES

*See pages 216 and 220.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

*See page 233.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

*See page 238.*

## IRREGULAR VERBS

**Possum, Volð, Ferð, Eð, Fíð.**

*See pages 247-250.*

VOCABULARY

LATIN-ENGLISH

## ABBREVIATIONS

abl., *ablative*.  
acc., *accusative*.  
act., *active*.  
adj., *adjective*.  
adv., *adverb*.  
comp., *comparative*.  
dat., *dative*.  
demonst., *demonstrative*.  
depon., *deponent*.  
f., *feminine*.  
gen., *genitive*.  
indecl., *indeclinable*.  
indef., *indefinite*.  
inf., *infinitive*.

intens., *intensive*.  
interrog., *interrogative*.  
intrans., *intransitive*.  
m., *masculine*.  
n., *neuter*.  
part., *participle*.  
pass., *passive*.  
perf., *perfect*.  
plur., *plural*.  
pron., *pronoun*.  
sing., *singular*.  
subst., *substantive*.  
superl., *superlative*.  
trans., *transitive*.

# VOCABULARY

## LATIN-ENGLISH

### A

- A** = *Aulus*, a praenomen.
- à, ab, abs**, prep. (abl.), (1) *from*; (2) *by*; (3) *on the side of*.
- abdō**, -ere, -didi, -ditum (dō), *hide, put away*.
- addūcō**, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum, *lead away, carry off*.
- abhinc**, adv., *ago*, see p. 343.
- abiciō**, -ere, -jēcī, -jectum (jaciō), *throw away*.
- ablātus**, perf. part. of **auferō**.
- abripīō**, -ere, -ripui, -reptum (rapiō), *snatch away*.
- abscidō**, -ere, -cidi, -cisum (caedō), *cut off, cut away*.
- absēns**, -entis, part. used as adj. (absum), *absent*.
- absolvō**, -ere, -solvi, -solutum, *acquit*.
- abstergeō**, -ēre, -tersi, -tersum, *wipe away*.
- abstuli**, perf. of **auferō**.
- ac** = **atque**, *and, and also*.
- accēdō**, -ere, -cessi, -cessum (cēdō), *go to; accēdit, it is added*.
- acceptus**, perf. part. of **accipiō**.
- accidō**, -ere, -cidi (cadō), *happen*.
- accingō**, -ere, -cinxī, -cinctum, *gird on*.
- accipiō**, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum (capiō), *receive*.
- accūrātus**, -a, -um, *careful*; adv., -ē, *carefully*.
- acer**, -cris, -cre, *sharp, keen, severe, fierce*; adv., **acriter**.
- acerbus**, -a, -um, *bitter, sour, harsh*.
- Achillēs**, -is, m., *Achilles*, the most valiant of the Greeks at Troy.
- aciōs**, -ēi, f., (1) *line of battle*; (2) *edge of the sword*; (3) *keen gaze (ac-, sharp)*.
- Acrisius**, -i, m., *Acrisius*, king of Argos, father of Ianae.
- acuō**, -ere, -ui, -ūtum, *sharpen*.
- acus**, -ūs, f., *needle*.
- acūtus**, -a, -um, *sharp*.
- ad**, prep. (acc.), (1) *to, towards*; (2) *by (of time)*; (3) *at, near*.
- addūcō**, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum, *lead to, bring*.
- adferō** (afferō), -ferre, adtuli (attuli), adlātum (allātum), *carry to, bring*.
- adficiō** (afficiō), -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *affect, visit with*.
- adflictō** (afflictō), -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *toss, shutter, damage*.
- adfigō** (affligō), -ere, -fixī, -flictum, *dash, shatter, wreck*.
- adhaerēō**, -ēre, -haesi, -haesum, *adhere, stick, cling*.
- adhibeō**, -ēre, -ui, -itum, *bring, call in*.
- adhūc**, adv., *hitherto, still*.
- adigō**, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum (agō), *drive to*.
- adjuvō**, -āre, -jūvī, -jūtum, *aid, help* (governs acc.).
- adligō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *bind to*.
- adloquor**, -loqui, -locūtus, *speak to, address*.
- admoneō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *remind, admonish*.
- adolēscō**, -ere, -olēvī, -ultum, *grow up; grow to maturity*.

- adorior**, -īri, -ortus, *attack*.  
**adripiō** (urripiō), -ere, -ripiū, -reptum, *seize*.  
**adstō**, -āre, -stiti, *stand by, stand near*.  
**adsum**, -esse, -fui, *am present*.  
**adulōscōns**, -entis, m., *a youth, young man*.  
**adulōscentia**, -ae, f., *youth, the period of youth*.  
**adveniō**, -ire, -vēni, -ventum, *arrive*.  
**adventus**, -ūs, m., *arrival, approach*.  
**Aeaea**, -ae, f., *Aeaea, an island of the Mediterranean, southwest of Italy, the supposed abode of the sorceress Circe*.  
**aedēs**, -is, f., *slug, temple; plur., house*.  
**aedificium**, -i, n., *building*.  
**aedificō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *build*.  
**aeger**, -gra, -grum, *sick, ill, feeble; adv., aegrō, with difficulty*.  
**Aeneās**, -ae, m., *Aeneas, a Trojan prince, hero of Vergil's Aeneid*.  
**Aeolus**, -i, m., *Aeolus, god of the winds*.  
**aequō**, *adv., equally*.  
**Aequi**, -ōrum, m., *the Aequi, a nation of Italy near Rome*.  
**aequor**, -oris, n., *the sea*.  
**aequus**, -a, -um, *adj., equal, fair, just; aequus animus, an even mind, resignation*.  
**āēr**, -eris, m., *air; Grk. acc., ā-ēra = ā-ērem*.  
**ass**, aeris, n., *copper, bronze*.  
**asstās**, -ātis, f., *summer*.  
**asetus**, -ūs, m. (*waving, billowy motion*); (1) *heat*; (2) *tide*.  
**aetās**, -ātis, f., *age*.  
**Asthiopē**, -opis, *Ethiopian*.  
**affsrō = adfsrō**.  
**afficiō = adficiō**.  
**affictō = adffictō**.  
**affigō = ad'igō**.  
**Āfricānus**, -i, m. (*African*), *a surname of two of the Scipios, given on account of their victories over Carthage*.  
**Agamemnōn**, -onīs, m., *Agamemnon, king of Mycenae, and commander-in-chief of the Greeks at Troy; brother of Menelaus*.  
**ager**, -grī, m., *a field; land*.  
**agger**, -eris, m., *a heap, mound*.  
**agitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *drive, harass*.  
**agmen**, -minis, n., *column of soldiers; army on the march*.  
**agnōscō**, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum, *recognize*.  
**āgnue**, -ī, m., *lamb*.  
**agō**, -ere, ēgī, āctum, *drive, put in motion; do, perform; plead*.  
**agricola**, -ae, m., *farmer, husbandman*.  
**agricultūra**, -ae, f., *agriculture*.  
**āiō**, *defective verb, say*.  
**āla**, -ae, f., *wing*.  
**albicō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *grow white*.  
**albus**, -a, -um, *white*.  
**aliquando**, *adv., at some time, ever*.  
**aliquantus**, -a, -um, *somewhat, some*.  
**aliquis**, -qua, -quid, *indef. pron., some, someone, something*.  
**aliter**, *adv., otherwise*.  
**alius**, *alla, allud, gen. alius, dat. alii, other, another, different; alius . . . alius, one . . . another*.  
**alnus**, -a, -um, *kind, bountiful*.  
**alō**, -ere, aluī, altum or alitum, *no'ish, support, maintain*.  
**Alpēs**, -ium, f., *Alps*.  
**alter**, altera, alterum, *gen. alterius, dat. alteri, the other (of two), the second; alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other*.  
**altus**, -a, -um, *high deep*.  
**amātor**, -ōris, m., *lover, mate*.  
**ambulō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *walk*.  
**amicitia**, -ae, f., *friendship*.  
**amicus**, -i, m., *friend*.  
**āmittō**, -ere, -misi, -missum, *lose*.  
**amō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *love*.  
**amosnus**, -a, -um, *lovely, pleasant, beautiful*.  
**amor**, -ōris, m., *love*.  
**Amūlius**, -i, m., *Amulius, a king of Alba*.  
**ancilla**, -ae, f., *maid-servant, handmaid*.  
**ancora**, -ae, f., *anchor*.  
**angustus**, -a, -um, *narrow, close, tight*.



- anima**, -ae, f., *breath, soul, life, spirit.*
- animadvertō**, -ere, -verti, -versum, *notice, observe.*
- animal**, -ālis, n., *animal.*
- animus**, -ī, m., *mind, courage*
- annus**, -ī, m., *year.*
- anser**, -eris, m., *goose.*
- ante**, prep. (acc.) or adv., *before* (chiefly of time).
- autē**, adv., *before.*
- antecēdō**, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, *go before, precede.*
- antecurrō**, -ere, -curri, -cursum, *run on before.*
- antiquus**, -a, -um, *ancient.*
- antrum**, -ī, n., *cave.*
- anulus**, -ī, m., *ring.*
- anus**, -ūs, f., *old woman.*
- aperiō**, -ire, aperui, apertum, *open, uncover.*
- apertus**, -a, -um, adj. (perf. part. of aperiō), *open.*
- Aphroditō**, *Aphroditē*, Greek name for Venus.
- Apollō**, -inis, *Apollo.*
- appareō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *appear.*
- appellō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *cull, name.*
- appellō**, -ere, appuli, appulsum, *bring to shore.*
- appetō**, -ere, -ivī, -itum, *seek for, yearn for.*
- appropinquō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *approach* (governs dat.).
- apricus**, -a, -um, *sunny.*
- aptus**, -a, -um, *apt, suitable.*
- apud**, prep. (acc.), *among, near, in the house of.*
- aqua**, -ae, f., *water.*
- aquila**, -ae, f., *engle.*
- aquilifer**, -ferī, m., *standard-bearer.*
- āra**, -ae, f., *altar.*
- arātor**, -ōris, m., *ploughman.*
- arbitror**, -ārī, -ātus, *think, deem, regard.*
- arbor**, -oris, f., *tree.*
- arca**, -ae, f., *box, chest.*
- Arcadia**, -ae, f., *Arcadiu*, a division of lower Greece.
- arcessō**, -ere, -ivi, -itum, *send for, summon.*
- arcus**, -ūs, m., *bow.*
- ardeō**, -ēre, ārsi, ārsim, *burn, blaze.*
- arduus**, -i, -um, *steep.*
- arēna** (*harēna*), -ae, f., (1) *sand, sea-shore, beach*; (2) *arena.*
- argentum**, -i, n., *silver.*
- āridus**, -a, -um, *dry.*
- ariēs**, -etis, m., *ram, battering-ram.*
- arma**, -ōrum, n. plur., *arms, armor.*
- armamentum**, -i, n., *tackle* (of a ship).
- armātus**, -a, -um, perf. part. of armō, *arm, fit out.*
- armentum**, -i, n., *cattle, herd.*
- armiger**, -geri, m., *armor-bearer.*
- armilla**, -ae, f., *bracelet, armband.*
- arō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *plough.*
- arripiō**, -ere, -ripiui, -reptum, *snatch, seize.*
- ars**, artis, f., *art.*
- artus**, -ūs, m., *limb, joint.*
- arx**, arcis, f., *citadel, fortress.*
- as**, assis, m., (*a unit*) *an as*, Roman copper coin varying in value, finally *an ounce* in weight.
- ascendō**, -ere, -ndi, ēsum, *ascend.*
- asinus**, -i, m., *ass.*
- asylum**, -i, n., *refuge, asylum.*
- at**, conj., *but.*
- āter**, ātra, ātrum, *black, dark.*
- Athēnae**, -nrum, f., *Athens.*
- atque** = **ac**, *and, and also.*
- attingō**, -ere, attigi, attactum (*tangō*), *touch, border on, reach.*
- auctor**, -ōris, m., *author, instigator.*
- auctoritas**, -ātis, f., *influence, authority.*
- auctumnus**, -ī, m., *autumn.*
- audāx**, -ācis, adj., *bold*; adv., *audācter*, *boldly.*
- audeō**, -ēre, ausus sum, semi-deponent, *dare.*
- audiō**, -ire, -ivī, -itum, *hear.*
- aufferō**, -ferre, abstuli, ablātum, *carry off.*
- augurium**, -i, n., *augury, prophecy.*
- aura**, -ae, f., *breeze.*
- aureus**, -a, . . . adj., *golden.*

- auris**, -is, f., *ear*.  
**aurum**, -i, n., *gold*.  
**aut**, conj. *or*; **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or*.  
**autem**, conj., denoting transition or contrast; (1) *but, however, on the other hand*; (2) *now*, marking transition; (3) *moreover*.  
**auxilium**, -i, n., *aid, help*.  
**Avernus** (lacus), *Lake Avernus* in Italy, a supposed entrance to the lower world.  
**avidus**, -a, -um, *greedy, eager*.  
**avis**, -is, f., *bird*.  
**avunculus**, -i, *maternal uncle* (mother's brother).  
**avus**, -i, m., *grandfather*.
- B**
- Bacchus**, -i, m., *Bacchus, god of wine*.  
**ballista**, -ae, f., *ballista, a military engine for throwing heavy projectiles*.  
**barbarus**, -a, -um, *barbarian*.  
**beatus**, -a, -um, *happy, blessed*.  
**bellō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *wage war*.  
**bellum**, -i, n., *war*.  
**bene**, adv. (bonus), *well*.  
**benevolus**, -a, -um, *kind, kindly*.  
**benignus**, -a, -um, *kind*; adv., **benignō**.  
**bestia**, -ae, f., *beast*.  
**bibō**, -ere, bibī, bibitūrus, *drink*.  
**bini**, -ae, -a, distrib. numeral, *two at a time*.  
**bis**, adv., *twice*.  
**bonitas**, -ātis, f., *goodness*.  
**bonus**, -a, -um, *good*.  
**bōs**, bovis, m. or f., *ox, cow*.  
**bracchium**, -i, n., *arm (of the body)*.  
**brevis**, -e, *brief, short*; **brevis** (tempore), abl. used as adv., *soon*.  
**Britannia**, -ae, f., *Britain*.  
**Britannicus**, -a, -um, *British*.  
**Britannus**, -i, m., *a Briton*.  
**b.ūma** (= brevitima = brevislima (dies)), *winter solstice, the shortest day of the year*.
- C**
- C = Caius**, a praenomen.  
**cadāver**, -eris, n., *corpse, carcass*.  
**cadō**, -ere, cecidī, cāsum, *fall*.  
**caecus**, -a, -um, *blind*.  
**caedēs**, -is, f., *killing, slaughter, murder*.  
**caedō**, -ere, cecidī, caesum, *cut, kill*.  
**caelum**, -i, n., *sky, heaven*.  
**Caesar**, -aris, m., *Caesar*.  
**Caius**, -i, m., *Caius*.  
**calamitas**, -ātis, f., *disaster, calamity*.  
**calcar**, -āris, n., *spur (calx, heel)*.  
**callidus**, -a, -um, *shrewd, cunning*.  
**Camillus**, *Camillus*, a noble Roman, who conquered the Gauls besieging Rome, 367 B.C.  
**Campānus**, -a, -um, *Campanian*, of Campania, a district southeast of Rome.  
**campus**, -i, m., *plain, field*. **Campus Martius**, the Field of Mars, the great parade and athletic ground of Rome.  
**canis**, -is, m., *dog*.  
**canō**, -ere, cecini, cantum, *sing*.  
**cantō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *sing*.  
**cānus**, -a, -um, *white, hoary*.  
**caper**, capri, m., *goat*.  
**capillus**, -i, m., *hair*.  
**capio**, -ere, cēpi, captum, *take*.  
**Capitolinus**, -i, m., *the Capitoline Hill*.  
**captivus**, -a, -um, *captive*.  
**caput**, capitis, n., *head*.  
**cardō**, -inis, m., *hinge*.  
**careō**, -ēre, -uī, caritūrus, *be without* (abl.).  
**carina**, -ae, f., *keel*; poetically, *a ship*.  
**carmen**, -minis, n., *song*.  
**carō**, carnis, f., *flesh, meat*.  
**carpō**, -ere, carpsi, carptum, *pluck*; *pluck at, slander*.  
**carrus**, -i, m., *cart, wagon*.  
**Carthāgō**, -inis, f., *Carthage*, a flourishing city of northern Africa.  
**cārus**, -a, -um, *dear, precious*.  
**cāseus**, -i, m., *cheese*.  
**Castalia**, -ae, f., *Castalia*, a fountain on Mt. Parnassus in Greece, sacred to Apollo and the Muses.  
**castigō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *correct, chastise, punish*.

- castitās, -tātis, f.** (castus), *purity, chastity.*
- castra, -ōrum, n. plur.,** a camp; *ramps.*
- cāsus, -ūs, m.,** a fall, accident, chance, mischance, misfortune.
- catapulta, -ae, f.,** catapult, a war-engine for throwing heavy arrows, lances, and stones.
- Catilina, -ae, m.,** *Catiline*, a Roman conspirator suppressed by Cicero, 63 B.C.
- Catō, -ōnis, m.,** *Cato*, name of two great Romans, Cato the Censor and Cato Uticensis.
- caulus, -ī, m.,** *whelp, cub.*
- causa, -ae, f.,** *cause, reason; causa, abl., for the sake of* (governs the gen. and always follows its case).
- cautus, -a, -um, cautious; adv., cautō.**
- caveō, -ēre, cāvī, enutum, take care, guard, beware.**
- cecidī, perf. of caedō.**
- cecidī, perf. of caedō.**
- celer, celeris, celerē, quick, swift; adv., celeriter.**
- celeritās, -tātis, f., quickness.**
- celsum, -a, -um, lofty.**
- cōna, -ae, f.,** a meal, dinner, supper.
- centum, indecl., hundred.**
- Cēpheus, -ī, Cepheus,** a king of Ethiopia, father of Andromeda.
- cerebrum, -ī, n., brain.**
- Cerēs, Cereris, f., Ceres,** goddess of agriculture.
- certāmen, -mīnis, n., contest, struggle.**
- certus, -a, -um, certain, sure; certiorē facit, inform; certior fīō, am informed.**
- cēteri, -ae, -a, the others, the rest; the sing. rare.**
- Charōn, -ontis, m., Charon,** the ferryman of the Styx.
- chorus, -ī, m., band of dancers or singers; chorus.**
- cibus, -ī, m., food.**
- Cicerō, -ōnis, m., Cicero,** the famous Roman orator.
- Cincinnātus, -ī, m., (curly-haired) Cincinnatus,** the noble Roman called from the plough to the dictatorship, 493 B.C.
- cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cinctum, encircle, girdle, surround.**
- Circō, -ēs or -ae, f., Circe,** a sorceress who lived on the island of Aea; encountered by Ulysses.
- circiter, adv. with numerals, about.**
- circum, prep. (acc.), around.**
- circumdō, -dare, -dēxī, -datum, surround, put around.**
- circumsistō, -ere, -stitī, stand about.**
- circumspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, look around.**
- circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, surround.**
- cis, prep. (acc.), this side of.**
- citerior, -ior, nearer, hither.**
- citō, adv., quickly.**
- civis, -is, m. or f., citizen.**
- civitas, -tātis, f., state.**
- clādēs, -is, f., defeat, disaster.**
- clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, frequentative, cry out repeatedly.**
- clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, cry out, exclaim.**
- clāmor, -ōris, m., cry, shout.**
- clārus, -a, -um, bright, clear; renowned.**
- classis, -is, f., fleet.**
- claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum, close.**
- claudus, -a, -um, lame.**
- clāva, -ae, f., club. (Distinguish from clāvis, a key and clāvus, a nail or a stripe.)**
- cliēns, -entis, m., adherent, retainer, protégé.**
- clipeus, -ī, m., shield.**
- coāctus, perf. part. of cōgō.**
- coepī, coepisse, coeptus, defective verb, begin.**
- cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, reflect.**
- cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtum, learn, ascertain; cognōvī, I know (because I have learnt).**
- cōgō, -ere, cōgī, cōactum, (1) collect; (2) compel.**

- cohort**, -hortis, f., *cohort*, one-tenth of a legion, about 300 men.
- collis**, -is, m., *hill*.
- collocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *place, station*.
- colloquor**, -ī, -locūtus, *converse*.
- collum**, -ī, n., *neck*.
- colō**, -ere, colui, cultum, *cherish, cultivate; worship*.
- colōnia**, -ae, f., *colony*.
- coma**, -ae, f., *long hair; foliage*.
- comes**, -itis, m. or f., *companion, comrade*.
- commilitō**, -ōnis, m., *fellow-soldier, comrade*.
- committo**, -ere, -misi, -missum, (1) *in-trust*; (2) (proelium), *join battle*.
- commoror**, -āri, -ātus, *stay, lodge*.
- communis**, -e, *common, general*.
- committitō**, -ōnis, f., *excharge*.
- comparō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (pa. 3), *get together, collect, raise (an army)*.
- compellō**, -ere, -puli, -pulsam, *drive together; drive, compel*.
- compleō**, -ēre, -plēvi, -plētum, *fill*.
- complures**, -a, gen., -lum, *several*.
- compōnō**, -ere, -posui, -positum, *ar-range (peace)*.
- comportō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *carry together, collect*.
- compos**, -potis, adj., *having control of (governs the gen.)*.
- comprehendō**, -ere, -hēui, -hēsum, *seize*.
- comprimō**, -ere, -pressi, -pressam, *compress, squeeze, check*.
- cōnātus**, -ūs, m., *an attempt, effort*.
- conciliō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *conciliate*.
- concilium**, -ī, n., *council, assembly*.
- concurrō**, -ere, -curri, -cursum, *run together*.
- concutiō**, -ere, -cussi, -cussum, *shake violently*.
- condemnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *condemn, sentence*.
- condiciō**, -ōnis, f., *condition, terms*.
- condō**, -ere, -didī, -ditum (dō), *found (a city); store, hide*.
- cōnferō**, -ferre, contulī, coalātum or collatum, *carry together; betake; devote*.
- cōnfestim**, adv., *immediately*.
- cōnficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *finish, accomplish*.
- cōnfidō**, -ere, fisis auni, semi-depo-nent, *trust, feel sure, rely upon*; dat. of person, abl. of thing.
- cōnfirmō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *strength-en; affirm, declare*.
- cōnfiteor**, -ēri, -fessus, *acknowledge, confess*.
- cōnfoediō**, -ere, -fōdī, -foesum, *dig, pierce, stab*.
- congregior**, -ī, -gressus, *assemble, meet*.
- coniciō** (sometimes **conjiciō**), -ere, -jēcī, -jectum (jacō), *hurl, throw*.
- conjūnx**, -jugis, m. or f. (Jungō), *spouse, husband, wife*.
- conjūratiō**, -ōnis, f. (Jūrō), *conspir-acy*.
- conjūrator**, -ōris, m., *conspirator*.
- cōnor**, -āri, -ātus, *attempt, try*.
- cōnsalūtō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *greet*.
- cōnscendō**, -ere, -scendī, -scēsum (scailō, climb), *embark, board (a ship)*.
- cōnsector**, -ārī, -sectātus, *follow, pursue*.
- cōnscentiō**, -īre, -scēsi, -scēsum, *agree*.
- cōnsēnsne**, -ūs, m., *agreement*.
- cōnsequor**, -ī, -secūtus, *follow up, overtake; gain, accomplish*.
- cōnsidō**, -ere, -sedī, -sesum, *sit down; settle, encamp*.
- cōnsilium**, -ī, n., *plan, judgment, wisdom, counsel*.
- cōnsistō**, -ere, -stitī, -stitum, *stand still, halt*.
- cōnspectus**, -ūs, m., *sight*.
- cōnspiciō**, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, *behold, see*.
- cōnstantia**, -ae, f., *firmness, con-stancy*.
- cōnstat**, -āre, -stitit, *impersonal verb, it is agreed, it is evident*.
- cōnstitnō**, -ere, -stitui, -stitūm, *fix, settle, determine, resolve; sta-tion*.

**cōnsuēscō**, -ere, -suēvi, *become accustomed*; *perl.*, **cōnsuēvi**, *unaccustomed* (*because I have become*).

**cōnsuētūdō**, -luis, *f.*, *custom*.

**cōnsul**, -is, *m.*, *consul*.

**cōnsulō**, -ere, -sulni, -sultum, *consult*.

**contemnō** -ere -tempſi, -temptum, *despise*.

**contendō**, -ere, -mli, -tum, *strive, contend; hasten*.

**continēns**, -entis, (1) *adj.*, *continuous*; (2) *subst.*, *f.*, *continent, mainland*.

**contineō**, -ēre, -ui, -tentum, (1) *keep in*; (2) *bound*.

**contorqueō**, -ēre, -torsī, -tortum, *hurl violently*.

**contrā**, *pre.* (*acc.*), *against*; *adv.*, *on the c. atrary*.

**contrārius**, -a, -um, *contrary*.

**contrōversia**, -ae, *f.*, *rivalry, dispute*.

**convocō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *call together, assemble, convene*.

**co-orior**, -iri, -ortus, *rise, arise*.

**cōpia**, -ae, *f.*, (1) *plenty, abundance*; *supply*; (2) *plur.*, **cōpiae**, *military forces, troops*.

**cor**, cordis, *n.*, *heart* (*Eng. core*).

**Cornēlius**, -ī, *m.*, *Cornelius*, a name of the Scipio gens. **Cornēlia**, mother of the Gracchi, and daughter of P. Scipio Africanus the elder.

**cornū**, -ūs, *n.*, *horn*; *wing of an army* (*Eng. corner*).

**corōna**, -ae, *f.*, *crown, wreath*.

**corpue**, -oris, *n.*, *body*.

**corvus**, -ī, *m.*, *crow, raven*.

**cotidiō**, *adv.*, *daily*.

**crēber**, -bra, -brum, *frequent, numerous*.

**crēdō**, -ere, -lidi, -litum (*dat.*), *believe*.

**creō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *create, appoint*.

**crepida**, -a, *f.*, *sole, sandal*. Proverb, *nē sūtor suprà crepidam*, *let the cobbler stick to his last*.

**Crēta**, -ae, *f.*, *Crete*, an island in the Mediterranean.

**crūdēlis**, -is, *cruel*.

**crūs**, crūris, *n.*, *leg, limb*.

**culpa**, -ae, *f.*, *fault, blame*.

**culpō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *find fault with, blame*.

**cum**, *prep.* (*abl.*), *with, in company with*.

**cum**, *conj.*, (1) *when*; (2) *since*; (3) *whereas, although*.

**cupidō**, -luis, *f.*, *desire, love; greed*.

**cupidus**, -a, -um, *desirous, eager, greedily, rovetous* (*governs the gen.*).

**cupiō**, -ere, -ivi, -itum, *desire, long for*.

**cūr**, *adv.*, *why?*

**cūra**, -ae, *f.*, *care, anxiety*.

**cūrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *take care*.

**currō**, -ere, eucurri, cursum, *run*.

**currus**, -ūs, *m.*, *car, chariot*.

**cursus**, -ūs, *m.*, (1) *running, speed*; (2) *course*.

**cūstōdiō**, -ire, -ivi, -itum, *guard*.

**cūstōs**, -ōdis, *m.*, *guard, guardian, sentry*.

**cutis**, -is, *f.*, *skin*.

**Cyclōps**, -ōpis, a *Cyclops*, a name applied to a fabulous race of giant shepherds on the coast of Sicily, who had each but a single eye in the centre of the forehead.

**cymba**, -ae, *f.*, *a boat, skiff*.

D

**D = Decimus**, a praenomen.

**damnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *condemn*.

**damnum**, -ī, *n.*, *loss*.

**dē**, *prep.* (*abl.*), (1) *down from*; (2) *from among*; (3) *about, concerning*.

**dea**, -ae, *f.*, *goddess*.

**dēbeō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *owe, ought*.

**decem**, *indecl.*, *ten*.

**dēcidō**, -ere, -cidi (*endō*), *fall down, fall off*.

**decimae**, -a, -um, *tenth*.

**decōrus**, -a, -um, *seemly, beautiful*.

**dēcrēscō**, -ere, -crēvi, -crētum, *grow less, subside*.

- decus**, -oris, n., *adornment, beauty; honor, glory.*
- dēdō**, -ere, -didī, -ditum (dō), *surrender.*
- dēdūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead.*
- dēfendō**, -ere, -fendī, -fēsum, *defend.*
- dēferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *offer, lay before.*
- dēficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *fail, fall short.*
- dēiciō**, -ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *throw down.*
- dsinde**, adv., *in the next place, then, thereafter, afterwards.*
- dēlectō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *please, delight.*
- dēlsō**, -ere, -ēvī, -ētum, *blot out, destroy.*
- dēligō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *bind, fasten.*
- dēligō**, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *choose.*
- Dēlos**, -ī, f., *Delos, an island in the Aegean Sea, supposed birthplace of Apollo and Diana.*
- dēmīttō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send down, let down.*
- dēmōnstrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *show.*
- dēns**, dentis, m., *tooth.*
- dēnsus**, -a, -um, *thick, dense.*
- dēnūntiō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intimate, threaten.*
- dēpendeō**, -ere, *hang down.*
- dēpōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positum, *lay aside; place for safe keeping.*
- dēportō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *carry down.*
- dēscendō**, -ere, -scendī, -scēsum, *descend.*
- dēscēsus**, ūs, m., *descent.*
- dēsīderō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *long for, miss, look for in vain.*
- dēsiliō**, -īre, -silluī, -sultum, *leap down.*
- dēsīnō**, -ere, -sivī (dēsīi), -situm, *cease.*
- dēsīpiō**, -ere (sapiō, *am wise*), *am foolish; trifle.*
- dēsperō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *despair.*
- dēspiciō**, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, *look down.*
- dēsum**, -esse, -sui, *am lacking.*
- dēstrahō**, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctum, *pull off.*
- dēsturbō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *dislodge.*
- dsus**, -ī, m., *a god.*
- dēvorō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *devour.*
- dexter**, -tra, -trum, *right, on the right; dextrā, as adv.*
- Diana**, -ae, f., *Diana.*
- dico**, -ere, -dixī, -dictum, *say.*
- dictātor**, -ōris, m., *dictator.*
- diēs**, -ēi, m. (also f. in the sing.), *day.*
- differō**, -ferre, distulī, dilātum, (1) *put off, defer; (2) differ.*
- difficilis**, -e, *difficult; adv., vix, aegrō.*
- difficultāe**, -ātis, f., *difficulty.*
- diffugiō**, -ere, -fūgī, *flee, scatter.*
- diligēns**, -entis, *careful, watchful.*
- diligentia**, -ae, f., *carefulness, watchfulness.*
- diligō**, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *esteem, love.*
- dimicō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *fight, struggle, contend.*
- dimitto**, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *dismiss, send out.*
- Dionē**, -ēs, *Dione, mother of Venus.*
- dicēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.
- discipulus**, -ī, m., *pupil.*
- discō**, -ere, didicī, *learn (as a lesson).*
- discurrō**, -ere, -currī, -cursum, *run apart, scatter.*
- dispōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positum, *place at intervals.*
- dieputō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *dispute, argue.*
- diecimilie**, -e, *unlike.*
- disceimulō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *dissemble, conceal.*
- diū**, adv. of time, *long; compar. diūtine; superl. diūtissime.*
- dives**, -itis, *rich.*
- dividō**, -ere, -visī, -visum, *divide, separate.*
- Divitiacus**, -ī, m., *Divitiacus, a Gallic nobleman.*
- divitiae**, -ārum, *riches.*
- dō**, dare, dedi, datum, *give.*

- docēō**, -ere, docuī, doctum, *teach*.
- dolor**, -ōris, m., *grief, pain, sorrow, indignation*.
- dolōsus**, -a, -um, *crafty, treacherous*.
- dolus**, -ī, m., *wile, guile, trick*.
- domesticus**, -a, -um, *domestic, private*.
- domicilium**, -ī, n., *abode, domicile*.
- domina**, -ae, f., *mistress*.
- dominus**, -ī, m., *master, owner, lord*.
- domus**, -ūs (loc. domī), f., *house, home*.
- dōnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *give, present*.
- dormiō**, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *sleep*.
- dubitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *doubt; hesitate*.
- dubius**, -a, -um, *doubtful; adv., dubiē*.
- dūcō**, -ere, dūxī, ductum, (1) *lead; (2) think; in mātrimonium dūcō*, marry (said of the man).
- dulcēdō**, -īnis, f., *sweetness, charm*.
- dulcis**, -e, *sweet*.
- dum**, conj., (1) *while, as long as; (2) until; (3) provided that*.
- dūmētum**, -ī, *thicket*.
- duo**, -ae, -o, *two*.
- duodecim**, *twelve*.
- duplex**, -icis, *double*.
- duplicō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *double*.
- dūrus**, -a, -um, *hard, hardy, harsh, severe*.
- dux**, ducis, m., *leader*.
- E**
- eā**, adv. (viā or parte understood), *that way*.
- eae**, eam, eās, eārum, see pron. *ie*, p. 134.
- edō**, -ere, ēdī, ēsum, *eat*.
- ēdō**, -ere, -didī, -dītum, *go forth*.
- ēdūcō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *educate, rear*.
- ēdūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead out*.
- efferrō**, -ferre, extulī, elātum, *carry forth; raise*.
- efficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *effect, accomplish, make possible*.
- effugiō**, -ere, -fūgī, *escape*.
- effugium**, -ī, n., *refuge*.
- effundō**, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *pour forth, scatter, rout*.
- ego**, I.
- ēgredior**, -ī, -gressus, *go forth, leave; disembark*.
- ēgregius**, -a, -um (grex), *uncommon, extraordinary, exceptional, excellent; adv., ēgregiō*.
- ēgreceus**, -a, -um, perf. part. of **ēgredior**.
- ēgressus**, -ūs, m., *a landing*.
- ēiciō**, -ere, ējecī, ējectum (jaciō), *cast forth; eject*.
- ējue**, ei, eis, eōs, eum, see pron. *is*, p. 134.
- Electra**, -ae, f., *Electra, sister of Orestes and daughter of Agamemnon*.
- elephantus**, -ī, m., *elephant*.
- ēligō**, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *choose, elect*.
- ēmergō**, -ere, -mersī, -mersum, *emerge*.
- ēmittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send forth; let loose*.
- emō**, -ere, emī, emptum, *buy*.
- enim**, conj., *for, never placed first*.
- eō**, adv., *thither*.
- eō**, ire, ivi (ii), i' r i, *go*.
- eōdem**, adv., *to the same place*.
- epistola**, -ae, f., *letter*.
- Ephesue**, -ī, f., *Ephesus*.
- epulor**, -ārī, -ātus, *feast*.
- epulum**, -ī, n., *a feast*.
- eques**, -itis, m., (1) *horseman, cavalry soldier; (2) knight*.
- equester**, -tris, -tre, *equestrian, cavalry, adj.*
- equitātus**, -ūs, m., *cavalry*.
- equus**, -ī, m., *horse*.
- ēripiō**, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum, *snatch away, rescue*.
- errō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *err, wander, stray*.
- error**, -ōris, m., *error, mistake*.
- ērudīō**, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *instruct, educate, polish*.
- ēscendō**, -ere, ēscendī, ēscēsum, *climb out*.
- essedā**, -ae, f., *war-chariot*.
- essedārius**, -ī, m., *chariot warrior*.

- et, and; et . . . et . . . , both . . .  
and . . . .
- etiam, even, also.
- etsi, although.
- ēvādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsum, go out,  
turn out.
- F**
- faber, -brī, m., workman.
- fabricō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, make, con-  
trive.
- fābula, -ae, f., story.
- facilis, -e, easy; adv., facile.
- faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum, (1) do;  
(2) make.
- fāgus, -ī, f., beech-tree.
- fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsum, deceive.
- faleus, -a, -um, false.
- fāma, -ae, f., report, renown.
- famēs, -is (abl. sing. commonly famē  
of the fifth decl.), f., hunger.
- fās, indecl., n., right, permitted by  
divine law.
- faucēe, -lum, f., jaws, throat, gorge.
- Favōniue, -ī, m., Zephyr, West Wind.
- fēlix, -iels, fortunate.
- fēmina, -ae, f., woman.
- fenestra, -ae, f., window, opening.
- ferāx, -ācis, fruitful, fertile.
- ferō, adv., almost, nearly, about.
- feriō, -ire, strike.
- ferō, ferre, tullī, lātum, carry.
- ferōx, -ōcis, fierce, high-spirited.
- ferreus, -a, -um, of iron.
- fsrrum, -ī, n., iron.
- ferus, -a, -um, wild, fierce.
- fessur, -a, -um, weary, tired.
- festinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, hasten.
- fictus, perf. part. of fingō, concocted,  
false.
- fidēs, -eī, f., faith.
- fidēs, -ium, plur. f., lyre.
- fidō, -ere, fisis sum, semi-depon.,  
trust (abl. of thing; dat. of person).
- fidus, -a, -um, faithful, trustworthy.
- figō, -ere, fixī, fixum, fix, fasten.
- figūra, -ae, f., shape, form.
- filia, -ae, f., daughter.
- filius, -ī, m., son.
- fingō, -ere, finxī, fictum, form,  
fashion, fabricate.
- finis, -is, m., end, limit, boundary;  
plur., territories.
- fiō, fieri, factus sum, be done, be  
made, become, take place.
- firmus, -a, -um, strong.
- fistula, -ae, f., pipe, tube, reed (musical  
instrument).
- flāgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, dem
- flamma, -ae, f., flame.
- flectō, -ere, flexī, flexum, turn, bend.
- fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum, weep.
- flō, flāre, flāvī, flātum, blow.
- flōs, flōris, m., flower.
- fuctus, -ūs, m wave.
- fūmsn, -minis, n., river, stream.
- fluō, -ere, fluxī, fluxum, flow.
- fluvius, -ī, m., river, stream.
- focue, -ī, m., hearth, fireside, home.
- fodiō, -ere, fōlī, fossum, dig.
- fōne, fontis, m., fountain.
- fors = futūrus esse, fut. inf. of sum.
- fōrma, -ae, f., form, shape.
- fōrmōsue, -a, -um, stupely, beauti-  
ful.
- forte, defective noun, by chance  
(abl.).
- fortis, -e, brave, strong; adv., forti-  
ter.
- fortitūdō, -inis, f., braverly, courage.
- forum, -ī, n., forum, market-place.
- foesa, -ae, f., ditch, trench.
- frāctus, perf. part. of frangō.
- fragor, -ōris, m., crush; (caeli),  
thunder.
- frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum, break.
- frāter, -tris, m., brother.
- frequēns, -entis, numerous, in large  
numbers.
- frētus, -a, -um, relying on (abl.).
- frigus, -oris, n., cold, frost.
- frōs, frondis, f., foliage.
- frōie, frontis, f., forehead, brow.
- frūctue, -ūs, m., fruit.
- frūgēs, -um, plur., fruits of the field,  
crops.
- frūmentāriue, -a, -um, pertaining  
to corn; rēs frūmentāria, corn  
supply.
- frūmentor, -ārī, -ātus, get grain,  
forage.



**frumentum**, -i, *grain, corn*.  
**fruo**, frui, fructus, *enjoy (abl.)*.  
**frustrā**, adv., *in vain*.  
**fuga**, -ae, f., *flight*.  
**fugiō**, -ere, fugi, fugitum, *flee*.  
**fugō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *put to flight, pursue*.  
**ful**, perf. of **sum**.  
**fulgur**, -uris, n., *lightning*.  
**fulmen**, -minis, n., *thunder-bolt; lightning stroke*.  
**funda**, -ae, f., *sling*.  
**fundō**, -ere, fūdī, fūsum, *pour; scatter, rout*.  
**fungor**, -i, fūctus, *perform, execute, discharge (duty) (abl.)*.  
**fūnie**, -is, m., *rope, cable*.  
**Furia**, -ae, f., *a Fury*.  
**furor**, -ōris, m., *madness, frenzy*.  
**fūletis**, -is, m., *club*.

## G

**galea**, -ae, f., *helmet*.  
**Gallia**, -ae, f., *Gaul*.  
**Gallicus**, -a, -um, *Gallic*.  
**Gallus**, -i, m., *a Gaul; Frenchman*.  
**gaudeō**, -ēre, gavīsus sum, semi-depon., *rejoice*.  
**gaudium**, -i, n., *joy*.  
**geminī**, -ōrum, m., *twins*.  
**gemō**, -ere, -uī, -itum, *groan*.  
**gener**, -erī, m., *son-in-law*.  
**gēne**, gentis, f., *race, tribe*.  
**genus**, -eris, n., *kind, class*.  
**Germānus**, -a, -um, *German*.  
**gerō**, -ere, gessī, gestum, *carry, carry on, do*.  
**geetō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *carry, wear*.  
**gigās**, gigantīs, m., *giant*.  
**gladius**, -i, m., *sword*.  
**glōria**, -ae, f., *glory*.  
**glōrior**, -ārī, -ātus, *boast*.  
**glōriōsus**, -a, -um, *boastful*.  
**Gracchus**, -i, m., *Gracchus*, the name of two young Roman brothers who championed the cause of the people.  
**gracilis**, -e, *slender*.  
**Graccia**, -ae, f., *Greece*.

**Graecus**, -a, -um, *Greek*.  
**grāmen**, -minis, n., *grass*.  
**grātia**, -ae, f., *favor; gratitude; grātia = causā, for the sake of*.  
**grātulor**, -ārī, -ātus, *congratulate; rejoice*.  
**grātus**, -a, -um, (1) *pleasing; (2) thankful*.  
**gravis**, -e, *heavy, serious; adv., graviter; graviter ferō, am annoyed*.  
**grex**, gregis, m., *herd, flock, pack*.  
**grūs**, gruis, m., *crane*.  
**gula**, -ae, f., *throat (gullet)*.  
**gustō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *taste*.  
**guetus**, -ūs, m., *taste*.

## H

**habēō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, (1) *have, hold; (2) deem, think*.  
**habitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,  *dwell, abide, reside*.  
**habitus**, -ūs, m., *habit, costume, dress, guise, garb*.  
**Hadria**, -ae, m., *the Adriatic*.  
**haereō**, -ēre, haesī, haesum, *stick, cling*.  
**haerēs (hērēs)**, -ēdis, m., *hetr*.  
**Hannibal**, -alis, m., *Hannibal*, a leader of the Carthaginians, who nearly conquered Rome.  
**hasta**, -ae, f., *spear*.  
**haud**, adv., *not*.  
**haudquāquam**, adv., *by no means*.  
**Helena**, -ae, f., *Helen*, wife of Menelaus and queen of Sparta; the cause of the Trojan War.  
**Helicōn**, -cōnis, m., *Helicōn*, a mountain in Boeotia sacred to Apollo and the Muses.  
**Helvetius**, -a, -um, *Helvetian*, a designation of the ancient Swiss.  
**Henna**, -ae, f., *Enna*, a city in the centre of Sicily, sacred to Ceres.  
**Hephaestus**, -i, m., *Hephaestus*, Greek name of Vulcan.  
**Herculēs**, -is, m., *Hercules*, the strongest man of Greece; hero of the Twelve Labors; deified after death.  
**herī**, loc. case used as adv., *yesterday*.

<b>hiberna</b> , -ōrum, n. plur. (castra), <i>winter camp, winter quarters.</i>	<b>Horātius</b> , -ī, m., <i>Horatius</i> , hero of the "Defence of the Bridge."
hibernus, -a, -um, adj., <i>belonging to winter.</i>	<b>horrendus</b> , -a, -um, <i>dreadful.</i>
<b>Hibernia</b> , -ac, f., <i>Ireland.</i>	<b>horrēō</b> , -ēre, -uī, <i>shudder at, dread.</i>
<b>hic</b> , haec, hōc, demoust. pron., <i>this.</i>	<b>horrēscō</b> , -ere, <i>shudder at, dread.</i>
<b>hic</b> , adv., <i>here.</i>	<b>horribilis</b> , -e, <i>dreadful.</i>
<b>hiems</b> , -is, f., <i>winter.</i>	<b>horridus</b> , -a, -um, <i>rough, bristling; repulsive, dreadful.</i>
<b>hinc</b> , adv., <i>hence.</i>	<b>hortor</b> , -ārī, -ātus, <i>exhort.</i>
<b>hircus</b> , -ī, m., <i>goat.</i>	<b>hortus</b> , -ī, m., <i>garden.</i>
<b>Hispania</b> , -ae, f., <i>Spain.</i>	<b>hospes</b> , -ltis, m., <i>guest.</i>
<b>Hispanus</b> , -a, -um, <i>Spanish, Spanish.</i>	<b>hospita</b> , -ae, f., <i>guest (a woman).</i>
<b>hodiō</b> , adv., <i>to-day.</i>	<b>hostis</b> , -is, m., <i>enemy.</i>
<b>homō</b> , -inīs, m., <i>man, human being.</i>	<b>hūc</b> , adv., <i>hither.</i>
<b>honor</b> , -ōris, m., <i>honor; office.</i>	<b>hūmānus</b> , -a, -um, <i>civilized, refined, cultured.</i>
<b>hōra</b> , -ae, f., <i>hour.</i>	<b>humerus</b> , -ī, m., <i>shoulder.</i>
	<b>humilis</b> , -e, <i>low, lowly.</i>
	<b>humus</b> , -ī, f., <i>the ground.</i>

## I and J

NOTE. — The character **J** is a post-classical invention to distinguish, for the eye, the consonant or **y** value of **i**, of which it is merely a prolongation to suggest the intensifying of the sound. The English sound of **j** is an outgrowth of this **y** sound.

Many Latin texts print **j** as **i**, but for the sake of the pupil's studies in the derivation of English words, this book has retained the traditional **j**. To emphasize the original identity between the two characters, the Vocabulary gives **j** the same alphabetical rank as **i**.

**J.** = **Julius** or **Iulius**, a praenomen.

**jaceō**, -ēre, -uī (jacitūrus), *lie.*

**jacīō**, -ere, jēcī, jactum, *throw.*

**jactō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *toss, throw.*

**jaculum**, -ī, *javelin, dart.*

**jam**, adv., *now, already, by this time.*

**Ibēris**, -ī, m., *the Ebro, a river of Spain.*

**ibi**, adv., *there.*

**idem**, eadem, idem, intensive pron., *the same.*

**idōneus**, -a, -um, *suitable.*

**Idūs**, -uum, f. plur., *the Ides, 13th or 15th of the month.*

**igitur**, adv., *therefore.*

**ignārus**, -a, -um, *ignorant, unaware.*

**ignāvia**, -ae, f., *cowardice, laziness.*

**ignāvus**, -a, -um, *cowardly, lazy.*

**igneus**, -a, -um, *fiery.*

**ignis**, -is, m., *fire.*

**ignōrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *am ignorant, am unaware.*

**ignōscō**, -ere, ignōvī, ignōtum, *par-don.*

**Īlium**, -ī, n., *Ilium, Troy.*

**ills**, illa, illud, demonst. pron., *that.*

**illiciō**, -ere, -lexī, -lectum, *allure, entice.*

**illidō**, -ere, -sī, -sum, *dash against.*

**illūcēscō**, -ere, -lūxī, *grow light.*

**imāgō**, -inīs, f., *image, likeness.*

**imber**, -bris, m., gen. plur., *imbrinum, rain.*

**imbuō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *wet, moisten, dip, dye.*

**immittō**, -ere, -mīsī, *missum, send in, let in.*

**immolō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *sacrifice.*

**immōtus**, -a, -um (moveō), *unmoved.*

**impedimentum**, -ī, n., *hindrance; plur., baggage.*

- impediō**, -ire, -ivi, -itum, *hinder, obstruct*.
- impellō**, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, *impel, drive*.
- imprātor**, -ōris, m., *commander, general*.
- imperium**, -i, n., *command, sway, empire*.
- imperō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *command, demand*.
- impetrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *obtain (a request)*.
- impetus**, -ūs, m., *attack*.
- impius**, -a, -um, *unfilial, undutiful, impious*.
- implēre**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *entreat, implore*.
- impotēns**, -entis, *without control*.
- improbus**, -a, -um, *bad*.
- imus**, -a, -um, *superl. of inferus, lowest*.
- in**, prep. (1) (with abl.), *in*; (2) (with acc.), *into*.
- incantus**, -a, -um, *incautious, reckless*.
- incendō**, -ere, -di, -cēsum, *set fire to, burn*.
- incertus**, -a, -um, *uncertain*.
- incidō**, -ere, -cidi, -cāsūm (cadō), *fall into*.
- incidō**, -ere, -cidi, -cīsum (caedo), *cut into*.
- incipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *begin*.
- incitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *stir up, urge, rouse*.
- inclūdō**, -ere, -clūsi, -clūsum (claudō), *shut in, enclose*.
- incognitus**, -a, -um, *unknown*.
- incola**, -ae, m. or f., *inhabitant*.
- incolō**, -ere, -uī, *inhabit*.
- incolumis**, -e, *unharméd, safe*.
- incommodus**, -a, -um, *inconvenient; incommodum*, neut. used as subst., *a disaster*.
- inds**, adv., *thence*.
- indīcō**, -ere, -dixī, -dīctum (bellum), *declare war (dat. of the person upon whom)*.
- indignus**, -a, -um, *unworthy (abl.)*.
- induō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *put on (clothing)*.
- industria**, -ae, f., *industry*.
- indūtus**, -a, -um, *perf. part. of induō, wearing, clad in*.
- inēō**, -ire, -ivi (-ii), -itum, *enter; cōnsilium inēō, form plan*.
- iners**, -ertis, *inactive, lifeless*.
- inferō**, -ferre, iutuli, inlātum or illātum, *carry into; bellum inferō, wage war upon (dat. of the person)*.
- infēstus**, -a, -um, *hostile, deadly*.
- infirmitās**, -ātis, f., *weakness, fickleness*.
- infirmiter**, adv., *weakly*.
- infirmitas**, -a, -um, *weak, wavering*.
- infiō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *flow into*.
- ingenium**, -i, n., *natural disposition, talent*.
- ingēns**, -gentis, *immense, huge*.
- ingrātus**, -a, -um, *ungrateful*.
- iniciō**, -ere, -jēci, -jectum, *throw into*.
- inimicus**, -i, m., *enemy, personal foe*.
- iniquus**, -a, -um, *unequal; unfavorable*.
- initium**, -i, n., *beginning*.
- injūria**, -ae, f., *wrong, injustice*.
- innixus**, -a, -um, *perf. part. of innitor, resting upon, supported by*.
- innūptus**, -a, -um (nūbō), *unmarried*.
- inops**, -opis, *destitute, lacking (gen.)*.
- inquit**, *defective verb (inquam), says he*.
- insāniō**, -īre, -ivi, -itum, *am insane, am mad*.
- inscius**, -a, -um, *unaware*.
- insidiae**, -ārum, f. plur., *ambuscade, plot, treachery*.
- insolēns**, -lentis, *arrogant, insolent*.
- instituō**, -uere, -uī, -ūtum, (1) *set up, establish, institute*; (2) *resolve*; (3) *teach, instruct; bene institutus, well taught*.
- instruō**, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *draw up, station, form (line)*.
- insuāfactus**, -a, -um, *accustomed, habituated*.
- insula**, -ae, f., *island*.

- intellegō**, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *understand, perceive, know.*
- intendō**, -ere, -tendī, -tentum or -tēnsum, *stretch, direct; bend (a bow).*
- inter**, *betwixt, among.*
- interdum**, adv., *sometimes, occasionally.*
- interēā**, *meanwhile.*
- interēō**, -īre, -īvī (-īī), -itum, *perish.*
- interest**, Impersonal verb, = *rōfert*, *it is important, it concerns.*
- interficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *kill, slay.*
- interior**, *inner.*
- internus**, *internal, inland; Mare Internum, the Mediterranean.*
- interrogō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *ask, question.*
- intersum**, -esse, -fuī, -fātūrus, *am among; take part in (governs dat.).*
- intervallum**, -ī, n., *interval.*
- inūsitatne**, -a, -um, *unusd. unusual.*
- inveniō**, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *find, discover.*
- invidēō**, -ēre, -vidī, -vīsum, *envy (governs dat.).*
- invidia**, -ae, f., *envy, ill-will.*
- invitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *invite.*
- invītus**, -a, -um, *unwilling.*
- invocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *call upon, invoke.*
- ipee**, ipsa, ipsum, *intensive pron., self, very.*
- ira**, -ae, f., *anger.*
- irācundne**, -a, -um, *wrathful, given to anger.*
- irāscor**, -ī, irātus, *become angry, am angry.*
- irātus**, -a, -um, *angry.*
- irrideō**, -ēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, *ridicule, laugh at (governs acc.).*
- irrisus**, -ūs, m., *jeering, ridicule.*
- is**, ea, id, *personal and demonstr. pron., he, she, it; that.*
- iste**, ista, istud, *demonstr. pron., that (of yours); that (contemptuously).*
- ita**, *so, thus.*
- Italia**, -ae, f., *Italy.*
- itaque**, conj., *therefore, consequently.*
- iter**, itinēris, n., *road, journey, march.*
- iterum**, adv., *a second time, again.*
- Ithaca**, -ae, f., *Ithaca, island west of Greece, home of Ulysses.*
- jubeō**, -ēre, jussī, jussum, *order, bid.*
- jūdex**, -icels, m., *judge.*
- jūgerum**, -ī, n., *acre.*
- jugum**, -ī, n., *yoke.*
- Jūline**, -ī, m., *Julius, a praenomen.*
- jumentum**, -ī, *beast of burden.*
- jūnior**, compar. of juvenis, *younger.*
- Jūnō**, -ōnis, f., *Juno, spouse of Jupiter.*
- Jūpiter**, Jovis, m., *Jupiter, Jove.*
- jūrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *swear.*
- jūs**, jūris, n., *law, right, justice, obligation.*
- jūejūrandum**, jūrisjūrandī, compound noun, *oath.*
- juesū**, *by order of.*
- jūstītia**, -ae, f., *justice.*
- jūstus**, -a, -um, *just.*
- juvenis**, -is, m., *a youth, young man.*
- juventūs**, -ūtis, f., *youth; the age of youth; a collection of youths.*
- juvō**, -āre, jūvī, jūtum (juvātūrus), *aid, help.*
- juxtā**, adv. and prep. (acc.), *near, close, next.*
- K**
- Kalendae**, -ārum, f., *the Kalends, first of the month.*
- Karthāgō**, -inis, f., = *Carthāgō, Carthage.*
- L**
- L.** = **Lūcius**, a praenomen.
- labor**, -ōris, m., *labor, toil, distress, hardship.*
- lābor**, -ī, lāpsus, *slip, slide, glide, fall.*
- labōrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *labor, struggle, am in distress.*
- lac**, lactis, n., *milk.*
- Lacedaemōn**, -ōnis, f., *Lacedaemon, Sparta.*
- lacerō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tear, rend.*
- laevus**, -a, -um, *left, left-hand.*
- lāna**, -ae, f., *wool.*

- languidus**, -a, -um, *languid, dull*.
- laniger**, -gera, -gerum, *wool-bearing, fleecy*.
- Laomedōn**, -ontis, m., *Laomedon*, an early king of Troy.
- lapis**, -idis, m., *stone*.
- Lātōna**, -ae, f., *Latona*, mother of Apollo and Diana.
- lātrō**, -ōnis, m., *robber*.
- lātus**, -a, -um, adj., *wide, broad*; adv., *lātō*.
- lātue**, -a, -um, perl. part of *lātō*, *carried*.
- lātus**, -eris, n., *side*.
- laudō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *praise*.
- Laurentius** (fluvius), *the river St. Lawrence*.
- laus**, laudis, f., *praise, glory*.
- lāctor**, -ōris (legō), *reader*.
- lēgātus**, -ī, m., *u deputy*; (1) *lieutenant*; (2) *ambassador*.
- legiō**, -ōnis, f., *legion*.
- legiōnārius**, -a, -um, *legionary*.
- lēgō**, -ere, lēgī, lēctum, *pick, choose*; *read*.
- Lemnos**, -ī, f., *Lemnos*, an island in the Aegean Sea.
- lēnis**, -e, *mild, gentle*.
- lentue**, -a, -um, (1) *pliant, tough, sticky*; (2) *slow*.
- leō**, -ōnis, m., *lion*.
- lepus**, -oris, m., *hare*.
- lēx**, lēgis, f., *a law, enactment*; plur., *laws*, or *the law* collectively.
- libenter**, *gladly, willingly*.
- liber**, -brī, m., *book*.
- liber**, -era, -erum, *free*; **liberi**, -ōrum, m., *children*.
- Liber**, -erī, m., *Liber, Bacchus*, god of wine.
- liberō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *free, set free*.
- libertās**, -ātis, f., *liberty, freedom*.
- libet**, impersonal verb, *it pleases*.
- licet**, impersonal verb, *it is allowed*.
- lignum**, -ī, n., *wood*.
- ligō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *bind*.
- linter**, -tris, gen. plur. -ium, f., *boat, skiff*.
- lintheus**, -a, -um, *made of linen, linen*.
- littera**, -ae, f., (1) *slug, a letter of the alphabet*; (2) plur. *letter = epistle*, (3) *littera, literature*.
- litus**, -oris, n., *shore, beach*.
- locus**, -ī, m.; plur. loca, -ōrum, n., *place*. (The mas. plur. loci, -ōrum, *topics*, is rare).
- locō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *place, station*.
- longē**, adv., *far*.
- longus**, -a, -um, *long, distant*.
- loquor**, -ī, locūtus, *speak*.
- lōrica**, -ae, f., *cuirass, corselet, coat-of-mail*.
- Lōtophagi**, -ōrum, m., *Lotus-eaters*.
- lōtue**, -ī, f., *the lotus*, a plant found in the north of Africa.
- lūcus**, -ī, m., *grove*.
- lūdō**, -ere, lūsī, lūsūm, *play, mock*.
- lūdus**, -ī, m., (1) *play*; (2) *school*.
- lūgēō**, -ēre, lūxī, lūctum, *grieve, mourn*.
- lūmen**, -minis, n. (= lūmen), *a light*.
- lūna**, -ae, f. (= lūna), *moon*.
- lupa**, -ae, f., *she-wolf*.
- lupus**, -ī, m., *wolf*.
- lūx**, lūcis, f., *light* (the condition).

M

**M** = **Mārcus**, a praenomen.

**M'** = **Manius**, a praenomen.

**māchina**, -ae, f., *a contrivance, engine*.

**māciēs**, -ēī, f., *leanness, wasting*.

**magicus**, -a, -um, *magic*.

**magis**, adv., compar. of **māgnopers**, *more*.

**magister**, -trī, m., *master, teacher, captain of a ship*.

**magistra**, -ae, f., *mistress, teacher* (a woman).

**māgnificus**, -a, -um, *noble, high-minded; grand, magnificent*.

**māgnitūdō**, -dinis, f., *magnitude, size*.

**māgnopers**, adv., *greatly, earnestly*.

**māgnus**, -a, -um, *great, large*.

**Māia**, -ae, f., *Maiu*, mother of Mercury.

- maledicō**, -ere, -dixī, -dictum, *slander, revile, abuse.*  
**maledicus**, -a, -um, *slandering, abusive.*  
**mālō**, malle, mālui, *prefer.*  
**mālum**, -i, n., *apple.*  
**mālu**, -l, f., *apple-tree.*  
**mālus**, -a, -um, *bad.*  
**mandātum**, -i, n., *behest, command.*  
**mandō**, -āre, āvi, -ātum, *enjoin, commission, command, intrust.*  
**māne**, indecl., *early (in the morning).*  
**maueō**, -ere, mānsi, māsum, *remain.*  
**Mānēs**, -um, m., *a shade, spirit of a departed person; the Shades, deities of the under-world.*  
**manus**, -ūs, f., (1) *hand; (2) band (of men), force.*  
**mare**, -is, n., *sea.*  
**marinus**, -a, -um, *marine, of the sea.*  
**maritimus**, -a, -um, *of the sea; ōra maritima, sea coast.*  
**maritue**, -i, m., *husband, mate.*  
**Mārs**, -rtis, m., *Mars, god of war.*  
**Mārtius**, -a, -um, *of Mars.*  
**Māter**, -tris, f., *mother.*  
**mātrimōnium**, -i, n., *matrimony; in mātr. dūcō, marry.*  
**mātrōna**, -ae, f., *married woman, matron, dame.*  
**mātūrus**, -a, -um, *ripe, early; adv. -ē.*  
**māximue**, superl. of **māgnus**, *largest, greatest; adv., māximē, chiefly, most.*  
**medius**, -a, -um, *mid, middle.*  
**Medūsa**, -ae, f., *Medūsa, one of the Gorgons.*  
**mel**, mellis, n., *honey.*  
**melior**, compar. of **bonue**.  
**membrum**, -i, n., *member, part of the body, limb.*  
**memini**, meminisse, defect. verb, *remember.*  
**memor**, -oris, adj., *mindful.*  
**memoria**, -ae, f., *memory.*  
**mendicue**, -i, m., *beggar.*  
**Menelaus**, -i, m., *Menelaus, king of Sparta, husband of Helen, and instigator of the Trojan War.*  
**mēns**, mentis, f., *mind.*  
**mēnsa**, -ae, f., *table.*  
**mēnsis**, -is, m., *month.*  
**meutior**, -iri, mentitus, *lie (speak falsely).*  
**mercātor**, -ōris, m., *merchant, trader.*  
**mercēs**, -ēdis, f., *price, reward, wage, pay.*  
**mereō**, -ēre, -ui, -itum, *merit, deserve.*  
**mercor**, -ēri, meritus = mereō.  
**meridiēs**, -ēi, m., (1) *mid-day; (2) south.*  
**meritō**, adv., *deserv'dly, by merit.*  
**messie**, -is, f., *harvest.*  
**mētior**, -iri, mēnsus, *measure.*  
**metuō**, -uere, -ui, *fear.*  
**metus**, -ūs, m., *fear.*  
**meue**, -a, -um, *my, mine.*  
**mille**, -itis, m., *soldier.*  
**militārie**, -e, *military.*  
**mille**, slang. indecl. adj., *thousand; plur., millia, a substantive, thousands.*  
**Minerva**, -ae, f., *Minerva, goddess of learning, weaving, and war.*  
**minimus**, superl. of **parvus**, *least, smallest; adv., minimē.*  
**minor**, compar. of **parvus**, *less, smaller; adv., minue.*  
**minuō**, -ere, -ui, -ūtum, *lessen, diminish.*  
**mirābilis**, -e, *wonderful.*  
**miror**, -ōris, m., *wonder.*  
**mirue**, -a, -um, *wonderful, strange.*  
**miser**, -era, -erum, *wretched, miserable, pitiable.*  
**misereor**, -ēri, miseritus, *pity (gen.).*  
**miserēcō**, -ere, miserui, *pity (gen.).*  
**miseret**, -ēre, miseruit, *impersonal verb, it excites to pity.*  
**misericordia**, -ae, f., *compassion, pity.*  
**mitescō**, -ere, grow *mild.*  
**mittis**, -e, *send.*  
**mittō**, -ere, misi, missum, *send.*  
**mōbilis**, -e (moved), *changeable, fickle.*

**modō**, adv., *just, only, just now, recently*.  
**modus**, -i, m., *manner, limit*.  
**mōlis**, -is, f., *mass, bulk; difficulty*.  
**molestus**, -a, -um, *troublesome, irksome*.  
**mōlior**, -iri, -itus, *exert one's self, strive, contrive*.  
**mollis**, -e, *soft*.  
**moneō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *warn, advise*.  
**mōns**, montis, m., *mountain*.  
**mōnstrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *show, point out*.  
**mōnstrum**, -i, n., *monster, prodigy*.  
**monumentum** (or *moulin-*), *monument, reminder, memorial*.  
**mora**, -ae, *delay*.  
**morior**, -i, mortuus, *die*.  
**moror**, -ārī, -ātus, *delay*.  
**mors**, mortis, f., *death*.  
**mortalis**, -e, *mortal, subject to death*.  
**mortifer**, -fera, -ferum, *deadly, mortal, death-bearing*.  
**mortuus**, -a, -um, *dead*.  
**mōe**, mōris, m., *custom, (settled) habit*.  
**mōtus**, -ūs, m., (1) *movement, motion; (2) commotion, disturbance*.  
**mōtus**, -a, -um, perf. part. of *moveō*, *moved*.  
**moveō**, -ēre, mōvi, mōtum, *move, influence*.  
**mox**, adv., *soon, presently*.  
**muliebriter**, adv., *womanlike; in the manner of women*.  
**mulier**, -eris, f., *woman*.  
**multitūdō**, -inis, f., *multitude*.  
**multus**, -a, -um, *much; plur., many*.  
**mūniō**, -ire, -ivi (-ii), -itum, *fortify, protect*.  
**mūrue**, -i, m., *wall*.  
**mūs**, mūrī, m., *mouse*.  
**Mūsa**, -ae, f., *a Muse*.  
**muca**, -ae, f., *a fly*.  
**mūseica**, -ae, f., *music*.  
**mūtō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *change, exchange*.  
**Mycēnae**, -ārum, *Mycēnae*, a wealthy city in lower Greece.

N

**nam**, *for*.  
**nanciscor**, -i, nactus or nactus, *obtain, find*.  
**nārrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tell, narrate*.  
**nāscor**, -i, nātus, *am born*.  
**nātiō**, -ōnis, f., *tribe, nation*.  
**nātūra**, -ae, f., *nature*.  
**nātus**, -a, -um, perf. part. of *nāscor*, *born*.  
**nanta**, -ae, m., *soilor*.  
**nāvigium**, -i, n., *boat, vessel*.  
**nāvigō**, -āre, -āvi, ātum, *navigate, sail*.  
**nāvis**, -is, f., *ship; nāvis onerāria, ship of burden; nāvis longa, ship of war*.  
**nō**, negative of *warning, wish, prohibition, purpose; lest; not, may not; (in order) that not; used with the subjunctive and the fut. imperative, in poetry with the pres. imperative*.  
**ne**, interrogative enclitic, *not translated in a direct question; in a dependent question, whether*.  
**nec = neque**, used before consonants, *neither, nor*.  
**necō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *kill*.  
**nectō**, -ere, nexui, nexum, *join, fasten*.  
**nefas**, indecl., n., *wrong, contrary to divine law*.  
**negō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *deny*.  
**negōtium**, -i, n., *business, task*.  
**nēmō**, (dat., -ini), m. or f., *no one*.  
**nepōs**, -ōtis, m., *grandson*.  
**Neptūnus**, -i, m., *Neptune, god of the sea*.  
**nōquāquam**, adv., *by no means*.  
**neque (nec)**, *neither, nor; neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor*.  
**nesciō**, -ire, -ivi (-ii), -itum, *do not know, am ignorant*.  
**neuter**, neutra, neutrum, *geu. neutrius, dat. neutri, neither*.  
**nex**, necis, f., *death, killing*.  
**nidue**, -i, m., *nest*.  
**niger**, -gra, -grum, *black*.  
**nihil**, indecl. subst., n., *nothing*.

- nihilō**, abl. of rare form **nihilum**, *nothing*; chiefly in the phrase **nihilōminus**, *none the less*.  
**nīl** = **nihil**.  
**nimis**, adv., *too much*.  
**nimius**, -a, -um, *excessive, too much*.  
**nisi**, conj., *unless, except*.  
**nīsus**, -ūs, m., *effort*.  
**nitor**, -ōris, m., *brightness, splendor*.  
**nitōr**, -i, nīxus or nīsus, *strive, endeavor*.  
**nix**, nivis, f., *snow*.  
**nīxus**, -a, -um, perf. part. of **nitor**.  
**nocēsō**, -ēre, -nī, -itum, *hurt, injure* (goverus dat.).  
**noctū**, adv., *by night*.  
**nōlō**, nōlle, nōlūī, *am unwilling, do not wish*.  
**nōmen**, -minis, n., *name*.  
**nōminō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *name, call*.  
**nōn**, negative of pluri denial of fact, *not*.  
**Nōnae**, -ārum, f., *Nones, 5th or 7th of the month*.  
**nōndum**, adv., *not yet*.  
**nōnne**, *not?* suggesting the answer *Yes*.  
**nōnnumquam** (not never), *sometimes, occasionally*.  
**nōnus**, -a, -um, *ninth*.  
**noster**, -ira, -trum, *our*.  
**nōtō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *note, mark, indicate*.  
**nōtus**, -a, -um (nōscō), *known*.  
**novem**, *nine*.  
**novus**, -a, -um, *new*; **novissimus**, *latest, last*.  
**nox**, noctis, f., *night*.  
**nūbēs**, -is, f., *cloud*.  
**nūbō**, -ere, nūpsī, nūptum, *marry* (used of a woman).  
**nūdō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *strip bare*.  
**nūdus**, -a, -um, *bare, naked*.  
**nūllus**, -a, -um, gen. -ius, dat. -ī, *no, none*.  
**num**, interrog. adv. or conj., (1) in direct questions, not translated, suggests the answer *No*; (2) in dependent single questions, *whether*.  
**Numa**, -ae, m., *Numa*, a Roman name.  
**numerus**, -i, m., *number*.  
**Numitor**, -ōris, m., *Numitor*, king of Alba, grandfather of Romulus and Remus.  
**numquam**, adv., *never*.  
**nuno**, adv., *now*.  
**nunquam** = **numquam**.  
**nūntiō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *report, announce*.  
**nūntius**, -ī, m., *messenger; message*.  
**nūptiae**, -ārum, f. plur., *wedding, marriage ceremony*.  
**nūquam**, adv., *nowhere*.  
**nūtriō**, -ire, -ivī (-iī), -itum, *nourish, feed, foster*.  

**O**

**obferō** (offerō), -ferre, obtulī, oblātum, *offer, present, put in one's way*.  
**oblātus**, -a, -um, perf. part. of **obferō**.  
**oblītus**, -a, -um, perf. part. of **oblīviscor**, *having forgotten*.  
**obruō**, -ere, -rui, -rutum, *overwhelm, darken*.  
**obscurō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *obscure, darken*.  
**obscurus**, -a, -um, *dark, obscure*.  
**obsess**, -idis, m. or f., *hostage*.  
**obsideō**, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *besiege, beset*.  
**obsidiō**, -ōvis, f., *siege*.  
**obsum**, -esse, -suī, *am in the way, am opposed to* (dat.).  
**obtemperō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *obey, submit to*.  
**obtinsō**, -ēre, -nī, -tentum, *hold; obtain*.  
**obtulī**, perf. of **obferō**.  
**obviam**, adv., *meeting* (on a journey), *against*.  
**occāsus**, -ūs, m. (occidō), *setting* (of the sun); *west*.  
**occidō**, -ere, -cidī, -cāsūm (caedō), *fall, set*.  
**occidō**, -ere, -cidī, -eīsum (caedō), *kill*.  
**occultō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *hide, conceal*.



**occupō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *occupy, seize.*  
**occurrō**, -ere, -curri, -cursum, *run against, come upon.*  
**Oceanus**, -ī, m., *the Ocean (Atlantic).*  
**ocrea**, -ae, f., *greave, legging.*  
**octāvus**, -a, -um, *eighth.*  
**octingenti**, -ae, -a, *eight hundred.*  
**octō**, *eight.*  
**octōgintā**, *eighty.*  
**oculus**, -ī, m., *eye.*  
**odī**, -isse, *odius*, defective verb, *hate.*  
**odium**, -ī, n., *hatred.*  
**offendō**, -ere, -fendī, -fensum, *run against, meet suddenly, shock, offend.*  
**offerō** = **oferō**.  
**olim**, adv., *once upon a time, once, formerly.*  
**Olympus**, -ī, m., *Olympus, a mountain in Thessaly, supposed to be the abode of the gods.*  
**omnino**, adv., *altogether, in all, at all.*  
**omnis**, -e, *all, every.*  
**onerārius**, -a, -um, *of burden; uāvis onerāria, transport.*  
**onus**, -eris, n., *load, burden, cargo.*  
**opifer**, -fera, -ferum, *help-bringing.*  
**opifex**, -ficus, m., *workman, fabricator.*  
**oportet**, -ēre, -ult, *impersonal verb, it behooves, is right.*  
**oppidum**, -ī, n., *town.*  
**oppugnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *attack.*  
**(ops) opis**, f., *means, resource, aid; plur. opēs, resources, wealth, power.*  
**optimus**, -a, -um, *best, superl. of bonus.*  
**opus**, -eris, n., *work.*  
**ōra**, -ae, f., *coast.*  
**ōrāculum**, -ī, n., *oracle.*  
**ōrātiō**, -ōnis, f., *speech, oration; language; ōrātiōnem habeo, deliver a speech.*  
**ōrātor**, -ōris, m., *speaker, orator; spokesman.*

**orbis**, -is, m., *ring, orb; orbis terrarum, the world.*  
**Orcus**, -ī, m., *Hadēs, the underworld.*  
**ōrdior**, -īrī, *ōrsus, begin, arise.*  
**ōrdō**, -īnis, m., *order, rank.*  
**Orestēs**, -is, m., *Orestes, son of Agamemnon.*  
**orōna**, -entis, *rising; (sōl) east.*  
**orior**, -īrī, *ortus, rise.*  
**ōrnāmentum**, -ī, n., *adornment, equipment.*  
**ōrnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *adorn, equip, furnish.*  
**ornus**, -ī, f., *ash-tree.*  
**ōrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *beg, beseech.*  
**ortus**, -a, -um, *perf. part. of orior, risen.*  
**ortus**, -ūs, m., *rising.*  
**ōs**, *ōris*, n., *mouth, face.*  
**os**, *ossis*, n., *bone.*  
**ostendō**, -ere, -ndī, -tēnsum or -tentum, *show, point out.*  
**ostentō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *present to view, exhibit, display.*  
**ovis**, -is, f., *sheep.*  
**ōvum**, -ī, n., *egg.*

P

**P.** = **Pūblius**, a praenomen.  
**paciscor**, -ī, *pactus, agree, stipulate, bargain.*  
**pācō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *quiet, pacify.*  
**pactus**, -a, -um, *perf. part. of paciscor, with a passive sense, stipulated.*  
**paene**, adv., *almost, nearly.*  
**paenitet**, -ēre, -nit, *impersonal, it repents, excites to repentance.*  
**pāgus**, -ī, m., *district, canton.*  
**palam**, adv., *openly.*  
**Palatinus** (*collis*), *the Palatine, the first of the seven hills of Rome to be built upon.*  
**Palladium**, -ī, n., *the Palladium, an image of Minerva (Pallas), believed to have fallen from heaven, and kept as a guarantee of Troy's security.*  
**Pallas**, -adis, f., *Pallas, a Greek name of Minerva.*  
**palidus**, -a, -um, *pale.*

- palma**, -ae, f., *palm*.  
**paludamentum**, -i, n., *military cloak*.  
**palus**, -udis, f., *marsh, swamp*.  
**pandō**, -ere, pandi, passum (pāsum), *open, spread out*.  
**pānis**, -is, m., *bread*.  
**papāver**, -eris, n., *poppy*.  
**papyrus**, -i, f., *paper-reed, papyrus*.  
**pār**, paris, *equal*.  
**parātus**, -a, -um, perf. part. of **parō**, *ready, prepared*.  
**parō**, -ere, peperci, parsum, *spare* (governs dat.).  
**pārō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *obey*.  
**parēns**, -entis, m. or f. (pariō), *parent*.  
**pariēs**, -etis, m., *wall* (of a house).  
**pariō**, -ere, peperci, partum, *bring forth, bear; get, obtain*.  
**Paris**, -idis, m., *Paris, son of Priam, the lover of Helen, and cause of the Trojan War*.  
**pariter**, adv., *equally, side by side*.  
**Parnassus**, -i, m., *Parnassus, a mountain in Phocis, northern Greece, sacred to Apollo and the Muses. At its foot were Delphi and the Castalian spring*.  
**parō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *prepare*.  
**pars**, partis, f., *part*.  
**particeps**, -cipis, *sharing in* (governs gen.).  
**parturiō**, -ire, -ivi, *give birth to*.  
**parum**, adv., *too little*.  
**parvus**, -a, -um, *small*.  
**pācō**, -ere, pāvi, pāstum, *feed*.  
**passim**, adv., *everywhere*.  
**passus**, -a, -um, perf. part. of **patior**.  
**passus**, -ūs, m., *pace*.  
**pāstor**, -ōris, *shepherd, herder*, "cow-boy."  
**pāstus**, -ūs, m., *pasture*.  
**pāstus**, -a, -um, perf. part. of **pāscō**.  
**patefaciō**, -ere, -feci, -factum, *open*; passive, **patefiō**.  
**pateō**, -ēre, -uī, *am open, lie open*; *stretch, extend*.  
**pater**, -tris, m., *father*.  
**patiēne**, -entis, pres. part. of **patior**; used as adj., *patient*.  
**patior**, -i, passus, *suffer, allow*.  
**patria**, -ae, f., *native land, one's country*.  
**patrius**, -a, -um, *belonging to one's father, or native land; ancestral*.  
**pauci**, -ae, -a, *few*.  
**paulatim**, adv., *little by little, gradually*.  
**paulisper**, adv., *for a little while*.  
**paulō**, adv. of degree (by a) *little*; paulō post, paulō ante.  
**pauper**, -eris, *poor*.  
**pavidus**, -a, -um, *trembling, full of fear*.  
**pavor**, -ōris, m., *trembling, fear*.  
**pāx**, pācis, f., *peace*.  
**peccō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *err, sin*.  
**pectus**, -oris, n., *breast*.  
**pecūnia**, -ae, f., *money*.  
**pecus**, -udis, f., *a head of cattle; a beast; domestic animal* (sheep, goat, etc.).  
**pecus**, -oris, n., *herd, flock; cattle* (collectively).  
**pedes**, -itis, m., *foot-soldier*.  
**pedester**, -tris, -tre, *pertaining to infantry, infantry* (adj.).  
**pedica**, -ae, f., *fetter, snare, trap*.  
**peditātus**, -ūs, m., *infantry* (collectively).  
**pējor**, -us, compar. of **malus**, *worse*.  
**pelagus**, -i, n., *sea* (poetic).  
**pellis**, -is, f., *skin, fur; pelt, hide*.  
**pellō**, -ere, pepuli, puisum, *drive, banish*.  
**pendeō**, -ēre, pependi, pēsum, *hang* (intrans.).  
**pendō**, -ere, pependi, pēsum, *hang* (trans.); *weigh; pay*.  
**penes**, prep. (acc.), *in the power of*.  
**pēnsum**, -i, n., *a task* (literally, *wool weighed out as a day's work*); *lesson*.  
**pepuli**, perf. of **pellō**.  
**per**, prep. (acc.), *through*.  
**peragrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *wander through, traverse*.  
**percellō**, -ere, -culi, -cuisum, *strike; terrify*.  
**percuisus**, perf. part. of **percellō**.

- percutiō**, -ere, -cussi, -cussum, *strike violently; shock.*
- perditus**, -a, -um, perf. part. of **perdō**, *ruined, desperate.*
- perdō**, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *destroy, ruin.*
- perducō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead through, conduct.*
- peresō**, -ire, -ivī (-ī), -itum, *perish.*
- peregrinō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *ride through.*
- perfacilis**, -e, *very easy.*
- perferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *endure, bear; carry (through).*
- perficiō**, -ere, -feci, -fectum, *complete, finish.*
- perfidia**, -ae, f., *perfidy, treachery.*
- perfidus**, -a, -um, *perfidious, treacherous.*
- perfrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *blow through.*
- perfringō**, -ere, -frēgī, -fractum, *break through.*
- perfrus**, -a, -um, perf. part. of **perfrado**, -ere, -frūdī, -frusum, *besprinkled, moistened.*
- pergō**, -ere, -perxī, -perrectum, *go on, persist.*
- periculōsus**, -a, -um, *dangerous.*
- peritus**, -a, -um, *skilled (governs gen.).*
- permittō**, -ere, -misi, -missum, *intrust to.*
- permoveō**, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *move, influence.*
- permulcō**, -ēre, -mulsī, -mulsam, *soothe, soften.*
- permutātiō**, -ōnis, f., *exchange.*
- perniciōse**, -eī, f., *ruin, destruction.*
- perpauci**, -ōrum, *very few.*
- perpetuus**, -a, -um, *perpetual, lasting.*
- perpugnō**, -ere, -rūpī, -rūptum, *break through.*
- Perseus**, -eī, m., *Perseus, son of Danae and rescuer of Andromeda.*
- persona**, -ae, f., *mask.*
- perspicīō**, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, *perceive.*
- persuadeō**, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, *persuade (governs dat.).*
- perterreō**, -ēre, -terrul, -territum, *terrify, frighten.*
- pertrahō**, -ere, -trahū, *fear, dread.*
- partinēō**, -ēre, -nī, -tentum, *stretch, extend; pertain.*
- perturbō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *disturb, throw into confusion.*
- pervenīō**, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum, *arrive.*
- pēs**, pedis, m., *foot.*
- peissimus**, -a, -um, *superl. of malus, worst.*
- petō**, -ere, -petivī, -petitum, *seek.*
- Phaedrus**, -ī, m., *Phaedrus, an author of fables, a freedman of the Emperor Augustus.*
- pharetra**, -ae, f., *quiver, arrow-case.*
- Pierus**, -ī, m., *Pterus, father of the Muses.*
- piget**, -ēre, -ult, *impersonal, it grieves, vexes.*
- pilum**, -ī, n., *javelin.*
- pinguis**, -e, *fat.*
- pinna**, -ae, f., *feather.*
- pinus**, -ūs or -ī, f., *pine, fir.*
- placeō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *please.*
- plānitāse**, -eī, f., *pluin.*
- plēnus**, -a, -um, *full.*
- plērius**, -aeque, -aque (rarely sing.), *the majority, the greater number.*
- plērumque**, adv., *for the most part, usually.*
- plūs**, compar. of **multus**, *more.*
- Plūtō**, -ōnis, m., *Pluto, god of the lower world.*
- pōculum**, -ī, n., *cup, drink, draft.*
- poena**, -ae, f., *punishment, penalty.*
- Poenus** (Poenicus), -a, -um, *Carthaginian (Phoenician).*
- poēta**, -ae, m., *poet.*
- polliceor**, -ēri, *pollicitus, promise.*
- Polydectēs**, -is, m., *Polydectes, a king who married Danae.*
- pōmifer**, -fera, -ferum, *fruit-bearing.*
- Pompōsius**, -ī, m., *Pompey, a great Roman soldier, rival of Caesar.*
- Pompilius**, -ī, *Pompilius, name of one of the kings of Rome.*

- pōnō**, -ere, posuī, positum, *place*.  
**pōns**, pontis, m., *bridge*.  
**populus**, -ī, m., *a people, nation*.  
**porrigō**, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *stretch out*.  
**porta**, -ae, f., *gate, door*.  
**portō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *carry*.  
**portus**, -ūs, m., *harbor, port*.  
**poscō**, -ere, poposci, *demand*.  
**positus**, -a, -um, perf. part. of **pōnō**, *placed*.  
**possum**, posse, potuī, *am able, can*.  
**post**, prep. (acc.), *after*; adv., *afterwards*.  
**postea**, adv., *afterwards*.  
**posterus**, -a, -um, *later, following*; **posteri**, *descendants*.  
**postquam**, conj., *after*.  
**postridiā**, adv. (= posterō die), *on the following day*.  
**postulō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *demand*.  
**potēns**, -entis, *powerful*.  
**poteetas**, -ātis, f., *power, opportunity*.  
**pōtiō**, -ōnis, f., *drink*.  
**potior**, -iri, potitus, *gain possession of* (governs abl.).  
**potius**, adv., *rather*.  
**praecipio**, -ere, -cepī, -ceptum, *instruct, warn, teach*.  
**praecipuē**, adv., *especially*.  
**prasclārus**, -a, -um, *renowned, famous*.  
**praeda**, -ae, f., *prey, booty*.  
**praedicō**, -ere, -dixī, -dictum, *foretell, predict*.  
**pradicō**, -āre, -āvī, -atum, *assert, declare openly, announce, proclaim*.  
**praedō**, -ōnis, m., *plunderer, robber, pirate*.  
**praeficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *appoint over, put in command of* (governs acc. and dat.).  
**praemittō**, -ere, -misi, -missum, *send forward*.  
**praemium**, -ī, n., *reward, prize*.  
**praecertim**, adv., *especially*.  
**praesidaō**, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *preside* (governs dat.).  
**praesidium**, -ī, n., *protection, guard*.  
**praelō**, -āre, -stitī, -stitum, (1) *show*; (2) *impersonal, praestat, it is better*.  
**prassum**, -esse, -fui, -futurus, *am at the head of, command* (governs dat.).  
**praeter**, prep. (acc.), *past*; *except*.  
**praeterea**, adv., *besides*.  
**praetereō**, -ire, -ivi (-iī), -itum, *pass*.  
**prastexta** (toga), *toga praetexta*, worn by senators and boys; bordered with purple.  
**praeustus**, -a, -um, perf. part. of **praeūrō**, *burnt at the end, burnt to a point*.  
**prātum**, -ī, n., *meadow*.  
**precōe**, plur. of **prex**, f., *prayers, treaties*.  
**precor**, -ārī, -ātus, *pray, entreat*.  
**prehendō**, -ere, -hendī, -hensum, *seize, grasp*.  
**premo**, -ere, pressi, pressum, *press*.  
**pretium**, -ī, n., *price*.  
**(prex, precis) preci**, nom. and gen. not in use, f., *prayer, entreaty*.  
**Priamus**, -ī, m., *Priam, king of Troy*.  
**primus**, -a, -um, *first*.  
**princeps**, -cipis, m., *chief*.  
**pristinus**, -a, -um, *former, previous*.  
**prior**, -ōris, *previous, first of two*.  
**prius**, adv., *sooner, before*.  
**priusquam**, conj., *sooner than, before*.  
**prō**, prep. (abl.), *in front of*; *in defence of, for*; *in return for*; *instead of*.  
**prōcedō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *proceed*.  
**procella**, -ae, f., *storm-blast, squall*.  
**procul**, adv., *afar*.  
**prōditiō**, -ōnis, f., *betrayal, treason*.  
**prōdō**, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *betray*.  
**proelior**, -ārī, -ātus, *fight*.  
**proelium**, -ī, n., *battle*.  
**prōferō**, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, *carry forward*.  
**proficiscor**, -ī, -sectus, *set out*.  
**prōgredior**, -ī, -gressus, *go forward, advance*.

**prohibeō**, -ēre, -hibēre, -hibitum, *prevent*.  
**prōiciō**, -ere, -jēci, -jectum, *throw forward*.  
**prōmissus**, -a, -um (prōmittō) (of hair), *allowed to stream loose, flowing*.  
**prōmoveō**, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *move forward*.  
**prōnūntiō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *declare*.  
**prope**, adv. and prep. (acc.), *near*.  
**prōpellō**, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *propel, move forward*.  
**properē**, adv., *in haste, speedily*.  
**properō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *hasten*.  
**propter**, prep. (acc.), *on account of*.  
**Prōserpina**, -ae, f., *Proserpina*, daughter of Ceres and Jupiter, and wife of Pluto.  
**prōsum**, prōd-esse, prō-fuī, prō-futūrus, *am serviceable (governs dat.)*.  
**prōterō**, -ere, -trivī, -trītum (terō, *rab*), *tread close behind, trample on*.  
**prōvincia**, -ae, f., *province*.  
**proximus**, -a, -um, *nearest, next*.  
**prūdēs**, -dentis, *foreseeing, prudent*.  
**prūdētia**, -ae, f., *foresight*.  
**pruina**, -ae, f., *hour frost*.  
**pūblicānus**, -ī, m., *farmer of taxes*.  
**pūblicus**, -a, -um, *public*.  
**Pūblius**, -ī, m., *Pablius*, a praenomen.  
**puDET**, -ēre, -nit, *impersonal, it shames*.  
**puDor**, -ōris, m., *shame, modesty*.  
**puella**, -ae, f., *girl*.  
**puer**, -erī, m., *boy, child*.  
**puerculus**, -ī, m., *little boy*.  
**pugna**, -ae, f., *fight, battle*.  
**pugnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *fight*.  
**pulcher**, -chra, -chrum, *beautiful*.  
**pulchritūdō**, -inis, f., *beauty*.  
**pulvis**, -eris, m., *dust*.  
**pūniō**, -īre, -ivī, -itum, *punish*.  
**puppis**, -is, f., *stern*.  
**puteue**, -ī, m., *well, pit*.  
**putō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *think*.  
**Pyrenaeus**, -a, -um, *Pyrenean*.

Q

**quā**, a *iv.*, (by) *which, who, where*.  
**quaer**, -ere, quaesivī, -atum, *seek, inquire*.  
**quālie**, -e, interrog. or rel. adj., *of what kind, of which kind, as*.  
**quam**, (1) conj., *than*; (2) rel. adv., *as* (modifying an adj. or adv. and expressing degree); (3) interrog. adv., *how* (of degree).  
**quamdiū**, conj., *as long as*; adv., *how long*.  
**quamquam**, conj., *although*.  
**quandō**, *when; since* (of cause).  
**quantus**, -a, -um, interrog. or rel. adj., *how great; as great, as*.  
**quārtus**, -a, -um, *fourth*.  
**quaternī**, -ae, -a, distrib. numeral, *four at a time*.  
**quattuor**, *four*.  
**-que**, enclitic conj., *and*.  
**quercus**, -ūs, f., *an oak*.  
**quī**, quae, quod, (1) rel. pron. or adj., *who, which, what*, (2) interrog. adj., *which, what*.  
**quia**, conj., *because*.  
**quicumque**, quaecumque, quidecumque or quodcumque, indef. rel. pron. or adj., *whoever, whatever*.  
**quidam**, quaedam, quiddam or quoddam, indef. pron. or adj., *a certain one*.  
**quidem**, adv., *indeed; nō . . . quidem, not even* (enclosing the words emphasized).  
**quiēs**, -ētis, f., *rest, quiet*.  
**quilibet**, quaeilibet, quidlibet or quodlibet, indef. pron. or adj., *any whatever, any at all, any you like*.  
**quīn**, conj., in independ. clause, *why not, nay indeed*; in depend. clause, *but that* (see p. 352).  
**quingentī**, -ae, -a, *five hundred*.  
**quingentissimus**, -a, -um, *five hundredth*.  
**quingentesimus**, -a, -um, *fiftieth*.  
**quingentā**, *fifty*.  
**quinque**, *five*.  
**quintus**, -a, -um, *fifth*.

- quis**, quid, (1) interrog. pron., *who, what*; (2) indef. pron. after *sī, nē, nisi*, (fem. adj. *qua*), *any, anyone*.
- quiesquam**, quaequam, quidquam (quicquam), indef. pron., *any, anyone, anything*, in a negative connection.
- quisque**, quaeque, quidque or quodque, indef. pron. or adj., *each, every*.
- quivīs**, quaevis, quidvis or quodvis, indef. pron. or adj., *anyone, whatever, anyone you please*.
- quō**, (1) adv. and conj., *whither*; (2) abl. rel. pron. used as conj., *in order that* (instead of *ut* with comparatives).
- quod**, conj., (1) *because*; (2) *the fact that*.
- quōminus**, conj., *by which the less*, used with verbs of hindering.
- quōmodo**, adv., *how*.
- quondam**, adv., *formerly, once*.
- quoniam**, conj., *since, because*.
- quoque**, conj., *also*.
- quot**, indecl. interrog. or rel. adj., *how many, as many*.
- R**
- rādix**, -icis, f., *root*.
- rāna**, -ae, f., *frog*.
- rapīō**, -ere, rapuī, raptum, *seize, carry off*.
- ratiō**, -ōnis, f., *reason, plan*.
- ratis**, -is, f., *raft*.
- rebelliō**, -ōnis, f., *renewal of war*.
- recēnsiō**, -ere, -uī, -cēnsu, i, *review*.
- recordor**, -ārī, -ātus, *recall, recollect*.
- rēctē**, adv., *rightly, properly*; compar. **rēctive**.
- recurrō**, -ere, -currī, -cursum, *run back, return*.
- recūsō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *refuse, object*.
- reddō**, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *give back, return*.
- reddūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead back, bring back*.
- redeō**, -ire, -ivī (-iī), -itum, *go back, return*.
- redintegrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *renew*.
- reditus**, -ūs, m., *return*.
- referō**, -ferre, rettulī, relatum, *carry back, refer*.
- rēfert**, rēferre, rētulit, impersonal, *it concerns*.
- reſciō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *repair, rebuild*.
- rēgia**, -ae, f., *royal palace* (= *rēgia domus*); from adj. **rēgius**, -a, -uum, *royal*.
- rēgina**, -ae, f., *queen*.
- regiō**, -ōnis, f., *region*.
- rēgnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *reign*.
- rēgnum**, -ī, n., *kingdom, kingship, sovereignty*.
- regō**, -ere, rēxī, rēctum, *rule*.
- Rēgulus**, -ī, m., *Regulus*, the hero of the First Punic War.
- rēiciō**, -ere, rējēcī, rējectum, *throw back*.
- reſlābor**, -ī, -lāpsus, *slip back*.
- religiō**, -ōnis, f., *religion*.
- relinquō**, -ere, -liquī, -lictum, *leave*.
- reliquiae**, -ārum, f., *remains*.
- reliquae**, -a, -uum, *remaining*.
- remaneō**, -ēre, -mānsī, -māsum, *remain*.
- rēmex**, -igis, m., *rower, oarsman*.
- rēmigō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *row*.
- remigrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *return*.
- remiſcor**, -ī, *remember* (governs gen.).
- remittō**, -ere, -misi, -missum, *send back*.
- Remus**, -ī, m., *Remus*, brother of Romulus.
- rēmue**, -ī, m., *oar*.
- reſūntiō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *report*.
- repsillō**, -ere, reppuī, -pulsum, *drive back*.
- reperiō**, -ire, repperī, repertum, *discover, find*.
- rēs**, rei, f., *thing, matter, affair*.
- reecindō**, -ere, -scidī, -scissum, *tear down, destroy*.
- reſiſtō**, -ere, -stitī, -stitum, *resist* (governs dat.).
- reſpondeō**, -ēre, -spondī, -spōsum, *answer, reply*.

**respōnsūm**, -ī, n., a reply.  
**rēs pūblica**, rei pūblicae, f., commonwealth, public interest.  
**restituō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, restore.  
**restrahō**, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctum, draw back, drag back.  
**revertor**, -ī, -versus, return.  
**revocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, recall.  
**rēx**, rēgis, m., king.  
**Rhēa**, -ae, f., Rhea, mother of Romulus.  
**Rhēnus**, -ī, m., Rhine.  
**Rhodanus**, -ī, m., Rhone.  
**ridēō**, -ēre, rīsī, risum, laugh, laugh at (governs acc.).  
**rigō**, -ēre, am stiff, frozen.  
**ripa**, -ae, f., bank (of a river).  
**rīvus**, -ī, m., stream.  
**rōbur**, -oris, n., oak, strength.  
**rōbustus**, -a, -um, strong, robust.  
**rogātū**, at the request.  
**rogō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, ask.  
**Rōma**, -ae, f., Rome.  
**Rōmānus**, -a, -um, Roman.  
**Rōmulus**, -ī, m., Romulus, founder of Rome.  
**rōstrum**, -ī, n., beak, prow (of a ship).  
**rota**, -ae, f., wheel.  
**rubr**, -bra, -brum, red.  
**rūgōsus**, -a, -um (rūga), full of wrinkles, wrinkled.  
**rūmor**, -ōris, m., rumor, hearsay.  
**rumpō**, -ere, rūpī, ruptum, break.  
**ruō**, -ere, rūī, rutum, rush; fall to ruin.  
**rūpēs**, -is, f., rock, cliff.  
**rūrsus**, adv., again.  
**rūs**, rūris, n., the country; rural district.

**S**

**Sabinus**, -a, -um, Sabine, designating a people of Italy adjoining the Latins.  
**sacr**, -era, -erum, sacred.  
**sacerdōs**, -ōtis, m. or f., priest, priestess.  
**saepe**, adv., often.  
**sasvus**, -a, -um, savage, cruel.  
**sagax**, -ācis, shrewd, sagacious.  
**sagitta**, -ae, f., arrow.

**sagittārius**, -ī, m., archer, Bowman.  
**sagum**, -ī, n., military cloak.  
**sāl**, salis, m., salt.  
**saliō**, -ire, -uī, leap.  
**saltus**, -ūs, m., woodland pasture; mountain pass.  
**salūs**, -ūtis, f., safety, health, welfare.  
**salūtō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, greet.  
**Samnis**, -ītis, Samnite, of Samnium, a district of Italy.  
**sanguis**, -inis, m., blood.  
**sānus**, -a, -um, sound, sane, healthy.  
**sapiēns**, -entis, wise.  
**sarcinas**, -ārūm, f. plur., personal baggage (of a soldier).  
**satiō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, satisfy.  
**satis** (or **sat**), adv., enough.  
**satisfaciō**, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, satisfy, make amends to.  
**Sātūrnus**, -ī, Saturn, father of Jupiter.  
**satus**, -a, -um, perf. part. of **srō**; sown, planted; descended from, son of.  
**saxum**, -ī, n., stone, rock.  
**scelus**, -eris, n., crime, wickedness.  
**schola**, -ae, f., school.  
**sciantia**, -ae, f., knowledge, skill.  
**sciō**, -ire, -īvī, -itum, know.  
**Scipiō**, -ōnis, Scipio, name of a noble Roman family.  
**scribō**, -ere, scripsī, scriptum, write.  
**scriptor**, -ōris, m., writer.  
**scūtum**, -ī, n., shield.  
**sē**, acc. or abl. of reflex. pron. **sui**, himself, herself, itself, themselves.  
**secō**, -āre, -uī, sectum, cut.  
**sector**, -ārī, -ātus, follow continually, chase, pursue.  
**secundus**, -a, -um, following, second; favorable.  
**secūris**, -is, f., axe.  
**sed**, conj., but.  
**sēdecim**, sixteen.  
**sedēō**, -ēre, sedī, sessum, sit.  
**sedēs**, -is, f., seat, abode, home.  
**sellula**, -ae, f. (sella), little seat.  
**seol**.  
**semper**, adv., always.

- senātus**, -ūs, m., *senate*; **senātūs cōnsultum**, *decree of the senate*.  
**senectūs**, -ūtis, f., *old age*.  
**sensx**, *senis, old (of persons)*.  
**sēnsus**, -ūs, m., *sense*.  
**sentīō**, -ire, sēnsī, sēnsūm, *feel, perceive, think*.  
**sepeliō**, -ire, -ivī, sepultum, *bury*.  
**septem**, indecl., *seven*.  
**septimus**, -a, -um, *seventh*.  
**septingentissimus**, -a, -um, *seven hundredth*.  
**septingenti**, -ae, -a, *seven hundred*.  
**septuagēsimus**, -a, -um, *seventieth*.  
**septuagintā**, indecl., *seventy*.  
**sepulchrum**, -ī, n., *burial-place, tomb, sepulchre*.  
**sequor**, -ī, secūtus, *follow*.  
**sermō**, -ōnis, m., *speech, conversation*.  
**serō**, adv., *late, too late*.  
**sero**, -ere, serui, sertum, *join, plait, weave*.  
**serō**, -ere, sēvī, satum, *sow, plant*.  
**sertum**, -ī, n., *garland, wreath*.  
**serviō**, -ire, -ivī (-ii), -itum, *serve*.  
**servō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *save*.  
**servus**, -ī, m., *slave*.  
**sescentissimus**, -a, -um, *six hundredth*.  
**sescenti**, -ae, -a, *six hundred*.  
**sevērus**, -a, -um, *serious, grave, severe, strict*.  
**sexagēsimus**, -a, -um, *sixtieth*.  
**sexagintā**, indecl., *sixty*.  
**sxtus**, -a, -um, *sixth*.  
**si**, conj., *if*.  
**sibi**, dat. of reflex. pron. **sui**.  
**sic**, adv., *so, thus*.  
**siccus**, -a, -um, *dry*.  
**Sicilia**, -ae, f., *Sicily*.  
**sicut**, adv., *just as*.  
**sidus**, -eris, n., *group of stars, constellation*.  
**signifer**, -ferī, m., *standard-bearer*.  
**signum**, -ī, n., *image; standard; signal*.  
**silentium**, -ī, n., *silence*.  
**silva**, -ae, f., *a wood, forest*.
- Silvanus**, -ī, m., *Silvanus, a deity of the woods*.  
**silvaster**, -tris, -tre, *wooded*.  
**similis**, -e, *like*.  
**simul**, adv., *at the same time*; as a conj. = **simul atque**, *at the same time as, as soon as*.  
**simulacrum**, -ī, n., *shrine, image*.  
**simulō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *pretend*.  
**sine**, prep. (abl.), *without*.  
**singull**, -ae, -a, distrib. numeral, *one at a time*.  
**sinister**, -tra, -trum, *left, on the left hand*.  
**sinō**, -ere, sivi, situm, *allow, permit*.  
**sitiō**, -ire, -ivī, *am thirsty*.  
**sitis**, -is, f., *thirst*.  
**socr**, -erī, m., *father-in-law*.  
**socius**, -ī, m., *compunion, partner, associate*.  
**sōl**, sōlis, m., *sun*.  
**soleō**, -ēre, solitus sum, semi-depon., *am accustomed*.  
**solum**, adv., *only*.  
**solum**, -ī, n., *soil, ground*.  
**solus**, -a, -um, *alone*.  
**solvō**, -ere, solvi, solūtum, *loosen, release, cast off (of a ship)*.  
**somnus**, -ī, m., *sleep*.  
**soror**, -ōris, f., *sister*.  
**sors**, sortis, f., *lot, casting of lots*.  
**sortior**, -īri, sortitus, *cast lots, choose by lot*.  
**spciōs**, -ōi, f., *appearance*.  
**spcctō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *look at*.  
**spērō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *hope*.  
**spēs**, spēi, f., *hope*.  
**spirō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *breathe*.  
**splendidus**, -a, -um, *splendid*.  
**spoliō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *rob*.  
**spūma**, -ae, f., *foam*.  
**stabulum**, -ī, n., *stall, stable*.  
**statim**, adv., *at once, immediately*.  
**stella**, -ae, f., *star*.  
**stō**, stāre, steti, stātum, *stand*.  
**strōnuus**, -a, -um, *strenuous, active*.  
**strapitus**, -ūs, m., *noise, din*.  
**strapō**, -ere, -ui, *make a noise, rattle*.



**stringō**, -ere, strīnxī, strictum, (1) *bind, draw tight*; (2) *strip bare*; draw (a sword).  
**studsō**, -ēre, -uī, *am anxious for, fond of, bent upon* (governs dat.).  
**studium**, -ī, n., *desire, zeal*.  
**stultitia**, -ae, f., *folly, foolishness*.  
**stultus**, -a, -um, *foolish*.  
**suāvis**, -e, *sweet, pleasant*; adv., *suāviter*.  
**sub**, prep. (acc. or abl.), *under*.  
**subducō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *draw up*.  
**subitō**, adv., *suddenly*.  
**sublātus**, -a, -um, perf. part. of **tollō**, *raised, removed*.  
**subministrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *furnish, supply*.  
**submovsō**, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *move away, dislodge*.  
**submitō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send to the rescue*.  
**subsequor**, -ī, -secūtus, *follow up*.  
**subveniō**, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *aid, help, come to the aid of* (governs dat.).  
**succinctus**, -a, -um, *girt, encircled*.  
**sudis**, -is, f., *sake*.  
**sūdor**, -ōris, m., *sweat*.  
**suī**, sibi, sē, reflex. pron., *of himself, of herself, of itself, of themselves*.  
**sum**, esse, fuī, futūrus, *I am*.  
**summa**, -ae, f., *top, sum total, pre-eminence*.  
**summus**, -a, -um, *topmost, highest*.  
**sūmō**, -ere, sūmptī, sūmptum, *take*.  
**sūmptus**, -ūs, m., *expense, cost*.  
**super**, prep. (acc. or abl.), *above, over*.  
**superbus**, -a, -um, *proud*.  
**superior**, -ius, compar. of **suprus**, (1) *upper*; (2) *previous*.  
**superō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *overcome, conquer*.  
**supersum**, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, *survive, remain only*.  
**suprus**, -a, -um, *upper*. **Superi**, -ōrum, *the gods*.  
**supplicium**, -ī, n., *penalty, punishment* (usually of death).

**suprā**, adv., *above*; prep. (acc.), *above, beyond*.  
**suprēmus**, -a, -um, superl. of **superus**, *uppermost*; *final, last*.  
**sūs**, suis, m. or f., *swine, pig*.  
**suscipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *undertake*.  
**suspīcor**, -ārī, -ātus, *suspect*.  
**sustineō**, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, *sustain, withstand*.  
**sūtor**, -ōris, m., *one who sews, cobbler*.  
**suus**, -a, -um, *his (own), her (own), their (own)*, referring to the subject.

T

**T** = **Titus**, a praenomen.  
**tabernāculum**, -ī, n., *tent*.  
**taceō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *am silent*.  
**taciturnus**, -a, -um, *habitually silent*.  
**tacitus**, -a, -um, *silent*.  
**tāctus**, -a, -um, perf. part. of **tangō**, *touched*.  
**tadet**, -ēre, -uit, impersonal, *it wears*.  
**talentum**, -ī, n., *talent, weight of gold or silver*; usually about \$1200.  
**tālis**, -e, *such* (in kind).  
**tam**, adv. of degree, *so*.  
**tamen**, adv., *nevertheless, however*.  
**tandem**, adv., *at last*.  
**tangō**, -ere, tetigī, tāctum, *touch*.  
**tantus**, -a, -um, *so great, so large*.  
**tardus**, -a, -um, *slow*.  
**Tarpēia**, -ae, f., *Tarpeia*, daughter of Tarpelus; the maiden who betrayed the Roman citadel to the Sabines.  
**Tarquinius**, -ī, m., *Tarquinius*, the name of two Roman kings.  
**tāctum**, -ī, n., *roof, dwelling, home*.  
**tegō**, -ere, tēxī, tēctum, *cover*.  
**Tēlemachus**, -ī, m., *Telemachus*, the son of Ulysses.  
**tellūs**, -ūris, f., *the earth*.  
**tēlum**, -ī, n., *missile, dart, weapon*.  
**temprō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *control, restrain*.  
**tempestās**, -ātis, f., (1) *weather*; (2) *storm*.

- templum, -ī, n., *temple*.  
 tempus, -oris, n., *time*.  
 tenax, -ācis, *tenacious*.  
 tenebrae, -ārum, f. plur., *darkness*.  
 teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentum, *hold*.  
 tener, -era, -erum, *tender*.  
 tenuis, -e, *thin, slender, frail*.  
 tergum, -i, n., *back*.  
 terni, -ae, -a, distrib. numeral, *three at a time; terua castra, three camps*.  
 terra, -ae, f., *land, earth*.  
 terrestis, -tris, -tre, *earthly, belonging to land*.  
 terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *frighten, terrify*.  
 terror, -ōris, m., *terror, fright*.  
 testis, -is, m., *witness*.  
 testūdō, -inis, f., (1) *tortoise*; (2) *testudo*, i. e., a protection formed by locking shields over head. |  
 Tibis, -eris, m., *Tiber*, the river flowing through Rome.  
 timō, -ēre, -uī, *fear*.  
 timor, -ōris, m., *fear*.  
 toga, -ae, f., *toga*.  
 togātus, -a, -um, *clad in the toga*.  
 tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublatum, *lift, raise, remove*.  
 tormentum, -ī, n., *engine of war*.  
 torqueō, -ēre, torsi, tortum, *twist, bend, whirl*.  
 tot, indecl., *so many*.  
 totiō, adv., *so often*.  
 tōtus, -a, um, *whole*.  
 trabs, -is, f., *beam*.  
 tradō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *hand over, surrender*.  
 tragicus, -a, -um, *tragic*.  
 trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum, *draw, drag*.  
 trāciō, -ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *throw across; cross*.  
 trāus, prep. (acc.), *across*.  
 trāussō, -īre, -ivī (-ii), -itum, *cross*.  
 trānsportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *carry across*.  
 trecentī, -ae, -a, *three hundred*.  
 tredecim, indecl., *thirteen*.  
 trēs, tria, *three*.  
 tribuō, -ere, -nī, -ūtum, *give, assign*.  
 tricōsimus, -a, -um, *three hundredth*.  
 triformis, -e, *of triple form*.  
 trigintā, indecl., *thirty*.  
 trini, -ae, -a, distrib. numeral, *three at a time*.  
 triplex, -plicis, *threefold, triple*.  
 tristis, -e, *sad, gloomy*.  
 Trōja, -ae, f., *Troy*.  
 Trōjanus, -a, -um, *Trojan*.  
 tū, tuī, tibi, *thou*.  
 tuba, -ae, f., *trumpet*.  
 tugurium, -ī, n., *hut*.  
 tull, perf. of ferō.  
 tum, adv., *then*.  
 tumulus, -ī, m., *mound, hill*.  
 tuuc, adv., = tum, *then*.  
 turba, -ae, f., *crowd, throng*.  
 turbidus, -a, -um, *stormy*.  
 turbō, -inis, m., *whirlwind*.  
 turbulentus, -a, -um, *disturbed; (of water), muddy*.  
 turgidus, -a, -um, *turgid, swollen*.  
 turpis, -e, *disgraceful, base*.  
 turris, -is, f., *tower*.  
 tuus, -a, -um, *thy, your*.
- U
- ubi, conj. or adv., (1) *where*; (2) *when*.  
 Ulixēs, -is, m., *Ulysses*.  
 ullus, -a, -um, gen. -ius, dat. -ī, *any*.  
 ulterior, *farther*.  
 ultimus, -a, -um, *last, uttermost*.  
 ultra, adv. or prep. (acc.), *beyond*.  
 ululātus, -ūs, m., *howl, shriek*.  
 umbra, -ae, f., *shade*.  
 unda, -ae, f., *wave*.  
 unde, conj. or adv., *whence*.  
 undiqus, adv., *from all sides*.  
 unguis, -is, m., *nail, claw*.  
 ūnicus, -a, -um, *sole, only*.  
 ūnus, -a, -um, gen. -ius, dat. -ī, *one, alone*.  
 urbs, -is, f., *city*.  
 urgeō, -ēre, *press upon, urge*.  
 ūrō, -ere, ussī, ūstum, *burn*.  
 ursus, -i, m., *bear*.

**ūsque**, adv., *all the way* (to or from), *right* (to or from).  
**ut** (utī), conj., (1) with the subjunctive, *that, in order that* (of purpose or result); (2) with indicative, *as, when*.  
**uter**, -tra, -trum, gen. -ius, dat. -ī, *which of two?*  
**ūter**, -tris, m., *bag, sack* (of skin).  
**uterque**, -traque, -trumque, *each of two, both*.  
**ūtilis**, -e, *useful*.  
**utinam**, adv., *Would that! O that!* introducing a wish.  
**ūtor**, -ī, ūsus, *use* (governs abl.).  
**ūva**, -ae, f., *grape, bunch of grapes*.  
**uxor**, -ōris, *wife, mate*.

V

**vacō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *lie vacant, be vacant*.  
**vagor**, -ārī, -ātus, *wander*.  
**vagus**, -a, -um, *wandering*.  
**valdē**, adv., *emphatically, strongly, by all means*.  
**valeō**, -ēre, -uī, *am strong, able, in good health*.  
**valētūdō**, -inis, f., *health*.  
**validus**, -a, -um, *strong*.  
**vallis**, -is, f., *valley*.  
**vallum**, -ī, *wall, rampart*.  
**vās**, vāsis, n., *vessel, vase, jar*.  
**vāstō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *lay waste, devastate*.  
**-vs**, enclitic conj., *or*.  
**vectigal**, -ālīs, n., *tax, revenue*.  
**vectus**, -a, -um, perf. part. of **vebō**, *carried*.  
**vel**, conj., *either, or*.  
**vēlum**, -ī, n., *sail*.  
**vēnātor**, -ōris, m., *hunter*; **vēnātrix**, -icis, f., *huntress*.  
**vēndō**, -ere, -didī, -ditum (vēnum, *sale*; dō), *sell*.  
**venēnum**, -ī, n., *poison, drug*.  
**vēnōō**, -īre, -ivī (-iī), -itum (vēnum, *sale*; eō), *am sold, used instead of vëndor*; supine of doubtful occurrence.  
**venia**, -ae, f., *indulgence, pardon, consideration*.

**vaniō**, -īre, vēnī, ventum, *come*.  
**ventus**, -ī, m., *wind*.  
**Venus**, -eris, f., *Venus, goddess of love and beauty*.  
**vēr**, vēris, n., *spring*.  
**verberō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *beat*.  
**verbum**, -ī, n., *word*.  
**versor**, -ērī, veritus, *fear*.  
**vēritās**, -ātis, f., *truth*.  
**vērō**, adv., *truly, but indeed, but, however*.  
**verrō**, -ere, verri, versum, *sweep*.  
**vereor**, -ārī, -ātus, *dwell, move, stay, operate*.  
**vertō**, -ere, vertī, versum, *turn*.  
**verū**, -ūs, n., *a spit, pin* (for roasting meat).  
**vērus**, -a, -um, *true, fair, just*.  
**Vesta**, -ae, f., *Vesta, goddess of the hearth and home*.  
**vester**, -tra, -trum, *your, addressed to more than one*.  
**vētiginm**, -ī, n., *footstep, track*.  
**vestiō**, -īre, -ivī, -itum, *clothe*.  
**vestis**, -is, f., *garment*.  
**vestitus**, -ūs, m., *clothing*.  
**vetō**, -āre, -nī, -itum, *forbid*.  
**vetus**, -eris, *old*.  
**vēxillum**, -ī, n., *flag*.  
**via**, -ae, f., *way*.  
**viātor**, -ōris, m., *traveller*.  
**viciniae**, -a, -um, *neighboring*; **vicinus**, -ī, m., *neighbor*.  
**vicis** (gen.; nom. does not occur; acc. vicem, abl. vice, plur. vicēs, vicibus), f., *change, alternation*.  
**victor**, -ōris, m., *conqueror*.  
**victōria**, -ae, f., *victory*.  
**vicus**, -ī, m., *village*.  
**videō**, -ēre, vidī, vīsum, *see*; **videor**, (1) *am seen*; (2) *seem*.  
**vigil**, -ilis, m., *watchman, sentry*.  
**vigilia**, -ae, f., *watch* (one-fourth of the night).  
**vigilō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *am awake, watch*.  
**viginti**, indecl., *twenty*.  
**vinciō**, -īre, vinxī, vinctum, *bind*.  
**vincō**, -ere, vicī, victum, *conquer, defeat*.

- vindicō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *revenge, punish.*  
**vinea**, -ae, f., *shed, shelter, mantlet* (used in war).  
**vinolentus**, -a, -um, *full of wine, drunk.*  
**vinum**, -i, n., *wine.*  
**violō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *violate.*  
**vir**, virī, m., *man* (as opposed to a child or woman).  
**virgō**, -inis, f., *maiden, virgin.*  
**virilis**, -e, *manly, belonging to manhood.*  
**virtūs**, -ūtis, f., *manliness, manhood; goodness, virtue, excellence; courage, valor.*  
**vīrus**, -ī, n., *poison.*  
**vis**, acc. vim, abl. vī, plur. virēs, virium, etc.; sing., *force, power, violence, strength; plur., bodily strength.*  
**visō**, -ere, visī, visum (videō), *go to see, visit.*  
**vita**, -ae, f., *life.*  
**vitis**, -is, f., *vine.*  
**vitium**, -i, n., *fault, defect, vice.*  
**vitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *avoid.*  
**vitreus**, -a, -um, *glassy, sea-green.*  
**vivō**, -ere, vixi, victum, *live.*
- vivus**, -a, -um, *living, alive.*  
**vix**, adv., *scarcely, with difficulty.*  
**vocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *call.*  
**volō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *fly.*  
**volō**, velle, volūi, *wish.*  
**Volsci**, -ōrum, m., *the Volscians, neighbors and enemies of the early Romans.*  
**volucer**, -cris, -ere, *flying, winged.*  
**voluntās**, -ātis, f., *wish, intention.*  
**voluptās**, -ātis, f., *pleasure.*  
**Volusēnus**, -ī, m., *Volusenus, a tribune in Caesar's army.*  
**voveō**, -ēre, vōvī, vōtum, *vow.*  
**vōx**, vōcis, *voice, word, utterance.*  
**Vulcānus**, -ī, m., *Vulcan, god of fire.*  
**vulgus**, -ī, n., *crowd, common people, the masses.*  
**vulnerō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *wound.*  
**vulpēs**, -is, f., *fox.*  
**vultus**, -ūs (or *voltus*), m., *countenance, face, features.*
- Z
- Zama**, -ae, f., *Zama, town in Africa, celebrated as the scene of Scipio's great victory over Hannibal.*  
**Zephyrus**, -ī, m., *a gentle west wind, the west wind, zephyr.*

ity.

ans,  
early

ed.  
n.

trib-

.  
re.  
ole,

.  
te-

ca,  
at  
d,

VOCABULARY  
ENGLISH-LATIN



# VOCABULARY

## ENGLISH-LATIN

For principal parts of verbs, where not given, see Latin-English Vocabulary.

### A

- am **able**, possum, posse, potuī.  
**about**, (1) = *around*, circum (acc.); (2) = *concerning*, de (abl.); (3) with numbers, circiter.  
**above**, super, suprā (acc.).  
**absent**, absēns; **am absent**, absum.  
on **account of**, propter (acc.).  
**accuse**, accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**accustomed**, assuēfactus, -a, -um.  
**am accustomed**, soleō, -ēre, solitus sum; cōsuēvī, perf. of cōsuēscō.  
**achievement**, rēs gesta.  
**acquit**, absolvō, -ere, solvī, -solūtum.  
**acre**, jūgerum, -ī, n.  
**across**, trāns (acc.).  
It is **added**, accēdit, see p. 318.  
**adherent**, cliēns, -entis, m.  
**admonish**, admonēō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.  
**adorn**, ornō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**Adriatic**, Hadria, -ae, m.  
**advance**, prōgredior, -i, -gressus.  
**advise**, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.  
**affair**, rēs, rei, f.  
**affirm**, affirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**Africa**, Africa, -ae, f.  
**after**, post (acc.).  
**afterwards**, postea.  
**against**, contrā (acc.).  
**age**, aetās, -ātis, f.  
(old) **age**, senectūs, -ūtis, f.  
**ago**, abbinē.  
**agreed** (It is), cōnstat.  
**agriculture**, agricultūra, -ae, f.  
**aid**, auxiliū, -ī, n.  
**I aid**, subveniō (dat.); adjuvō (acc.).
- air**, aēr, -eris, m.  
**alarmed** (am), vereor, timeō.  
**all**, omnis, tōtus (= *whole*).  
**allow**, patior, sinō.  
**alone**, adj., sōlus; adv., solum.  
**Alpe**, Alpēs, -ium, f.  
**already**, jam.  
**aleo**, quoque, etiam.  
**altar**, āra, -ae, f.  
**although**, quamquam, quamvis, etsi, licet, ut, cum, see p. 359.  
**always**, semper.  
**am**, sum, esse, fui, futūrus.  
**ambassador**, lēgātus, -ī, m.  
**ambush**, insidiae, -arum, f.  
**among**, inter (acc.); apud (acc.).  
**ancestors**, mājorēs, -um, m.  
**anchor**, ancora, -ae, f.  
**ancient**, antiquus, -a, -um.  
**and**, et, -que, atque, ac.  
**announce**, nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**annoyed** (am), graviter ferō.  
**another**, alius, -a, -ud.  
**answer**, respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -dusum; **an answer**, respōsum.  
**any**, (1) after **si**, **if**, and **nō**, *lest*, quis; (2) in a negative connection, quisquam; (3) **any** (whatever), **quīvis**, **quilibet**.  
**anyone**, see **any**.  
**appear** (*seem*), videor.  
**appearance**, speciēs, eī, f., figurā, -ae, f.  
**apple**, mālum, n. (the fruit).  
**apple-tree**, mālus, -ī, f.  
**appoint** (over), praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum (dat. of *that over which*).

- archer**, sagittarius, -i, m.  
**arena**, arēna, -ae, f.  
**arise**, orior, -īri, ortus.  
**arm**, brachium, -i, n.  
**armed**, armatus, -i, -um.  
**armor**, arma, -ōrum, n. plur.  
**armor-bearer**, armiger, -geri, m.  
**arms**, arma, -ōrum, n. plur.  
**army**, exercitus, -ūs, m.; on the march, agmen, -mīlīs, n.  
**around**, circum (acc.).  
**arrive**, perveniō (ad), adveniō, -īre, -veni, -ventum.  
**arrow**, sagitta, -ae, f.  
**art**, ars, artis, f.  
**as**, ut (with ludic.); (correl. of tam), quam; **as many as**, quot; **as much as**, quantus; (**such**) **as**, quālis; **as long as**, quamdiū, dum, donec, quoad.  
**ascend**, ascendō, -era, -endi, -ēsum.  
**ascertain**, cognoscō, -ere, cognōvī, cognitum.  
**ashamed** (I am), pudet mē.  
**ash-tree**, ornus, -i, f.  
**ask**, rogō, petō (*seek*), quaerō.  
**assemble** (1) intrans., conveniō; (2) trans., convocō, contrahō, cōgō, colligō.  
**assembly**, concellum, -i, n.  
**at last**, tandem.  
**Athens**, Athēnae, -arum, f.  
**Atlantic Ocean**, Oceanus, -i, m.  
**attack**, noun, impetus, -ūs, m.  
**I attack**, impetum faciō lu, adorlor, oppugnō.  
**attempt**, noun, cōnātus, -ūs, m.  
**I attempt**, cōnor.  
**authority**, imperium, n., auctoritās, f.  
**autumn**, aetumnus, -i, m.  
**avoid**, vitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**await**, expectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**am aware**, intellegō, sciō, sentiō.  
**away from**, ā, ab (abl.).  
**axa**, securis, -is, f.
- B**
- back**, tergum, -i, n.  
**bad**, malus, -a, -um.  
**baggage** (1) heavy, impedimenta, -ōrum, n.; (2) personal, sarcinae, -arum, f.  
**band**, manus, -ūs, f.  
**banish**, expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum.  
**bank**, ripa, -ae, f.  
**barbarian**, barbarus, -i, m.  
**battering-ram**, arīēs, -etis, m.  
**battle**, pugna, -ae, f., proelium, -i, n.  
**beak**, rōstrum, -i, n.  
**beam**, trabs, -is, f.  
**I bear**, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.  
**a bear**, ursus, -i, m.  
**beast**, bestia, -ae, f.  
**beast-of-burden**, jumentum, -i, n.  
**beautify**, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.  
**became**, quod.  
**become**, fiō, fieri, factus sum.  
**beech-tree**, fāgus, -i, f.  
**before** (1) prep., ante (of time) (acc.); prō (of place) (abl.); (2) conj., prius quam, ante quam; (3) adv., antea.  
**beg**, orō, obsecrō, petō.  
**begin**, coepi, incipiō, ordior.  
**on behalf of**, prō (abl.).  
**behold**, cōspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum.  
**beboove**, It behooves me, mē oportet.  
**believe**, credō, -ere, -didī, -ditum (dat.).  
**belong**, sum, with gen. of possession.  
**besides**, praeter (acc.).  
**I bask myself**, mē recipiō.  
**better**, adj., mellor; adv., melius.  
**between**, inter (acc.).  
**beware**, caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautum.  
**bind**, ligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; serō.  
**bird**, avis, -is, f.  
**black**, niger, -gra, -grum; āter, ātra, ātrum.  
**blame**, culpō, -āre, āvī, ātum.  
**blood**, sanguis, -inis, m.  
**boast**, glōrior, -ārī, -ātus.  
**boat**, linter, cymba, nāvigium.  
**bodily size**, corporis mēguitūdō.  
**body**, corpus, -oris, n.; **dead body**, corpse, cadāver, -eris, n.  
**bold**, audāx, -ācis.  
**bone**, os, ossis, n.  
**book**, liber, -brī, m.



- both**, pron., *uterque*, -*trique*, -*trum*-*que*.  
**both**, conj., et.  
**boundaries**, *finēs*, -*ium*, m.  
**bow**, *arcus*, -*ūs*, m.  
**boy**, *puer*, -*ī*, m.  
**brass** (*copper*), *aes*, *aeris*, n.  
**brave**, *fortis*, -*e*.  
**break**, *frangō*, -*ere*, *frēgī*, *frāctum*;  
*rumpō*, -*ere*, *rūpī*, *ruptum*.  
**break down** (wall or bridge), *re-*  
*seindō*, -*ere*, -*scidī*, -*scissum*.  
**break through**, *perfringō*, -*ere*,  
*-frēgī*, -*frāctum*.  
**breast**, *pectus*, -*oris*, n.  
**breath**, *anima*, -*ae*, f.  
**breathe**, *spirō*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*.  
**bridge**, *pōns*, *pontis*, m.  
**bright**, *clārus*, -*a*, -*um*.  
**bring**, *portō* (*carry*); *dūcō* (*lead*).  
**Britain**, *Britannia*, ae, f.  
**British**, *Britannicus*, -*a*, -*um*.  
**Briton**, *Britannus*, -*i*, m.  
**bronze**, *aes*, *aeris*, n.  
**brother**, *frāter*, -*tris*, m.  
**build**, *aedificō*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*.  
**building**, *aedificium*, -*ī*, n.  
**burden**, *onus*, -*eris*, n.  
**ship of burden**, *nāvis* *ouerāria*.  
**bury**, *sepeliō*, -*ire*, -*ivī*, *sepultum*.  
**business**, *rēs*, *negōtium*.  
**but**, conj., *sed*, *vērō*; prep. = *except*,  
*praeter* (acc.).  
**buy**, *emō*, -*ere*, *ēmī*, *ēptum*.  
**by**, of the agent, *ā*, ab (abi.).
- C**
- Caesar**, *Caesar*, -*aris*, m.  
**calamity**, *calamitās*, -*ātis*, f.  
**call**, *vocō*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*.  
**call together**, *convocō*, -*āre*, -*āvī*,  
*-ātum*.  
**camp**, *castra*, -*ōrum*, n.  
**can**, *possum*, *posse*, *potuī*.  
**captain** (of a ship), *magister*, -*trī*, m.  
**capture**, *capiō*, -*ere*, *cēpī*, *captum*;  
*expugnō*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*.  
**care**, *cūra*, -*ae*, f.  
**careful**, *diligēns*, -*entis*; **carefully**,  
*diligenter*.  
**cart**, *carrus*, -*i*, m.  
**Carthage**, *Carthāgō*, -*inis*, f.  
**carry**, *portō*, *gerō*, *ferō*; **carry on**  
(war), *gerō*; **carry over**, *trans-*  
*portō*; **carry together**, *comportō*.  
**cattle**, *pecus*, -*oris*, n.  
**cavalry**, *equitātus*, -*ūs*, m.; *equitēs*,  
-*um*, m.  
**cavalry**, as an adj., *equester*, -*tris*,  
-*tre*.  
**cease**, *dēsīnō*, -*ere*, -*sīvī*, -*situm*.  
**certain** (*sure definite*), *certus*, -*us*, -*um*.  
**certain**, pron. or pronom. adj., *qui-*  
*dam*, *quaedam*, *quiddam* or *quod-*  
*dam*.  
**certainly**, *valdē*.  
**change**, *mūtō*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*.  
**character**, *mōrēs*, -*um*, m.; *genus*,  
-*eris*, n. (*kind*).  
**chariot**, *essedā*, -*ae*, f., *carrus*, -*ūs*, m.  
**charioteer**, *essedārius*, -*i*, m.  
**chieftain**, *princeps*, -*ipis*, m.  
**children**, *liberī*, -*ōrum*, m.  
**choose**, *dēligō*, -*ere*, -*lēgī*, -*lēctum*.  
**Cicero**, *Cicerō*, -*ōnis*, m.  
**citadel**, *arx*, *arcis*, f.  
**citizen**, *civis*, -*is*, m. or f.  
**city**, *urbs*, -*is*, f.  
**claw**, *unguis*, -*is*, m.  
**close**, *claudō*, -*ere*, *clausī*, *clausum*.  
**clothing**, *vestītus*, -*ūs*, m.  
**cloud**, *nūbēs*, -*is*, f.  
**coast**, *ōrā*, -*ae*, f.  
**cohort**, *cohors*, -*hortis*, f.  
**cold**, adj., *frigidus*, -*a*, -*um*.  
**cold**, noun, *frigus*, -*oris*, n.  
**collect**, *cōgō*, *colligō*, *comparō*.  
**come**, *veniō*, -*ire*, *vēnī*, *ventum*.  
**command**, noun, *imperium*, -*i*, n.;  
**a command**, *imperātum*, -*i*, n.  
**I command**, *imperō*, *iuhēō*.  
**commander**, *imperātor*, -*ōris*, m.;  
*dux*, *ducs*, m.  
**common**, *commūnis*, -*e*.  
**common people**, *vulgus*, -*i*, n.  
**commonwealth**, *rēs pūblica*, f.  
**companion**, *comes*, -*itis*, m. or f.;  
*socius*, -*i*, m.  
**compel**, *cōgō*, -*ere*, *coēgī*, *coēctum*.  
**complain**, *queror*, -*i*, *questus*.

- conceal**, dissimulō, cēlō.  
**concern** (it concerns), interest, rē-  
 fert, pertinet ad.  
**concerning**, dē (abl.).  
**condemn**, condemnō, -āre, -āvī,  
 -ātum.  
**condition**, condiciō, -ōnis, f.  
**confess**, cōfiteor, -ērī, -fessus.  
**conquer**, vincō, superō.  
**conqueror**, victor, -ōris, m.  
**consider**, putō, arbitror, existimō,  
 habeō, dūcō.  
**conspiracy**, conjūratiō, -ōnis, f.  
**conspirator**, conjūrator, -ōris, m.  
**conspire**, conjūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**constellation**, sidus, -eris, n.  
**consul**, cōsul, -sulis, m.  
**contend**, contendō, -ere, contendī,  
 contentum.  
**contest**, certāmen, -minis, n.  
**continent**, continēns, -entis, f.  
**continuous**, continēns, -entis (adj.).  
**convene**, convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**conversation**, sermō, -ōnis, m.; col-  
 loquium, -i, n.  
**convict**, condemnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**convince**, persuādēō, -ēre, -suāsī,  
 -suāsūm.  
**Corinth**, Corinthus, -ī, f.  
**corn**, frumentum, -ī, n.  
**corpse**, cadāver, -eris, n.  
**corrupt**, corrumpō, -ere, -rūpī  
 -ruptum.  
**council**, concillium, -ī, n.  
**counsel**, cōsillium, -ī, n.  
**country**, rural district, rūs; one's  
 country, patria; territory, finēs,  
 ager.  
**courage**, virtūs, fortitudō, -inis, f.  
**cover**, tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum.  
**cow**, hōs, bovis, f. (also m., ox).  
**cowardice**, ignāvia, -ae, f.  
**cowardly**, ignāvus, -n, -um.  
**create**, creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**cross**, trānsēō, -ire, -ivī (-ī), -itum.  
**crow**, corvus, -ī, m.  
**crowd**, turba, multitudō, vulgus.  
**crown**, corōna, -ae, f.  
**cruel**, crudēlis, -e; saevus, -a, -um.  
**cry out**, exclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**cuirass**, lorica, -ae, f.  
**custom**, cōsuetūdō, f.; mōs, m.  
**cut**, caedo, -ere, cecīdi, enesum.
- D**
- damage**, adfligō, -ere, -flixī, -flictum.  
**danger**, periculum, -ī, n.  
**dare**, audeō, -ēre, ausus sum.  
**dark**, āter, -tra, -trum.  
**darkness**, tenebrae, -arum, f.  
**dart**, tēlum, -ī, n.  
**daughter**, filia, -ae, f.  
**day**, diēs, -ēī, m. (sometimes f. in sing.).  
**day-break**, prima lux.  
**dead**, mortuus, -a, -um.  
**dear**, cārus, -a, -um.  
**death**, mors, mortis, f.  
**decide**, cōstituō, -ere, -uī, -ātum.  
**deck**, ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**declare**, cōfirmō, -āre, āvī, -ātum.  
**deem**, putō, arbitror, existimō,  
 habeō, dūcō.  
**deep**, altus, -a, -um.  
**defeat**, superō, vincō.  
**defence**, praesidium, -ī, o.  
**defend**, dēfendō, -ere, -fendī,  
 -fēnsūm; tueor, -ērī.  
**defender**, dēfēnsor, -ōris, m.  
**I delay**, moror, -ārī, -ātus.  
**delay**, noun, mora, -ae, f.  
**deliberation** (there is need of), cōn-  
 suitō opus est.  
**delight**, dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**deliver**, trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.  
**demand**, postulō, imperō, poscō.  
**deny**, negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**depart**, discēdō, abeō, excēdō, pro-  
 ficiscor.  
**design** (a plan), cōsillium, -ī, n.  
**I despair**, dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**deceive**, contemnō, -ere, -temptī,  
 -temptum.  
**destitute**, luops, -opīs; expers, -rtis.  
**destroy**, dēlēō; break down, res-  
 cindō.  
**die**, morior, -ī, mortuus.  
**different** = other, alius.  
**difficult**, difficilis, -e.  
**difficulty**, difficultās, -ātis, f.  
**diligence**, dilligentia, -ae, f.

**disaster**, clādēs, -ls, f. (*defeat*); calamitās, -ātis, f.  
**discover**, reperīō, -ire, repperī, re-  
 pertum.  
**disembark**, (1) intrans., ēgredior;  
 (2) trans., expōnō.  
**disgrace**, dēdecus, -oris, n.  
**disgraceful**, turpis, -e.  
**dismies**, dīmīttō, -ere, -mīsī, -mīs-  
 sum.  
 am **distant**, absum, -esse, -fui.  
**distinguish**, clārus, -a, -um.  
**distrust**, diffidō, -ere, -fīsus sum.  
**do**, faciō, facere, fēcī, factum; as  
 auxiliary of negation or emphasis,  
 not translated.  
**dog**, canis, -ls, m. or f.  
**door**, porta; -ae, f.  
**double**, duplex, -plicit.  
**doubt**, dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**doubtful**, dubius, -a, -um.  
**down from**, dē (abl.).  
**draw**, drag, trahō, -ere, trāxī, trāc-  
 tum.  
**draw up in line**, instruō, -ere,  
 -strūxī, -strūctum.  
**dread**, pertimēscō, -ere, -timūī.  
**dream**, somnium, -i, n.  
**drink**, bibō, -ere, bibī (supine pōtum).  
**drive**, pello, -ere, pepulī, pulsum.  
**drive back**, repellō, -ere, reppulī,  
 repulsum.  
**drive out**, expellō, -ere, expulī, ex-  
 pulsum.  
**dry**, aridus, siccus (*parched*).  
**dust**, pulvis, -eris, m.  
**dwel**, habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; in-  
 colō, -ere, -uī.

## E

**each**, quisque, quaeque, quidque or  
 quodque; of two, uterque, -traque,  
 -trumque.  
**eager**, cupidus, studiōsus, -a, -um.  
**eagle**, aquila, -ae, f.  
**eagle-bearer**, aquilifer, -ferī, m.  
**early** (summer), prima aestās.  
**earth**, terra, -ae, f.  
**earthly**, terrester, -tris, -tre.  
**east**, oriēns (sōl), -entis.  
**easy**, facilis, -e; adv. facile.

**eat**, = *live upon*, vescor, -ī (abl.);  
 also edō, -ere, -ēdī, -ēsum.  
**eight**, octō; **eighth**, octāvus, -a, -um.  
**either** . . . or, aut . . . aut.  
**elect**, eligō, -ere, ēlēgī, ēlēctum.  
**elephant**, elephantus, -ī, m.  
**embark**, (nāvem) cōscendō, -ere,  
 -endī, -ēsum.  
**enable**, efficiō ut.  
**end**, finis, -is, m.  
**enemy** (personal), inimicus, -ī;  
 (public), hostis, -is.  
**eugene** (of war), tormentum, -ī, n.;  
 māchina, -ae, f.  
**enjoy**, fruor, -ī, fructus (abl.).  
**enough**, satis.  
**envoy**, lēgātus, -ī, m.  
**envy**, invidia, -ae, f.  
**epistle**, epistola, -ae, f.  
**equestrian**, equester, -tris, -tre.  
**err**, errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**Europe**, Eurōpa, -ae, f.  
**even**, etiam; **even if**, etiam si, etsī.  
**every**, quisque, omnis.  
**evident**, manifestus, -a, -um.  
**evil**, malus, -a, -um.  
**excellent**, ēgregius, -a, -um;  
 optimus.  
**except**, praeter (acc.).  
**exchange**, mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**exhort**, hortor, -ārī, -ātus.  
**exile**, exilium (or exsilium), -ī, n.  
**exploit**, rēs gesta.  
**eye**, oculus, -ī, m.

## F

**faith**, fidēs, -eī, f.  
**faithful**, fidus, -a, -um.  
**famous**, clārus, praeclārus, -a, -um.  
**far**, longē; **farther**, longius; **am far**  
**from**, absum.  
**farmer**, agricola, -ae, m.  
**farther bank**, ūlterior ripa.  
**fast**, adj., celer; adv., celeriter.  
**father**, pater, -tris, m.  
**father-in-law**, socer, -erī, m.  
**fault**, culpa, -ae, f.  
**favor**, grātia, -ae, f.  
**fear**, noun, timor, pavor, metus, -ūs, m.  
 I **fear**, timeō, vereor, metuō, -ere, -uī.

- feeble**, aeger, -gra, -grum.  
**feed** (upon), vescor, -ī (abl.); **feel** (some one), pascō, -ere, pāvi, pās-tum; **feed**, intransitive, pascor, -i, pāstus.  
**fertile**, ferāx, -ācis.  
**few**, pauci, -ae, -a.  
**field**, ager, -grī, m.; **campus**, -ī, m.  
**fierce**, ferus, ferōx, ācer.  
**fifth**, quīntus, -a, -um.  
**I fight**, pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**fight**, noun, pugna, -ae, f.; **proclium**, -i, n.  
**figure**, figurā, ae, f.  
**fill**, complēō, -ēre, -plēvī, -piētum.  
**find** (chance upon), invenīō, -īre, -vēni, -ventum; (after searching), reperio, -ire, repperī, repertum.  
**find fault with**, cūpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (acc.).  
**find out**, cognōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum.  
**finish**, finiō, -ire, -ivī (-iī), -itum; **conficio**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.  
**fire**, ignis, -is, m.  
**first** (of two), prior; (of a larger number), primus.  
**five**, quinque.  
**fee**, fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitum.  
**fleet**, classis, -is, f.  
**flesh**, carō, carnis, f.  
**flight**, fuga, -ae, f.  
**flock**, grex, gregis, m.  
**flower**, flōs, flōris, m.  
**follow**, sequor, -ī, secūtus.  
**following**, *on the following day*, posterō diē; *secundus* (of a stream).  
**folly**, stultitia, -ae, f.  
**fond**, studiosus, -a, -nm (gen.); **am fond of**, studeō (dat.).  
**foolish**, stultus, -a, -um.  
**foot**, pēs, pedis, m.  
**foot of a hill**, imus collis.  
**foot-soldier**, pedes, -itis, m.  
**for**, prep. denoting motion to or purpose, ad; *in behalf of*, prō; conj. = *because*, nam, enim (the latter never first).  
**forbid**, vetō, -āre, -nī.  
**force**, vis, f.; **a force**, manus, ūs, f.
- forces**, cōplae, -ārum, f.  
**foresee**, prōvīdeō, -ēre, -vidī, -vīsum.  
**foresight**, prōvidentia, -ae, f.  
**forest**, silva, -ae, f.  
**form a plan**, cōsiliū capere or inīre.  
**form line**, aciem inīstruō.  
**former**, hīc or ille, p. 138; **prior**, superior.  
**fort**, castellum, -ī, n.  
**fortify**, mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.  
**fortress**, arx, arsis, f.  
**fortunate**, felix, -icis.  
**fortune**, fortunā, -ae, f.  
**forum**, forum, -ī, n.  
**found** (a city), condō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.  
**fountain**, fōns, fontis, m.  
**fourth**, quārtus, -a, -um.  
**free**, adj., īber, -era, -erum.  
**I free**, liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**frequent**, crēber, -bra, -brum.  
**friend**, amicus, -ī, m.  
**friendship**, amicitia, -ae, f.  
**frighten**, terreō, perterreō.  
**from**, a (ab), ex, dē (abi.).  
**in front of**, prō (abl.).  
**front rank**, prima acies.  
**frost**, frīgus, -oris, n.  
**fruit**, fructus, -ūs, m.  
**full**, plēnus, -a, -um.
- G
- gain** (possession), potior, -īrī, -ītus.  
**galley**, nāvis longa.  
**garden**, hortus, -ī, m.  
**gate**, porta, -ae, f.  
**gather**, cōgō, contrahō, comportō.  
**Gaul**, Gallia, -ae, f.  
**a Gaul**, Gallus, -ī, m.  
**general**, imperātor, -ōris, m.  
**German**, Germānus, -i, -um.  
**Germany**, Germānia, -ae, f.  
**giant**, gigās, -antis, m.  
**gift**, dōnum, -ī, n.  
**girl**, puella, -ae, f.  
**give**, dō, dare, dedī, datum.  
**give back**, reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditum.  
**glory**, glōria, -ae, f.

**go**, eō, ire, ivi (ii), itum.  
**god**, deus, -i, m.  
**goddess**, dea, -ae, f.  
**gold**, aurum, -i, n.  
**golden**, aureus, -a, -um.  
**good**, bonus, -a, -um.  
**goodness**, virtūs, -ūtis, f.  
**govern**, regō, imperō.  
**grain**, frumentum, -i, n.  
**granted that**, licet, quia, with the subjunctive, quoting a reason from another.  
**great**, magnus, -a, -um.  
**greatly**, magnopere.  
**greave**, ocrea, -ae, f.  
**grieve**, doleō, -ēre, dolui, -um.  
**ground** = soil, solum, -i, n; **on the ground that**, quod, quia, with the subjunctive, quoting a reason from another.  
**I guard**, cūstodiō, -ire, -ivi, -itum; tueor, -eri.  
**a guard**, cūstōs, -ōdis, m. (*single watchman*); praesidium, -i, n. (*a collection*).  
**guide**, dux, ducis, m.

## H

**habit**, mōs, m.; cōsuetūdō, f.  
**hair**, crīnis, -is, m.  
**hand**, manus, -ūs, f.  
**happen**, accidit, ēvenit, fit, fieri, factum est.  
**happy**, beātus, -a, -um.  
**harbor**, portus, -ūs, m.  
**hard**, dūrus, -a, -um.  
**hare**, lepus, -oris, m.  
**hasten**, contendō, properō, mātūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.  
**haste**, celeritās: **there is need of**, properātō opus est.  
**I hate**, ōdī, ōdisse.  
**hatred**, odium, -i, n.  
**have**, habeo, -ēre, -uī, -itum.  
**head**, caput, -itis, n.; **am at the head of**, praesum, -esse, -fui.  
**hear**, audiō, -ire, -ivi, -itum.  
**heart**, cor, cordis, n.  
**heavy**, gravis, -e.  
**heavy baggage**, impedimenta, -ōrum, n. plur.  
**heights**, superiora loca, u. plur.

**helmet**, galea, -ae, f.  
**help**, auxilium, -i, n.  
**I help**, adjuvō (acc.); subveniō (dat.).  
**hence**, hūc.  
**herd**, grex, -gis, m.  
**herald**, praecō, -ōnis, m.  
**here**, hic.  
**hesitate**, cunctor, -ārī, -ātus.  
**high**, altus, -a, -um.  
**higher**, altior, superior.  
**value highly**, māgnū aestimō.  
**high-spirited**, māgnae virtūtis; ferōx.  
**hill**, collis, -is, m.  
**himself**, ipse (emphatic); suī, sibi (reflexive).  
**hinder**, prohibeo, -ēre, -uī, -itum.  
**hindrance**, impedimentum, -i, n.  
**hinge**, cardō, -inis, m.  
**hither**, adv., hūc; adj. = nearer, ceterior.  
**hold**, habeo, teneō.  
**home**, domus, -ūs, f., Loc., domī.  
**Homer**, Homērus, i, m.  
**hope**, noun, spēs, speī, f.  
**I hope**, spērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.  
**horn**, cornū, -ūs, n.  
**horse**, equus, -i, m.  
**horseman**, eques, -itis, m.  
**hostage**, obses, -idis, m. or f.  
**hour**, hōra, -ae, f.  
**house**, domus, -ūs, f.  
**how**, quōmodo.  
**however**, tamen, autem.  
**how great** (large), quantus, -a, -um.  
**how many**, quot.  
**how much**, quantus, -a, -um.  
**huge**, ingēns, -entis.  
**hundred**, centum.  
**hurl**, contorqueō, conieciō.  
**hurt**, noceō, -ēre, -uī (dat.).  
**husband**, vir, conjūnx.

## I

**Idea**, Idūs, -uum, f.  
**if**, si.  
**ill**, aeger, -gra, -grum.  
**immediately**, statim, cōnfestim.  
**immense**, ingēns, -gentis.

**implore**, obsecrō, orō, impiōrō.  
**import**, importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**it is important**, rēfert, interest.  
**it is impossible**, nōn fierī potest (ut).  
**in**, in (abl.).  
**inaemuch ae**, quoniam, cum.  
**am indignant at**, graviter ferō.  
**infantry**, peditātus, -ūs, m., peditēs, -um, m.  
**influence**, noun, auctōritās, -ātis, f.  
**I influence**, commoveō, permoveō.  
**inform**, certīorem faciō; **am informed**, certior fiō.  
**in front of**, prō (abl.).  
**inhabit**, incolō, -ere, -coluī.  
**inhabitant**, incola, -ae, m. or f.  
**injure**, noceō, -ēre, -uī (dat.).  
**inquire**, quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesitum.  
**instruct**, praecipō, mandō (dat.).  
**I intend** = *I am about to*, active periphrastic conj.  
**iron**, ferrum, -ī, n.  
**island**, insula, -ae, f.

## J

**javelin**, pilum, -ī, n.; jaculum, -ī, n.  
**join**, jungō, -ere, jūnxi, jūnetum.  
**join battle**, proelium committō.  
**journey**, iter, itineris, n.  
**judge**, iudex, -leis, m.  
**Juno**, Jūnō, -ōnis, f.  
**just**, iustus, -a, -um.  
**justice**, iustitia, -ae, f.

## K

**keen**, ācer, -eris, -ere.  
**keep in the dark**, cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**keep within**, contineō, -ēre, -nī, -tentum.  
**kill**, necō, interficiō, occidō.  
**killing**, caedēs, -is, f.  
**kind** (class), genus, -eris, n.  
**kind** (adj. = kindly), benignus, benevolus.  
**kindly**, adv., benignē.  
**king**, rēx, rēgis, m.  
**knee**, genū, -ūs, n.  
**knight**, eques, -itis, m.

**know**, sciō, inteilegō.  
**knowledge**, scientia, -ae, f.

## L

**labor**, labor, -ōris, m.  
**lack**, verb, careō (abl.), egeō (abl. or gen.).  
**lack** (noun = scarcity), inopia, -ae, f.  
**lacking in**, inops, -opis; **expers**, -rtis (governs gen.).  
**am lacking to**, dēsum, -esse, -fui.  
**lake**, iacus, -ūs, m.  
**lamb**, āgnus, -ī, m.  
**lame**, claudus, -a, -um.  
**a land**, terra, -ae, f; **lands** (cultivated), agri, -ōrum, m.  
**I land** (soldiers from a ship, trans.), expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum.  
**I land** (intrans.), ēgredior, -ī, -gressus, with or without nāvī, or nāvibus.  
**large**, māgnus, -a, -um.  
**laet**, ūltimus; extrēmus; uovissimus; proximus (e.g. last night).  
**at last**, tandem.  
**later**, posterior.  
**latter**, hic or ille, see p. 138.  
**laugh**, rideō, -ēre, risī, risum.  
**a law**, lēx, iēgis, f.  
**lay aside**, dēponō, -ere, -posuī, -positum.  
**lay waste**, vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**I lead**, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum.  
**lead back**, redūcō.  
**lead out**, ēducō.  
**leader**, dux, duels, m.  
**leap down**, dēsiliō, -īre, -silnī, -silitum.  
**learn** (a lesson), discō, -ere, didicī; (a fact), cognōscō, reperiō.  
**leave** (behind), relinquō, -ere, -liquī, -lictum.  
**leave** (= go out from, e.g. leave home), excēdō, discēdō, ēgredior.  
**left** (on the left), adj., sinister, -tra, -trum; laevus, -a, -um.  
**the left hand**, sinistra, -ae, f. (adj. used ns noun, with manus omitted).  
**left** (remaining), relictus, -a, -um.

**legate** (= *envoy*), *légātus*, -i, m.  
**legion**, *legiō*, -ōnis, f.  
**lese**, adj., minor; adv., minus.  
**lesson** (= *task assigned*), *pēnsūm*,  
 -i, n.  
**lest**, *nē*; **lest any**, *nē quis* (quid).  
**letter**, *epistola*, *litterae*, -ārum, f.  
 (the sing. *littera* = *a letter of the*  
*alphabet*); **lettere** (= *literature*),  
*litterae*, -ārum.  
**lie** (*down*), *jaceō*, -ēre, -uī.  
**lie** (*speak falsely*), *mentior*, -īrī,  
*mentitus*.  
**lieutenant**, *légātus*, -i, m.  
**life**, *vīta*, -ae, f.  
**light**, *lūx*, *lūcis*, f.; **a light**, *lūmen*,  
 -mīnis, n.  
**lightning**, *fulmen*, -mīnis, n.  
**like**, *similis*, -e; *What is the island*  
*like?* *Quālis est insula?*  
 I should **like**, *velim*.  
**limb**, *membrum* (*member*); *crūs*  
*crūris*, n. (*leg*); *artus*, -ūs, m.  
 (*joint*).  
**lion**, *leō*, -ōnis, m.  
 I **live**, *vivō*, -ere, *vixī*, *victum*.  
**live** (adj. = *alive*), *vīvus*, -a, -um.  
**load**, *onus*, -eris, n.  
**long** (*of distance*) *longus*, -a, -um.  
**long** (adv. = *a time*), *diū*, com-  
 par., *diūtius*; *peri.*, *diūtissimē*.  
**long for**, *desiderō*, -āre, *āvī*,  
 -ātum.  
**look at**, *spectō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**loose**, *solvō*, -ere, *solvī*, *solūtum*.  
**lord**, *dominus*, -i, m.  
**lose**, *amittō*, -ere, -misi, -missum.  
**lot**, *sors*, *sortis*, f.  
**loud voice**, *magna vox*.  
 I **love**, *amō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**love**, noun, *amor*, -ōris, m.  
**low**, *humilis*, -c.

## M

**maiden**, *virgō*, -inis; *puella*, -ae, f.  
**make**, *faciō*, -ere, *feci*, *factum*.  
**man** (*human being*), *homō*, -inis,  
 m.; *vir*, *virī*, m.  
**manner**, *modus*, -i, m., *ratio*,  
 -ōnis, f.

**many**, *multī*, -ae, -a.  
**a march**, *iter*, *itineris*, n.; *forced*  
*march*, *māgnum iter*; *I march*,  
*iter faciō*.  
**marsh**, *palūs*, *ūdis*, f.  
**mast**, *māsus*, -i, m.  
**master**, *magister*, -trī; *owner of a*  
*slave or property*, *dominus*, -i.  
**matter** (*thing*), *rēs*, *rei*, f.; *What*  
*matters it?* *Quantī rēfert*, or *in-*  
*terest?*  
**may** (*it is permitted*), *heet*, -ēre,  
 -uit.  
**meanwhile**, *intereā*, *interim*.  
**measure**, *mētior*, -īrī, *mēsus*.  
**merchant**, *mercātor*, -ōris, m.  
**Mercury**, *Mercurius*, -i, m.  
**message**, *nūntius*, -i, m.  
**messenger**, *nūntius*, -i, m.  
**mid, middle**, *medius*, -a -um.  
**mild**, *mītis*, -e.  
**mile**, *mīlle passūs*; *miles*, *mīllia*  
*passuum*.  
**military**, *mīlītāris*, -e; *military*  
*science*, *rēs mīlītāris*.  
**milk**, *lac*, *lactis*, n.  
**mind**, *animus*, -i, m.; *mēns*, *mentis*, f.  
**mindful**, *memor*, -or.  
**miss** (*look for in vain*), *dēsiderō*, -āre,  
 -āvī, -ātum.  
**missile**, *tēlum*, -i, n.  
**mistress**, *domina*, *magistra*, -ae, f.  
**money**, *pecūnia*, -ae, f.  
**month**, *mēnsis*, -is, m.  
**moon**, *lūna*, -ae, f.  
**more**, *plūs*; *plūrēs*.  
**moreover**, *autem*.  
**mother**, *māter*, -tris, f.  
**mound**, *tumulus*, -i, m.; *agger*,  
 -eris, m.  
**mountain**, *mōs*, *montis*, m.  
**mouse**, *mūs*, *mūris*, m.  
**mouth**, *ōs*, *ōris*, n.  
**move**, *moveō*, -ēre, *mōvī*, *mōtum*.  
**movement**, *mōtus*, -ūs, m.  
**much**, *multus*, -a, -um.  
**muddy**, *turbidus*, -a, -um.  
**multitude**, *multitūdō*, -dīnis, f.  
**Muse**, *Mūsa*, -ae, f.  
**my**, *meus*, -a, -um.

## N

- name**, nōmen, -inis, n.  
**Naples**, Neapolis, -is, f.  
**narrow**, angustus, -a, -um.  
**native land**, patria, -ae, f.  
**near**, adv. or prep.; prope (acc.).  
**need** (*there is need of*), opus est, ūsus est.  
**needle**, acus, -ūs, f.  
**neighbor**, vicīnus, -ī, m.  
**neighborhood**, vicinitās, -ātis, f.  
**neither** . . . nor, neque (nec) . . . neque (nec).  
**net**, nētus, -ī, m.  
**never**, numquam (nunquam).  
**nevertheless**, tamen.  
**new**, novus, -a, -um.  
**next**, proximus, -a, -um.  
**night**, nox, noctis (gen. plur. -ium), f.  
**nine**, novem.  
**ninth**, nōnus, -a, -um.  
**no** (adj.), nūllus, -a, -um.  
**No** (as an answer) translated by repeating the essential part of the question as a statement negated by nōn.  
**no one**, nēmō, dat. nēmī, acc. nēmīnem (other cases lacking); *in order that no one = lest any one*, nē quis.  
**nor**, neque (nec).  
**north**, septentrīō, -ōnis, m.; more commonly plur. septentrionēs (the seven stars of Ursa Major, the Great Bear or the "Dipper").  
**not**, dealing with fact, nōn; dealing with what is willed or intended, nē.  
**nothing**, nihil (nūl); *in order that nothing = lest anything*, nē quid.  
**nourish**, alō, -ere, alū, altum.  
**now**, nūnc; = *by this time, already, jam*; as an introductory particle, autem.  
**number**, numerus, -ī, m.  
**numerous**, crēber, -bra, -brum; frequēs, -entis.
- O
- oak** (*tree*), quercus, -ūs, f.; (*wood*), rōbur, -oris, n.  
**oar**, rēmus, -ī, m.  
**oarsman**, rēmex, -igis, m.  
**oath**, iūsūrmandum, iūrisiūrandī, n.  
**obey**, pāreō, -ēre, -nī, -itum.  
**Object**, recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**obstacles** (*there are many*), inrita obstant.  
**obtain**, adipīscor, -ī, adeptus; cōsequor, -ī, cōsecūtus; (*a request*), Impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**occasion** (*there is occasion for, need of*), opus est, ūsus est.  
**occupy**, occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**Ocean** (Atlantic), Ōceanus, -ī, m.  
**often**, saepe.  
**old**, vetus, -eris; no compar.; superl. veterrimus.  
**old age**, senectūs, -ūtis, f.  
**old man**, senex; **older**, senior; **old-est**, nātū mākīmus.  
**old woman**, anus, -ūs, f.  
**on**, in (abl.).  
**on account of**, ob (acc.); propter (acc.).  
**on behalf of**, prō (abl.).  
**on the other hand**, autem.  
**once**, semel; = *formerly or once upon a time*, olim, quondam.  
**one**, ūnus, -a, -um, gen. -ius, dat. -ī.  
**open** (ndj.), apertus, -a, -um.  
**I open**, aperīō, -īre, -uī, apertum; patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum.  
**opinion**, sententia, -ae, f.  
**or**, aut; *or in other words*, vel.  
**oration**, orātīō, -ōnis, f.  
**orator**, orātor, -ōris, m.  
**order** (*arrangement, class*), ordō, -inis, m.  
**order** (*the right of command*), imperium; *thing ordered*, Imperātum.  
**I order**, iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum (acc. and infin.); imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (dat. and ut with subjunct.).  
**in order that**, ut; *in order that not*, nē.  
**other**, alius, -a, -nd; *the other (of two)*, alter, -era, -erum; = *remaining*, reliquus, -a, -um; *all the others*, ceterī, -ae, -a; *other people*, aliēnus, -a, -um.



**I ought**, *dēbeō, -ēre, -ui, -itum*; often translated by the gerundive; often by *oportet, it behooves*.  
**our**, *noster, -tra, -trum*.  
**of ourselves** (reflex.), *nostrī, nobīs, nōs*.  
**out of**, *ē, ex* (abl.).  
**over**, *super, suprā* (acc.).  
**overcome**, *superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.  
**overthrow**, *ēverto, -ere, -verti, -ver-sum*.  
**owe**, *dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum*.  
**owing to**, propter (acc.).  
**ox**, *bōs, bovis, m.*

P

**pace**, *passus, -ūs, m.*  
**pack** (of wolves), *grex, gregis, m.*  
**I pardon**, *iguōscō, -ere, -guōvī, -guōtum*.  
**pardon** (noun), *venia, -ae, f.*  
**parent**, *parēns, -entis*.  
**part**, *pars, partis, f.*  
**pay**, *pendo, -ere, pendī, pēnsam*; *solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum*; *What did you pay? At what price did you buy? Quanti?*  
**peace**, *pāx, pācis, f.*  
**a people**, *populus, i, m.*; **people**, in the plural sense, *hominēs*; **other people's**, *aliēnus, -a, -um*.  
**perceive**, *sentio, intelligō*.  
**perform**, *fungor, -i, fūctus* (abl.).  
**permit**, *patior, sinō*; **it is permitted**, *licet*.  
**personal baggage**, *sarcinae, -arum, f.*  
**persnade**, *persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsi, -suāsium* (dat.).  
**pirate**, *praedō, -ōus, m.*  
**pitch** (camp), *castra pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum*.  
**I pity**, *misereor, -ēri, miseritus*; *mē miseret*.  
**pity** (noun), *miserīcordia, -ae, f.*  
**a place**, *locus, -i, m.*; plur. *loci, -ōrum*.  
**I place**, *pōnō, -ere, -posuī, positum*.  
**plan**, *cōnsilium, -i, n.*  
**play** (noun), *lūdus, -i, m.*  
**I play**, *lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsūm*.

**pleasant**, *iucundus, -a, -um*; (of a place), *amoenus, -a, -um*.  
**please**, *dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.  
**pleasing** (*gratifying*), *grātus, -a, -um*.  
**plenty**, *cōpia, -ae, f.*  
**I plough**, *nrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.  
**a plough**, *arātrum, -i, n.*  
**plunder**, noun, *præda, -ae, f.*  
**I plunder**, *diripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum*; *praedor, -āri, -ātus*; *spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.  
**poet**, *poëta, -ae, m.*  
**poison**, *vīrus, -i, n.*; *venēnum, -i, n.*  
**poor**, *pāuper, -eris*.  
**port**, *portus, -ūs, m.*  
**precession** (*gain*), *potior, -īri, potītus* (abl.).  
**as possible**, *quam with the superl.*  
**posterity**, *posterī, -ōrum, m.*  
**praise** (noun), *laus, inudis, f.*  
**I praise**, *laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.  
**pray**, *orō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*; *precor, -āri, -ātus*.  
**prefer**, *mālō, mālle, mālui*; *antepōnō, -ere, posuī, positum*.  
**prepare**, *parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.  
**present**, *ndj., praesēns, -entis*.  
**a present**, *dōnum, -i, n.*  
**I present**, *dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.  
**preserve**, *servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.  
**press**, *premō, -ere, pressi, pressum*.  
**prevent**, *prohibeō, impediō, obstō, dēterreō*.  
**previous**, *prior, prius*; *superior, -ius*.  
**price**, *pretium, -i, n.*  
**privilege** (*it is the privilege of*) use the predicate gen. with *est*.  
**promise**, *polliceor, -ēri, pollicitus*.  
**property**, *rēs, rei, f.*; *bona, -ōrum, n.*  
**protect**, *tegō, -ere, tēxi, tēctum*.  
**provide for**, *provideō, -ēre, -vidī, -vīsum* (dat.).  
**provided that**, *dum, dummodo* (with subjunctive).  
**province**, *prōvincia, -ae, f.*  
**proW** (of a vessel), *rōstrum, -i, n.*  
**prudence**, *prūdētia, -ae, f.*  
**prudent**, *prūdēns, -entis*.  
**public**, *publicus, -a, -um*.

**punish**, pūniō, -īre, -īvi, -ītum.  
**punishment**, poena, -ae, f.  
**pupil**, discipulus, -ī, m.  
**pure** (*innocent*), castus, -a, -um.  
**put in charge**, praeficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectum (acc. of *person*, dat. of *thing*).  
**put to flight**, in fugam dō.  
**put to death** = *kill*, interficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectum.

## Q

**queen**, rēgīna, -ae, f.  
**quick**, celer, -eris, -ere; **quickly**, celeriter.  
**quiet**, quies, -ētis, f.

## R

**race**, gēns, gentis, f.  
**raise** (= *lift*), tollō, -ere, sustulī, subiātum.  
**raise** (*forces*), comparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.  
**ram**, ariēs, -etis, m.  
**rampart**, vālium, -ī, n.  
**rank**, ōrdō, -īnis, m.; **front rank**, primū aeiēs.  
**rashness**, temeritās, -ātis, f.  
**rather**, potius; **I would rather** = *I prefer*, mālō; **rather** with an adj., see compar. degree, p. 97, 6.  
**raven**, corvus, -ī, m.  
**reach**, perveniō ad; adveniō.  
**read**, legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum.  
**rear**, novissimum agmen, novissimī, -ōrum; **at the rear**, ā tergō.  
**reason**, causa, -ae, f.  
**receive**, accipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -cep-tum.  
**red**, ruber, -brā, -brum.  
**refinement**, būmānitās, -ātis, f.  
**I regard** = *I deem*, babeō, existimō.  
**region**, regiō, -ōnis, f.  
**I regret**, paenitet mē.  
**I reign**, rēguō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.  
**rejoice**, gaudeō, -ēre, gavīsus.  
**religion**, relligiō, -ōnis, f.  
**rely upon**, fidō, cōnfidō, -ere, -fīsus sum (abl. of a *thing*, dat. of a *person*).  
**relying upon**, irētus, -a, -um (abl.).

**remain**, maneō, remaneō, -ēre, mānsi, mānsum.  
**it remains**, reliquum est, restat.  
**remaining**, reliquus, -a, -um.  
**remember**, reminiscor, -ī, -memini, -isse.  
**remind**, admoneō, -ēre, -ui, -itum.  
**remove** (*Intrans.*), remigrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; (*trans.*), tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum.  
**renowned**, ciārus, praeclārus, -a, -uni.  
**repel**, repeilō, -ere, reppulī, reppisum.  
**I repent**, mē paenitet.  
**report**, nūntiō, renūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.  
**republic**, rēs pūblica, rei pūblicae, f.  
**repulse**, repellō, -ere, reppulī, reppisum.  
**I request**, petō, rogō.  
**resist**, resisto, -ere, -stitī, -stitum (dat.).  
**resolve**, cōstituō, -ere, -nī, -ūtum.  
**resources**, opēs, opum, opibus, f.  
**restrain**, retineō, temperō, prohibeo.  
**retainer**, cliēns, -entis, m.  
**return** (*go back*), redeō, -īre, -ivi (-iī), -itum; (*give back*), reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.  
**revenue**, vectigal, ālis, n.  
**revile**, maledicō, -ere, -dixī, -dictum.  
**revolution**, novae rēs.  
**reward**, praemium, -ī, n.  
**Rhine**, Rhēnus, -ī, m.  
**Rhone**, Rbodanus, -ī, m.  
**rich**, dives, -itis.  
**right** (*on the right*), dexter, -tra, -trum(-tera, -terum); **right hand**, dextra, -trae, f.  
**a right** (*obligation, principle of justice*), iūs, jūris, n.  
**ring**, orbis, -is, m.; ānulus, -ī (worn on the finger).  
**ripe**, mātūrus, -a, -um.  
**river**, fluvius, -ī, m.; flūmen, -minis, n.  
**road**, via, -ae, f.; iter, ltineris, n.  
**rob**, spoliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.  
**robber**, lātrō, -ōnis, m.  
**rock**, saxum, -ī, n.; rūpēs, -is, f.

**Roman**, Rómānus, -a, -um.  
**Rome**, Róma, -ae, f.  
**Romulus**, Rómulus, -i, m.  
**roof**, tectum, -i, n.  
**root**, rádix, -icis, f.  
**rope**, fūnis, -is, m.  
**rose**, rosa, -ae, f.  
**rough**, asper, -era, -erum.  
**rout**, fuga, -ae, f.  
**route** (= road), iter, via.  
**row** (a boat), rémīgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.  
**rower**, rémex, -igis, m.  
**rule** (*authority*), imperium, -i, n.  
**I rule**, regō, -ere, réxī, réctum; **huperō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (dat.).  
**run**, currō, -ere, cucurri, cursum.

## S

**sacred**, sacer, -era, -crum.  
**sacrifice**, immolō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; **mactō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.  
**sad**, tristis, -e.  
**safe**, tūtus, -a, -um (before the danger); **incolumis**, -e (= *unharmed* after the danger).  
**safeguard**, caveō, -ere (governs dat.).  
**safety**, salūs, -ūtis, f.  
**sail**, noun, vēlum, -i, n.  
**I sail**, nāvīgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; **set sail** (= *cast off from mooring*), solvō (nāvem, nāvēs).  
**sailor**, nauta, -ae, m.  
**salute** (= *greet*), cōsaliūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.  
**same**, idem, eadem, idem.  
**save**, servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.  
**say**, dicō, -ere, dixi, dictum; **loquor**, -i, locūtus.  
**school**, schola, -ae, f.; **lūdus**, -i, m.  
**science**, scientia, -ae, f.  
**scount**, explorātor, -ōris, m.  
**sea**, mare, -is, n. (pelagus and aequor are poetic).  
**second**, secūndus, -a, -um.  
**seek**, petō, -ere, petivi, petitum; **quaerō**, -ere, quaesivi, quaesitum.  
**seem**, videor, -ēri, visus.

**seize**, occipō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; (= *grasp*), prehēdō, -ere, -hendī, -hēsum.  
**self**, ipse, -a, -um. See Intensive and Reflexive Pronouns.  
**sell**, vēndō, -ēre, vēndidī, vēnditum (vēnum, dō); **am sold**, vēneō, -īre, vēnivī (-lī), -itum (vēnum, eō).  
**senate**, senātus, -ūs, m.  
**send**, mittō, -ere, misi, missum.  
**send back**, remittō.  
**send for**, arcessō, -ere, -cessivī, -cessitum (acc.).  
**send forward**, praemittō.  
**send out** (*messengers in different directions*), dimittō.  
**sentence** (*condemn*), condemnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.  
**serious**, gravis, -e.  
**serve**, serviō, -īre, -ivī (-iī), -itum (dat.).  
**am serviceable to**, prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui.  
**set out**, proficiscor, -i, -fectus.  
**settle** (= *determine*), cōstitūō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum.  
**settle** (= *take up one's abode*), cōsido, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum.  
**seven**, septem; **seventh**, septimus, -a, -um.  
**seventy**, septuāgintā; **seven hundred**, septingentī, -ae, -a.  
**several**, complūrēs, -a, gen. -ium.  
**severe**, gravis, -e; (*winter*), ācer, -cris, -cre.  
**shade**, umbra, -ae, f.; (= *departed spirit*), Mānēs, -ium, m.  
**share**, noun, pars, parvis, f.  
**I share in**, participō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.  
**sharing**, particeps, -eipis (gen.).  
**sharp**, ācer, -cris, -cre; acūtus, -a, -um.  
**sheep**, ovis, -is, m. or f.  
**shield**, scūtum, -i, n.  
**ship**, nāvis, -is, f.  
**ship-of-burden**, nāvis onerāria.  
**ship-of-war**, nāvis longa.  
**shore**, litus, -oris, n.  
**short**, brevis, -e,

- shoulder**, humerus, -i, m.  
**shout**, clamor, -ōris, m.  
**show**, mōnstrō, ostendō (*point out*);  
 praestō (*show qualities*); praebeō  
 mē (*I show myself*).  
**shudder** at, borreō, -ēre, -uī.  
**shun**, vitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**Sicily**, Sicilia, -ae, f.  
**sick**, aeger, -gra, -grum.  
**side**, latus, -eris, n.  
**on this side**, prep. cis (acc.).  
**sight**, cōspectus, -ūs, m.  
**signal**, signum, -ī, n.  
**silence**, silentium, -ī, n.  
**silent** (adj.), tacitū, -a, -um.  
**am silent** (*keep silence*), tacēō, -ēre,  
 -nī, -itum.  
**silver**, argentum, -ī, n.  
**since** (of cause), cum, with the sub-  
 junctive.  
**sing**, cantō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; canō,  
 -ere, ceclui, cantum.  
**Sir** (addressing a teacher), Magister.  
**sister**, soror, -ōris, f.  
**sit**, sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum.  
**sit down**, cōsidō, -ere, -sēdī, -ses-  
 sum.  
**six**, sex; **sixteen**, sēdecim; **sixty**,  
 sexāgintā; **six hundred**, sēscentī.  
 -ae, -a.  
**skilled**, perītus, -a, -um (gen.).  
**skin** (*hide, pell. fur* of an animal),  
 pellis, -is, f.; of the human body,  
 cutis, -is, f.  
**sky**, caelum, -ī, n.  
**slander**, maledicō, -ere, -dīxi, -dic-  
 tum.  
**slandering**, maledicus, -dicentior,  
 -dicentissimus.  
**slaughter**, caedēs, -is, f.  
**slave**, servus, -ī, m.  
**slay**, interficiō, necō, occidō.  
**I sleep**, dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -itum.  
**sleep**, somnus, -ī, m.  
**sling**, funda, -ae, f.  
**slip**, lābor, -ī, lāpsus.  
**small**, parvus, -a, -um.  
**smell of**, oleō, -ēre, -uī (acc.).  
**snatch**, adripiō (arripiō), -ere, -ripiī,  
 -reptum; *snatch from*, ēripiō.
- snow**, nix, nivis, f.  
**so** (= *thus*, of manner), ita, sic; (of  
 degree), tam, adeō; **so great**,  
 tantus, -a, -um; **so many**, tot; **so**  
 long, tamdiū.  
**Socrates**, Sōcratēs, -is, m.  
**soldier**, miles, -itis, m.  
**some, some one**, aliquis (-quī), -quae  
 (qua), -quid (quod).  
**son**, fillus, -ī, m.  
**son-in-law**, gener, -erī, m.  
**song**, carmen, -minis, n.; cantus,  
 -ūs, m.  
**soon**, mox, brevī (tempore).  
**sorry** (I am), mē piget.  
**south**, meridiēs, -ēi, m.  
**Spain**, Hispānia, -ae, f.  
**Spaniard**, Spanīsh, Hispānus, -a,  
 -um.  
**spare**, parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsum.  
**speak**, loquor, -ī, locūtus.  
**spear**, hasta, -ae, f.  
**speech**, ōratiō, -ōnis, f.; sermō,  
 -ōnis, m.  
**speed**, celeritās, -ātis, f.  
**spring**, vēr, vēris, n.  
**spur**, calcar, -āris, n.  
**stand**, stō, stāre, stetī, stātum.  
**stand in the way**, obstō, -stāre,  
 -stātī (obstātūrus).  
**standard**, signum, -ī, n.  
**standard bearer**, signifer, -ferī, m.  
**star**, stella, -ae, f.  
**state**, civitās, -ātis, f.  
**station**, cōstituō, -ere, -uī, -ātum.  
**stature**, magnitūdō corporis.  
**stay** (= *remain*), manēō, remaneō.  
**steel**, ferrum, -ī, n.  
**steep**, arduus, -a, -um; praeceps,  
 -clpitis.  
**stern** (of a vessel), puppis, -is, f.  
**stone**, lapis, -idis, m.; saxum,  
 -ī, n.  
**storm**, tempestās, -ātis, f.  
**storm** (= *take by storm*), expugnō,  
 -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**stormy**, turbidus, -a, -um.  
**storm blast**, procella, -ae, f.  
**story**, fābula, -ae, f.  
**straight**, rēctus, -a, -um.

- strange** (= *unusual*), *inūsītātus*, -a, -um.
- stream**, *fluvius*, -i, m.; *flūmen*, -inūs, n.
- street**, *via*, -ae, f.
- strength**, *vis*, *vim*, *vī*; (*bodily strength*), plur. *vīrēs*, -ium.
- strengthen**, *cōfirmō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
- stretch out**, *porrigō*, -ere, -rēxī, -rētum.
- strive**, *contendō*; *nītor*, -ī, *nīsus* or *nīxus*.
- strong**, *firmus*, -a, -um; *validus*, -a, -um.
- struggle** (noun), *cōrtāmen*, -inūs, n.
- I struggle**, *certō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*vie*); *luctor*, -ārī, -ātus.
- style** (= *name*), *appellō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
- suffer**, *patior*, -ī, *passus*.
- such**, *tālis*, -e; (of extent), *tantus*, -n, -nm.
- suitable**, *idōneus*, -a, -um.
- summer**, *aestās*, -ātis, f.
- sun**, *sōl*, *sōlis*, m.
- superior** (= *better*), *mellor*.
- supply**, *cōpia*, -ae, f.
- surrender**, *dēdō*, *trādō*, -ere, -didi, -ditum.
- surround** (= *go around*), *circumveniō*, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum; (= *put around*) *circumdō*, -dare, -dedī, -datum.
- suspect**, *suspīcor*, -ārī, -ātus.
- sustain**, *sustīnēō*, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.
- sweat**, *īrō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
- sweet**, *dulcis*, -e; *suāvis*, -e.
- swift**, *celer*, -eris, -ere.
- swine**, *cūs*, *uis*, m. or f.
- sword**, *gladius*, -ī; **by the sword**, *ferrō*.
- Syracuse**, *Syrācūsae*, -ūrum, f.
- T
- table**, *mēnsa*, -ae, f.
- tackle**, *armāmenta*, -ōrum, n. plur.
- take**, *capō*, -ere, -cēpī, -captum;
- take by storm**, *expugnō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
- talent**, *talentum*, -ī, n.
- talk** (noun), *sermō*, -ōnis, m.; *colloquium*, -ī, n.
- I talk**, *verba facio*; *colloquor*.
- tall**, *altus*, -a, -um.
- taste of**, *sapio*, -ere, -ivī (-īi).
- tax**, *vectigal*, -ālis, n.
- teach**, *doceō*, -ēre, -uī, *doctum*.
- teacher** (*school mistress*), *magistra*, -ae, f.; (*master*), *magister*, -tri, m.
- tear**, *incerō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
- tear down**, *rescindō*, -ere, -scidi, -scissum.
- tell**, *dicō*, -ere, *dixī*, *dictum*; *narrō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
- temple**, *templum*, -ī, n.
- ten**, *decem*; **tenth**, *decimus*, -a, -nm.
- tenacious**, *tenāx*, -ācis.
- tender**, *tener*, -era, -erum.
- territories**, *finēs*, -ium, m.; *agrī*, -ōrum, m.
- than**, *quam*; comparison sometimes expressed by the abl.
- thanks**, *grātiae*, -ārum, f.
- that** (demonst. pron.), *ille*, -a, -nd (with strong demonst. force); *is*, *ea*, *id* (less emphatic than *ille*; used ns antecedent of *quī*, e.g. *that (man) who, those who*); **that of yours**, *iste*, -a, -nd.
- that** (conj. introducing nonn clause after verb of *saying, thinking, etc.*), acc. with inf. is used. In some noun clauses *quod* represents *that*.
- that** (conj. of Purpose or Result), *ut*; **that not**, *nē* (Purpose); *ut nōn* (Result).
- that** (rel. pron. = *who, which*), *quī*, *quae*, *quod*.
- their** (referring to the subject), *suus*, -a, -um; (not referring to the subject), *eōrum*, *eārum*.
- themselves** (reflexive), *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*; (intensive), *ipsī*, -ae, -a.
- then** (= *at that time*), *tum*; (= *therefore*), *igitur*.
- there** (= *at that place*), *ibi*; (introductory, e.g. *there is*) not translated; (= *thither*, e.g. *go there*), *eō*.

- thick**, dēnsus, -a, -um.  
**thing**, rēs, rei, f.; often expressed by the neuter of an adj.  
**think**, putō, arbitror, existimō, sentio, iudicō, dūcō, habēō.  
**third**, tertius, -a, -um.  
**thirteen**, tredecim.  
**thirty**, trīgintā.  
**this**, hīc, haec, hōc.  
**thou**, tū, tui, tibi.  
**though** (although), quamquam, etsi, quamvis, licet, ut, see p. 359.  
**thousand**, mille, indeci.; **thousands**, millia, -ium.  
**three**, trēs, tria; **three hundred**, trecenti, -ae, -a.  
**through**, per (acc.); sometimes rendered by the abl. of Cause.  
**throw**, jaciō, -ere, jēci, jactum; coniciō.  
**thunder**, tonō, -āre, -uī.  
**thus**, ita.  
**thy**, tuus, -a, -um.  
**tide**, aestus, -ūs, m.  
**time**, tempus, -oris, n.  
**to** (prep. = *towards*), ad (acc.); (as sign of indirect obj. denoting the person or thing indirectly affected), rendered by the dat.  
**to-day**, hodiē.  
**toga**, toga, -ae, f.  
**to-morrow**, crās.  
**too**, expressed by the comparative degree; sometimes with *aequō*, *iustō*.  
**too little** (adv. or indeci. subst.), parum.  
**too much** (adv.), nimis; (adj.), nimis, -a, -um.  
**tooth**, dēns, dentis, m.  
**top of**, rendered by adj. *summus* agreeing with the noun.  
**touch**, tangō, -ere, tetigī, tactum.  
**towards** (motion to), ad (acc.); (denoting attitude or conduct towards), ergā, in (acc.).  
**tower**, turris, -is, f.  
**town**, oppidum, -ī, n.  
**transport** (noun), nāvis ouerāria.
- i transport**, trānsportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.  
**treason**, prōditio, -ōnis, f.  
**tree**, arbor, -oris, f.  
**trench**, fossa, -ae, f.  
**(make) trial of**, temptō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.  
**tribe**, gēns, gentis, f.; nātiō, -ōnis, f.; tribus, -ūs, f.  
**triple**, triplex, -icis.  
**Trojan**, Trōjānus, -a, -um.  
**troops**, cōpiae, -ārum, f. militēs, -um, m.  
**trouble**, negōtium, -ī, n.  
**Troy**, Trōja, -ae, f.  
**true**, vērus, -a, -um.  
**trumpet**, lituus, -ī, m.  
**trust**, fidō, -ere, -fisis sum; cōfidō (dat. of person, abl. of thing).  
**truth** (*the quality*), vērītās, -ātis, f.; (*that which is true*), vērūm, -ī or vērā, -ōrum.  
**try**, cōnor, -ārī, -ātus.  
**turn**, vertō, -ere, vertī, versum; (= *benē*), flectō, -ere, flexī, flexum.
- U
- unaccustomed** (*unused*), insuētus, -a, -um; (*unusual*), insolitus, -a, -um.  
**under**, sub (abl. or acc.).  
**understand**, intelligō, -ere, iēxi, -iēctum.  
**undertake**, suscipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum.  
**unfavorable**, iniquus, -a, -um.  
**unless**, nisi.  
**unlike**, dissimilis, -e.  
**until**, dum, donec, quoad; (= *before*, after a negative), priusquam, antequam.  
**unused**, insuētus, -a, -um.  
**am unwilling**, nolō, nolīe, nolūi.  
**unwilling** (adj.), invitus, -a, -um.  
**uprising**, motus, -ūs, m.  
**urge**, suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsum.  
**i use**, ūtor, -ī, ūsus (abl.).  
**use** (noun), ūsus, -ūs, m.  
**useful**, ūtilis, -e.  
**utmost**, summus, -a, -um.

## V

**valley**, *vallis*, -is, f.  
**valor**, *virtūs*, -ūtis, f.  
**I value**, *aestimō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.  
**van** (*front of an army*), *prima acies*  
 or *primum agmen*.  
**Venus**, *Vēnus*, -eris, f.  
**versed**, *doctus*, *peritus*, -a, -um  
 (gen.).  
**very** (intens. pronom. adj.), *ipse*, -a,  
 -um.  
**victor**, *victor*, -ōris, m.  
**victory**, *victōria*, -ae, f.  
**village**, *vīcus*, -ī, m.  
**violate**, *violō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.  
**violence**, *vīs*, *vīm*, vi, f.  
**virtue**, *virtūs*, -ūtis, f.  
**visit** (*go to*), *adeō*, -ire, -īvi (-ī),  
 -itum.  
**voice**, *vōx*, *vōcis*, f.  
**void of**, *egērus*, -a, -um; *inops*,  
 -opis (gen.).  
**Vulcan**, *Vulcānus*, -ī, m.

## W

**wage** (war), *gerō*, -ere, *gessi*, *ges-*  
*tum*; *bellō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.  
**wagon**, *carrus*, -ī, m.  
**wait** (*wait for*), *expectō*, -āre, -āvi,  
 -ātum.  
**wall** (of a town), *mūrus*, -ī, m.; (of  
 a camp = *rampart*), *vāllum*, -ī,  
 u.; (of a house), *pariēs*, -etis, m.  
**wander**, *errō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum;  
*vagor*, -ārī, *vagātns*.  
**war**, *bellum*, -ī, n.  
**war engine**, *tormentum*, -ī, n.  
**warm**, *calidus*, -a, -um.  
**war-ship**, *nāvis longa*.  
**lay waste**, *vāstō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.  
**watch** (*look at*), *spectō*, -āre, -āvi,  
 -ātum; (*guard*), *tueor*, -ērī.  
**watch for**, *expectō*, -āre, -āvi,  
 -ātnm (acc.).  
**watch** (of the night), *vigilia*,  
 -ae, f.  
**water**, *aqua*, -ae, f.  
**wave**, *unda*, -ae, f.; *fluctus*, ūs, m.  
**way**, *via*, ae, f.; *iter*, *itineris*, n.  
**we**, *nōs*, *nostrī* or *nostrum*.

**wealth**, *divitiae*, -ārum, f.; *opēs*,  
*opum*, f.  
**weapon** (*missile*), *telum*, -ī, n.  
**weary** (*I am*), *mē taedet*.  
**weather**, *tempestās*, -ātis, f.  
**weep**, *fleō*, *flēre*, *flēvi*, *flētum*.  
**welfare**, *saiūs*, -ūtis, f.  
**what** (interrog. pron.), *quid*;  
 (interrog. adj.), *quī*, *quae*, *quod*,  
 agreeing with the nonu.  
**at what price**, *quanti*.  
**wheel**, *rota*, -ae, f.  
**when** (rel. adv.), *cum*, *nbl*;  
 (interrog. adv.), *quandō*.  
**whence**, *unde*.  
**whenever**, *cum*, *nbl*.  
**where** (= *at what or which place*),  
*ubi*; (= *whither*, e.g. *where are*  
*you going?*), *quō*.  
**which** (rel. pron.), *quī*, *quae*, *quod*;  
 (interrog. pron. or adj.), *quis*  
 (*quī*), *quae*, *quid* (*quod*).  
**which of two**, *uter*, -tra, -trum.  
**while**, *dum*, *dōnec*, *quand*.  
**who** (rel. pron.), *quī*, *quae*;  
 (interrog. pron.), *quis*.  
**whole**, *tōtus*, -a, -um; *omnis*, -e.  
**whose**, *cūjus*, *quōrum*, *quārum*.  
**why**, *cūr*, *quārē*.  
**wide**, *lātus*, -a, -um.  
**wife**, *uxor*, -ōris, f.  
**wind**, *ventus*, -ī, m.  
**wing**, *āla*, -ae, f.  
**winter**, *hiems*, -is, f.  
**I winter** (pass the winter), *hibernō*,  
 -āre, -āvi, -ātum.  
**winter-quarters**, *hiberna*, -ōrum, n.  
 (*castra* understood).  
**wisdom**, *sapientia*, -ae, f.  
**wise**, *sapiēns*, -entis; **wisely**, *sapi-*  
*enter*.  
**wish**, *volō*, *velle*, *voluī*.  
**with**, *cum* (abl.).  
**withdraw**, *excēdō*, -ere, -cessī, -ces-  
*sum*.  
**within**, *intrā* (acc.).  
**without**, *sine* (abl.).  
**withstand**, *sustineō*, -ēre, -uī, -ten-  
*tum*; *resistō*, -ere, -stitī (dat.).  
**wolf**, *lupus*, -ī, m.

- woman**, mulier, -eris, f.  
**wood**, lignum, -i, n.; (= forest),  
 silva, -ae, f.  
**wooded**, silvester, -tris, -tre.  
**word**, verbum, -i, n.  
**work**, opus, -eris, n.  
**workman**, faber, -bri, m.  
**worse**, pēior, -us.  
**worth as much**, tantī quantī.  
**worthy**, dīgnus, -a, -um (abl.).  
**wound**, noun, vulnus, -eris, n.  
**I wound**, vulnerō, -āre, -āvi,  
 -ātum.  
**wreath**, corōna, -ae, f.  
**wretched**, miser, -era, -erum.  
**write**, scribō, -ere, scripsi, scriptum.

**wrong** (an injury), injūria, -ae, f.;  
 (contrary to divine law), nefās,  
 indecl.

## Y

- year**, annus, -i, m.  
**yesterday**, herī.  
**you** (= thou), tū (plur.), vōs.  
**your** (= thy), tuus, -a, -um; (ad-  
 dressed to more than one), vester,  
 vestra, vestrum.  
**yoursself** (reflex.), tui, tibi, tē; your-  
 selves, vestri, vōbis, vōs.  
**youth** (a young man), juvenis, is, m.;  
 adulescēns, -entis, m.; (the period  
 of youth or a collection of youths),  
 juventus, -ūtis, f.

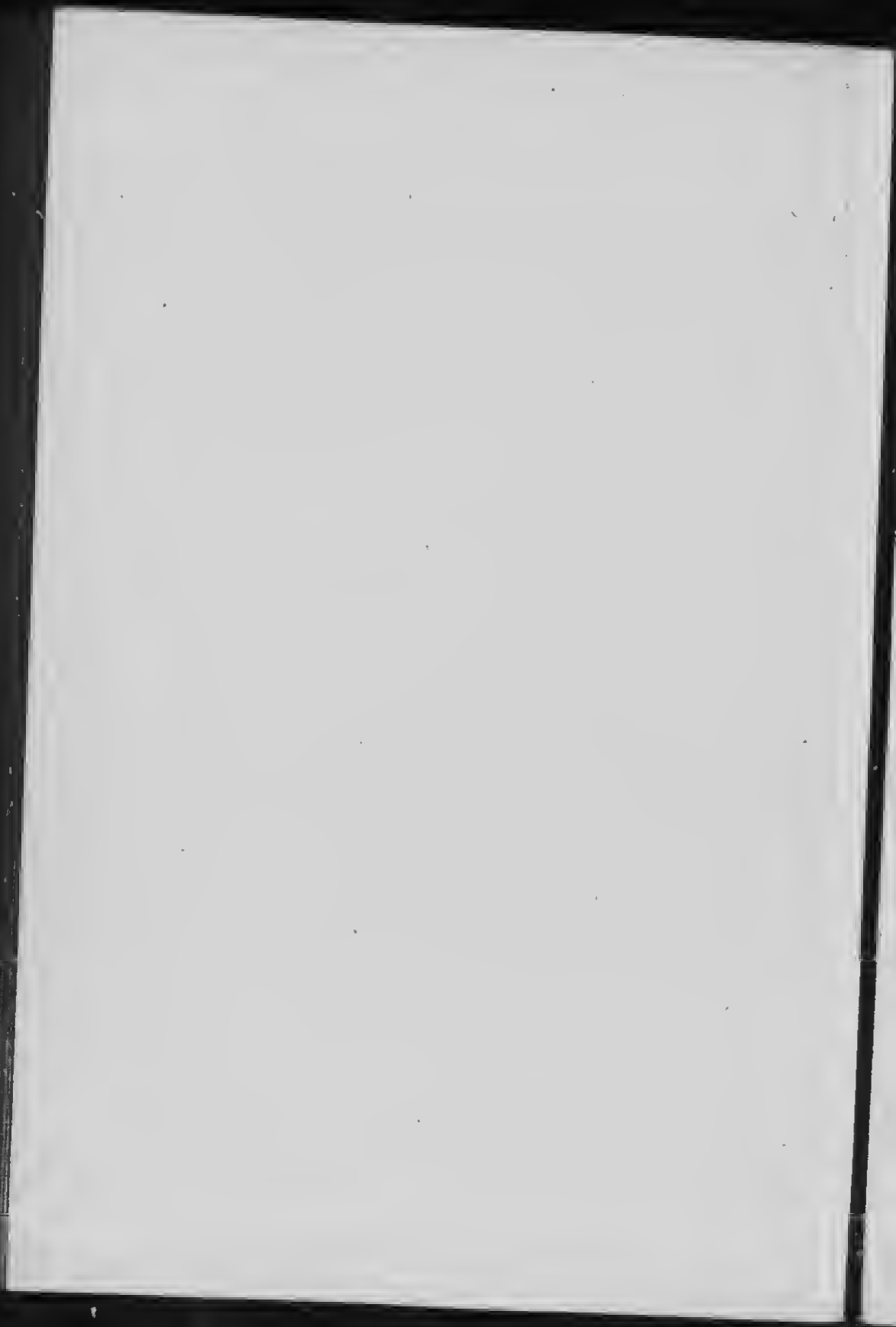


f.;  
fäs,

ad-  
er,  
ar-

l.;  
od  
(s).

# INDEX



## INDEX

*The references are to pages*

- Ablative, with certain prepositions, **cum**, **prō**, **ab**, **ex**, 14; Comparison, 96, 97; Difference, 99; Abl. Absolute, 190; with certain verbs (**ūtor**, etc.), 213; general syntax, 336-341; Summary, 336; verbs of *freeing*, *depriving*, 337; **ūtor**, etc., 337; **fidē**, 337; adjectives, **dignus**, etc., 337; **opus est** and **ūsus est**, 337; Manner and Accompaniment, 338; Description or Quality, 338; Price, 339; verbs of *exchanging*, 339; *way by which*, 339; Specification, 339.
- abus**, dat. or abl. plnr., 12
- Accent, 4.
- Accusative, Direct Object, 8, 332; with inf., 204; with prepositions, 273; general syntax, 332-335; verbs of *feeling*, etc., 332; cognate, 332; two acc. with compds. of **trāns**, 332; two acc., *person and thing*, 333; two acc., *same person or same thing* (obj. and pred.), 333; Extent, Respect, or Specification, Limit of Motion, 334; verbs of *judicial action* (*accusing*, *condemning*, etc.), acc. and gen., 325; in Exclamations, 335.
- Active Voice, Indicative, of Regular Verbs, 50.
- Adjectives, First and Second Decl., **bonus**, 36; **-or**, 37; Third Decl., 74-77; Irregular (gen. **-ius**, dat. **-i**), 108.
- admonish*, *remind* (acc. and gen.), 325.
- Adverbs, formation from adjectives and pronouns, 111, 112; comparison, 112.
- Agent, **a** or **ab** with abl., 150; dat. with gerundive, 221.
- Agreement, adjectives, 36; participles, 180; rel. pron., 142.
- aiō**, 264.
- alius**, 109, 110.
- alter**, 109, 110.
- amplius**, **plūs**, **minus** (*quam omitted*), 336, sec. I, 4.
- Answers, 126.
- antequam** and **priusquam**, 357.
- Anticipatory Subjunctive, 358.
- Apodosis, 355.
- Apollo, 35.
- Apposition, 9, 320.
- Article, absent in Latin, 9.
- ask*, *persuade*, etc., with **ut** clause, 315.
- ask*, *teach*, *conceal*, two acc., 333.
- Attendant Circumstance, abl., 338.
- bonus**, 36.
- bōs**, 68.
- capiō**, indic. act. 48; indic. pass., 171; subjunct. act., 234; subjunct. pass., 239; participles, 84; infinitives, 199.
- Cases, names, and common uses, 8; general syntax, 319-343.
- Causā**, with gen., 321; with gerund or gerundive, 216, 225.
- Causal Clauses, **cum**, **quod**, **quia**, **quī**, 353.
- cavē**, in prohibitions, 345.
- cōlō**, two acc., 333.
- Ceres, 167.
- Characteristic, gen. or abl., 339.
- Characteristic, Subjunctive of (*after final or consecutive rel.*), 349.

- coepi**, 263.  
 Cognate acc., 332, sec. 5.  
*command*, **jubeō** and **imperō**, 316.  
**communis**, with gen. or dat., 324.  
 Comparative degree, constructions, 96, 97.  
 Comparison, clauses introduced by quasi, etc., 360.  
 Comparison, of adjectives, 96-106; of adverbs, 112.  
 Complimentary Infinitive, 314.  
 Concessive Clauses, 359.  
*condemn*, *accuse*, etc., 325, sec. 3.  
 Conditional Sentences, 353.  
**cōfidō**, with abl. or dat., 337, sec. 2.  
 Conjugations, the four distinguished, 40; synopsis of regular conjugations, 368, 369.  
 Consecutive Clauses, 268, 349.  
**cōstituō**, inf. or ut, 317.  
**cōsulō**, dat. or acc., 328.  
**cum**, with, 14; as enclitic, 136; *when*, *whenever*, 357; *since*, 231; *although*, 360.  
 Dative, Indirect Object, 327; with special verbs, 212, 328; with adjectives, 327; general syntax, 327-329; Interest or Reference, 329; Ethical dat., 329; of Possession, 329; special meaning of certain verbs with dat. (**cōnaulō**, etc.), 328; double dative, 329.  
**dea**, 12; **deus**, 20.  
 Defective Nouns, 91.  
 Defective Verbs, 263, 264.  
 Deliberative Subjunctive, 346.  
 Demonstrative Pronouns, 138.  
 Deponent Verbs, Indic., 173, 175; Imperat., 175; Participles, 188; Infinitives, 207; Subjunctive, 239; Gerund, 217, sec. 6.  
*depriving*, verbs of, with abl., 337, sec. 1.  
 Descriptive gen., 332; abl., 338, sec. 8.  
 Diana, 133.  
**dic**, and other shortened Imperatives, 130.  
**diēs**, 87.  
**difficilis**, compared, 100.  
**dignus**, **indignus**, with abl., 337, sec. 3.  
 Direct and Indirect Discourse, 347.  
 Direct Object, 332.  
 Distributive Numerals, forms, 116; uses, 119.  
**dō** and compds., 261.  
**domus**, 85.  
**dōnec**, 358.  
 Double Dative, 329.  
*doubting*, negative verbs of, with **quā**, 352.  
**dic**, see **dic**, 130.  
**dum**, **dōnec**, **quoad**, *as long as*, *while*, *until*, 358, secs. 7, 8; **dam**, *provided that*, 358, sec. 6.  
 Duration of time, 89, 343, sec. 6.  
**egeō**, 337.  
**ego**, 134.  
**ējus**, ns possessive, 134, 135.  
 Enclitic, 126.  
 Endings, pronominal, of verbs, active, 18; passive, 149.  
**eo**, *go*, 256.  
 Ethical Dative, 329.  
*exchange*, with abl. of Price, 339, sec. 9.  
 Exclamation, acc., 335; inf., 361.  
 Extent, of time and space, 334.  
**fac**, see **dic**, 130.  
**facilis**, compared, 100.  
**faciō**, contrasted with **fiō**, 258; compds., 259.  
*fearing*, verbs of, 350.  
**fer**, see **dic**, 130.  
**ferō**, 253; compds., 255.  
**-ficus**, **-dicus**, **-velus**, adjectives ending in compared, 101.  
**fidō** and compds. with abl., 337, sec. 2.  
 Fifth Declension, 87.  
**filia**, dat. and abl. plur. in **-abus**, 12.  
**filia**, voc. sing., 20.  
 Final Clauses, adverbial, 241; substantive, 315; relative, 348.  
**fiō**, 258.  
 First Conjugation, introduced, 6.

- First Declension, 16.  
*fitness*, adjectives with dat., 330.  
*for*, not rendered by dat., 14, sec. 2.  
*forget*, *remember*, *pity*, with gen., 212, 325.  
 Fourth Conjugation, introduced, active, 45; passive, 163.  
 Fourth Declension, 84.  
**fruo**r, with abl., 213, 337.  
*fulness*, adjectives of, with gen., 323.  
**fungor**, with abl., 213, 337.  
 Future Indic., in **-bō** and **-am**, 46.  
 Future participle, 181, 182; deponents, 188; the gerundive, or so-called fut. pass. part., 220; fut. infin. with verbs of *hoping*, etc., 209; periphrastic fut. act., 182, pass., 221.  
 Gender, natural and grammatical, 24; rules for first and second decl., 24, 25; rules for third decl., 57, 58, 70; fourth decl., 84; fifth decl., 87.  
 Genitive, with verbs, 212, 325; with adjectives, 323; general syntax, Possessive, Descriptive, Partitive, Subjective, Objective, 321; Value, 322; of Apposition, 322; **rōsrt** and **interest**, 326.  
 Gerund, value, forms, uses, 216, 218.  
 Gerundive, of Fitness, Necessity, 220; substituted for Gerund, 223; Dative of the Agent, 221.  
 Heteroclitics, 92.  
 Heterogeneous Nouns, 92.  
**hic**, demonstr. pron., 138.  
 Hidden Quantity, preface and 4.  
 Historical Tenses in Sequence, 242.  
*hope*, *promise*, *undertake*, with fut. Inf., 209.  
 Hortative Subjunctive, 344, 345.  
**humī**, locative, 342.  
**humilis**, compared, 100.  
 I, letter; J as consonantal I, 3. See also Lat.-Eng. Vocab. at the beginning of I's, 384.  
 "I" stems of third decl., 62-67; summary, 71.  
 Idiom, 29.  
**ille**, 139.  
 Imperative, active, 130; passive, 168.  
 Imperfect, value, 18.  
**imperō** and **jubeō**, 316.  
 Impersonal Verbs, 264.  
**in** = *in* or *into*, 12.  
 Inchoatives or Inceptives, 281.  
 Indeclinable Nouns, 91.  
 Indefinite Pronouns, 146.  
 Indicative Mood contrasted with Subjunctive, 229.  
 Indirect Discourse, subord. clauses, 267; general summary, 347.  
 Indirect Object, 327.  
 Indirect Questions, 244.  
 Infinitives, forms and meanings, 198; tense values, 204; summary of uses, 261; historical inf. with subject in nom., 261.  
**inquam**, **inquit**, 264.  
 Instrumental Abl., 150, 336.  
 Intensive Pronouns, **ipsa**, **isdem**, 140.  
 Interest, dat. of, 329.  
**interest** and **rōsrt**, 327.  
 Interrogative Pronoun, 144.  
 Intransitive Verbs used impersonally  
 In the passive, 265.  
 Irregular Nouns of the Third Decl., 68; of all Decl., 91.  
 Irregular Verbs, **possum**, **volō**, **ferō**, **eō**, **fiō**, **dō**, 247-261.  
**ia**, **ea**, **id**, 134.  
**iste**, 138.  
 J, as consonantal I, 3. See also Lat.-Eng. Vocab. at the beginning of I's, 384.  
*judicial action*, verbs of, 325.  
 Juno, 73.  
 Jupiter, 5; declension, 68.  
 Jussive Subjunctive, 344, 345.  
 Latin, the language, 1.  
**licet**, impersonal verb, 264; = *although*, 300.  
 Locative case, 85.  
**locus**, 27.

- magis**, in adverbial comparison, 104.  
**malis**, 251.  
 Manner, abl. of, 336, 338.  
 Mars, 16.  
 Means or Instrument, abl. of, 150, 336.  
**mōcum**, etc., 126.  
**memini**, 325.  
 Mercury, 51.  
 Minerva, 107.  
**miserst, missreor**, 325.  
 Modal Verbs, 314.  
 Motion, to or towards, 12; poetical dat., 330.  
 Mute stems of the Third Decl., 54.  
  
 Names, Roman, 252.  
**nō**, in commands, 131; purpose, 241.  
**-ns, nōns**, num, 126.  
 Neptune, 26.  
**nōlō**, 251; **nōll**, in prohibitions, 131.  
 Nominative, 8; pred. nom., 38.  
**nōn**, negative of fact, 131.  
**nōs**, plur. of **ego**, 134.  
 Numerals, 115-121.  
  
 Object, Direct, 332; Indirect, 327.  
 Objective Genitive, with nouns, 321; with adjectives, 323.  
**ōdi**, 263.  
**oportet**, 264.  
**opus est, usus est**, 337, sec. 4.  
*Oratio Obliqua*, or Indirect Discourse, 347.  
  
**pasnitet**, 264, 325, sec. 4.  
 Parsing, 179.  
 Participles, 180-185; of deponents, 188.  
 Partitive Genitive, 321, sec. 3, 322, sec. 4.  
 Passive Voice, introduced, 149.  
 Perfect Passive Participle, 153; equivalents, 236.  
 Perfect Tenses, Active, 32; Passive, 231.  
 Personal Pronouns, 134.  
**persuādeō, efficiendī et dēclārandī**, 317.  
  
 Place, *where, whither, whence*, 342.  
 Plural, nouns varying their meaning in the plur., 91.  
**plūs**, 77.  
 Possession, gen. of, 321; dat. of, 329, sec. 2.  
 Possessive Pronouns, 135.  
**possum**, 247, 249.  
**postquam**, 236, 356.  
 Potential Subjunctive, 345.  
 Predicato Nominative, 319; Predicate Accusative, 333.  
 Prepositions, abi. only, 272; acc. or abl., 273; acc. only, 273.  
*preventing*, verbs of, with **quōminns** or **quin**, 351.  
 Price, or Value, gen., 322; abi., 339, sec. 9.  
 Primary Tenses in Sequence, 242.  
 Principle of Ease, 141.  
**priusquam** and **antequam**, 357.  
**prō**, various meanings, 272.  
**prohibeō**, with acc. and inf., 351.  
 Prohibitions, **nōll**, 131; **nō** with imperat., 131; **nō** with subjunctive, 345.  
 Pronouns, Personal and Possessive, 134; Reflexive, 135; Demonstr., 138; Intensive, 140; Relative or Conjunctive, 142; Interrogative, 144; Indefinite, 146.  
 Pronunciation of Latin, English Method, 2; Roman Method, 3.  
**prōcum**, **d** inserted, 124.  
 Protasis, 355.  
**prōvideō**, with acc. or dat., 338, sec. 3.  
**pudst, paenitet**, etc., 325.  
 Purpose, gerund with **ad**, or **causā**, 219; gerundive with **ad**, or **causā**, 220; eupine, 152; **ut**, and **nō**, 241; relative, 349.  
  
**quam**, in comparison, 96, 97; with superl.; 97.  
**quamquam**, 360.  
**quamvis**, 360.  
 Quantity, 4.  
**quasi**, in clauses of Comparison, as *if*, etc., 360.  
**-que**, euclitic, 126, footnote.

- Questions, Direct, 125; Indirect or Dependent, 244.
- qui**, rel. pron., 142.
- quis**, Interrog. pron. or adj., 144; Indef. pron. after **si**, **ut**, etc., 146.
- quō** = **ut** **quō**, of purpose, 349, sec. 2.
- quod**, **quia**, **quoniam**, *because*, with Indlc. and with subjunct., 353.
- READING LESSONS:—**
- Trojan War, 29.
- Story about a Fleet, 67.
- Early Rome—Hannibal, 82.
- Julius Caesar Invades Britain, 94.
- The Sibylline Books, 121.
- The Muses, 165.
- C. Julius Caesar, 174.
- Caesar's Landing in Britain, 178.
- The Greedy Dog; The Sacred Geese, 196.
- The Fox and the Tragic Mask, 200.
- Proverbs, 203, 208.
- The Wolf and the Lamb, 211.
- Perseus, 214.
- Proverbs, 226.
- Lōbō, Rēx Currumpae, 227.
- Cincinnatus, 237.
- Extract from Horace, The Golden Mean, 243.
- Proserpina, 245.
- Extract from Horace, Spring, 255.
- Extract from Horace, Summer, 257.
- Extract from Horace, Spring, 260.
- Charon, 270.
- Extract from Horace, The Seasons remind us of Death, 234.
- The Fox and the Grapes, 293.
- The Ass in the Lion's Skin, 294.
- The Fox and the Raven, 294.
- The Tortoise and the Hare, 295.
- The Frog that Burst, 296.
- The Fox in the Well, 296.
- The Wolf and the Crane, 297.
- Stories of Early Rome, 299.
- The Wanderings of Ulysses, 303.
- The Capture of Quebec, 303.
- Reduplicated Perfects, 276, 278.
- Reflexive Pronouns, 135.
- Regular Verbs, Synopses of Indic. Act. and Pass., 166, 368, 369.
- Relative, or Conjunctive, Pronoun, 142.
- remember, forget, pity*, with gen., 212, 325.
- rēs**, decl., 87; phrases, 88.
- resolve, cōstituō* with inf. or **ut** and subjunct., 317, sec. 5.
- rēs publica**, 88.
- Result, **ut**, **ut** **ut**, 268; dat. of, 329.
- Review Word Lists, 29, 30, 49, 78, 128, 147, 179, 228.
- Say, hear, believe*, etc., with acc. and inf., 204.
- Second Conjugation, introduced, active, 42; passive, 157.
- Second Declension, **servus, deus**, 20; **-er**, 22; **-um**, 27.
- Semi-Deponents, 176.
- Sequence of Tenses, 241, 244.
- Specification, abl., 339, sec. 11; acc., 334, sec. 5.
- Stem, defined, 6; the three stems of verbs, 202.
- Subjective Genitive, 321.
- Subject of Finite Verb, 8; of infin., 204, 325; of historical infin., 361.
- Subjunctive, introduced, 229; of verb **sum**, 230; act. of regular verbs, 233; pass. of regular verbs, 238; general syntax, 344-361; independent uses, 344; Volitive (Hortative, Jussive), Optative, 344, 345; Prohibitive, 345; Potential, 345; subordinate uses summarized, 346; *Ūratiō Obliqua*, 347; Final and Consecutive Rel. or Rel. of Characteristic, 349; **quō** with comparatives, 349; **quōminus** and **quin**, 351; Causal, 353; Conditional, 355; Temporal, 356; Anticipatory, 358; Concessive, 359.
- Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse, 267, 347.
- Substantive Clauses of Result, 318.
- Substantive Final Clauses, 315.

- Sum** and compds., indic., 123; imperat., 130; infin., 198; subjunct., 230.
- Sunt qui**, with subjunctive of Characteristic or Result, 349.
- Superlative, in *-issimus*, 96; in *-rimus*, 100; in *-limus*, 100.
- Supine, 152.
- Syntax of Cases, 319-343; of Infin., 361.
- taking away*, verbs of, with dat., 329, sec. 4.
- tantum abest ut**, 319.
- Tendency or Result, double dative, 329.
- than*, **quam** or abl. of comparison, 96, 97.
- Third Conjugation, introduced, active, 45; passive, 160.
- Third Declension; Consonant Stems, mas. or fem., 52-56; neut., 60; i-stems, mas. or fem., 62, 64; neut., 66; irregular nouns, 68.
- Time, *when, within which, how long, by which, for which, ago, before, after*, 343.
- top of, middle of*, 322, 103.
- Towns, names of, without prep., 342.
- Transitive Verbs, corresponding to intrans. verbs in Eng., 332.
- tu**, 134.
- usus est, opus est**, 337.
- ut**, purpose, 241; result, 268.
- valim**, in potential subjunctive, 345, sec. 4.
- Verbs, List of, 275.
- Vesta, 148.
- vir**, 22; **vis**, 68.
- Vocabularies, — Special for Introductory lessons, 282-290; General, Lat.-Eng., 371; Eng.-Lat., 405.
- Vocative, 8; of *filii* and proper names in *-ius*, 20.
- voos**, introduced, 6.
- Volitive Subjunctive, 344.
- volis, nolis, malis**, 231.
- Vulcan, 59.
- Wish, different types, 344, 345.
- Word Lists for Review, 29, 30, 49, 78, 128, 179, 187, 228.
- Yes and No, 126.



42.  
to

15,

o-  
ol,  
er

3,

